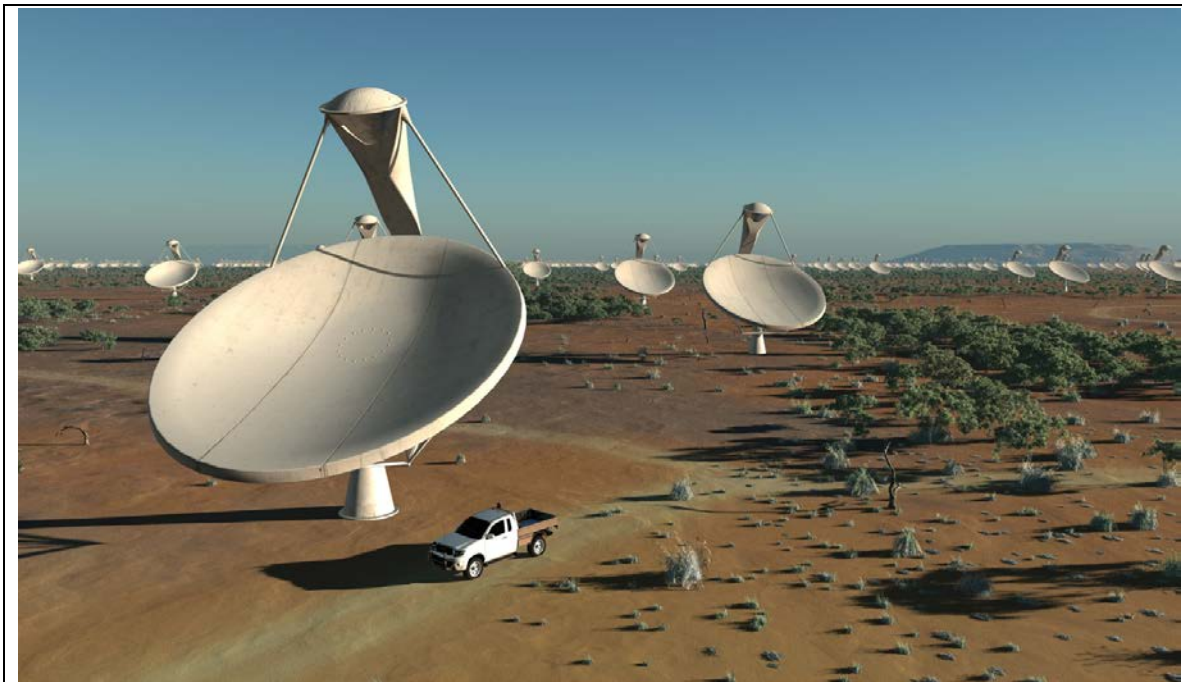




# PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN

**2014/2015 REVIEW**



*Ready to serve*

**VOLUME 1**

**FINAL**

**Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality**

Culvert Road  
Private Bag X1012

**DE AAR**  
7000

Tel: 053 - 631 0891/2-6

Fax: 053 - 631 2529

E-mail: [pixley@telkomsa.net](mailto:pixley@telkomsa.net)

Website: [www.pixleykasemedm.co.za](http://www.pixleykasemedm.co.za)

23 May 2014

## CONTENTS

### PAGE

### CHAPTER 1

FORWARD BY THE EXECUTIVE MAYOR	1
OVERVIEW BY THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER	2
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	3
CHAPTER 1: BACKGROUND	7
1. Background	10
1.1 Agriculture	10
1.1.1 Stock Farming	10
1.1.2 Irrigation	10
1.2 Tourism	11
1.2.1 Game Farming	11
1.3 Industry	11
1.4 Electricity	11
1.5 Mineral Resource	12
1.6 Economic Functionality	12
1.7 Economic Growth	12
1.8 Local Economic Development	12
1.9 Development Challenges	13
1.10 Identified Issues	13
1.10.1 Integrated development planning process	13
1.10.2 Section 1	
1.10.3 Section 2	
1.11 Institutional arrangements	14
1.12 Establishment Process	14
1.13 Roles and Responsibilities	14
1.14 Public Participations	15
1.15 Process Programmed	16
1.16 Focus areas of strategic IDP	41
1.16.1 Socio-economic development	41
1.16.2 Service delivery	41
1.16.3 Governance	41
1.16.4 Economic Growth	41
1.17 Broad based Black Economic Empowerment	42
1.17.1 Fiscal discipline	42
1.17.2 Environment	42
1.17.3 HIV/AIDS	42
1.18 Sustainable Human Settlements	43
1.19 Intergovernmental collaboration	44
1.19.1 Powers and Functions	44
1.20 Institutional Profile	44
1.20.1 Political profile	44
1.21 Mandate, Powers and Functions	45
1.21.1 Mandate	45
1.21.2 Powers and Functions	46
1.21.3 The executive mayor	49
1.22 The functions and powers of the Executive Mayor	49
1.23 Committees	49
1.24 Integrated Institutional Programme	51

1.25.1	Institutional	51
1.25.2	Administration	51
1.25.2	Administration Structure	52
1.26	Office of the Municipal Manager	52
1.27	Departments	52
1.28	Organizational Structure	57
1.28.1	Municipal budget	57
1.28.2	Financial viability	57
1.28.3	financial Strategy	58
1.28.4	Internal audit	59
1.28.5	Supply chain management	59
1.28.6	Good governance and community participation	59

## CHAPTER 2: STATUS QUO

2.	EXISTING FEATURES	64
2.1	Topography	64
2.2	Flood Lines	64
2.3	Geology	64
2.4	Climate	65
2.5	Soil Condition	65
2.6	Water resources	66
2.7	Ground water	66
2.8	Environmental Aspects	67
2.8.1	Hydrology	68
2.8.2	Water quality	68
2.9	Air quality	68
2.10	Cultural and historical sites	69
2.11	Agriculture and Forestry	72
2.12	Aesthetic Resource	73
2.13	Wetlands and springs	73
2.14	Issues and management of wetlands	73
2.15	Considerations for water resource management	73
2.16	Development profile	74
2.16.1	Demographics	74
2.16.2	The Pixley population and households	75
2.16.3	Youth	78
2.17	Historic population	81
2.18	Population density	87
2.19	Socio-economic conditions	89
2.20	Employment by Economic Sector	92
2.20.1	Gross Domestic Product (GDP) contribution and growth rate	94
2.21	Occupational Classification	106
2.22	Housing	106
2.22.1	Housing Accreditation	106
2.22.2	Housing Profile	107
2.22.3	Home ownership	109
2.22.4	Housing backlog	109
2.23	Land ownership	113
2.24	Health and Hygiene	114
2.25	Safety and Security	118
2.30	Institutional and management	122
2.31	Physical Infrastructure	126
2.31.1	Water Supply	126
2.31.2	Water and Sanitation backlog	130

2.31.4	Sanitation	131
2.31.5	Electricity	133
2.32	Refuse removal	137
2.33	Telephones	143
2.33.1	Telephone access	143
2.34	Postal services	143
2.35	Transportation	144
2.35.1	Airstrips	145
2.36	Education	145
2.37	Storm water drainage	150
2.38	Roads	154
2.38.1	Roads priorities	154
2.38.2	Blading maintenance	154
2.38.3	Routine maintenance	154
2.39	Resources	156
2.39.1	Plant condition	156
2.39.2	Personnel	156
2.40	Community facilities	157
2.41	Summary of identifies problems/issues	160
2.42	Municipal-wide prioritized needs	193
2.43	Potentials	194
2.44	Comparative and competitive advantages	194
2.45	Conclusion	194

### CHAPTER 3

3.	Development strategies	195
3.1	Development Priorities	198
3.1.2	Development objectives and strategies	199
3.1.2	Poverty alleviation and gender equality	199
3.1.3	Local Economic Development (LED)	199
3.1.4	Environmental management	200
3.1.5	Institutional development	200
3.1.6	Sanitation	200
3.1.7	Bulk Water Supply	200
3.1.7	Housing	200
3.2	Key Performance Areas (KPA's)( <i>To be reviewed</i> )	201
3.3	Our Strategic Plan For 2012/13 Financial Year ( <i>To be reviewed</i> )	202
3.3.1	Vision	203
3.3.2	Mission	203
3.4	Values	203
3.5	Developmental SWOT Analysis	204
3.5.1	Strengths	204
3.5.2	Weaknesses	204
3.5.3	Opportunities	205
3.5.4	Threats 3.6 Strategies as per key performance area for 2012/13	205
3.7	Strategic Objectives	210

### CHAPTER 4

4.1	Integration	232
4.2	Summary of the sector plans	232
4.2	Spatial Development Framework	232

4.3	Integrated Environmental Management Programme	234
4.4	Integrated waste management plan	240
4.5	District Growth and Development Strategy	240
4.6	Mineral and petroleum Resource Development Act	241
4.6	Performance Management System (PMS)	226
4.7	Complementary industries	248
4.8	Cross functional competencies	248
4.9	Performance Management System (PMS)	249
4.9.1	Monitoring	249
4.9.2	Performance Measurement	249
4.9.3	Review	250
4.9.4	Performance reporting	250
4.10	PMS Framework Policy and 2011/12 scorecards	251
4.11	Water services development plan	252
4.12	Integrated transport plan	252
4.13	Disaster management plan	253

## CHAPTER 5: PROJECTS

5.1	Introduction	254
5.2	Projects 2013/14	254
5.3	Pixley bulk water supply projects	265
5.4	Solar Energy Projects	271
5.5	Economic impact	275
5.5.1	Mining Concerns	275
5.6	Tourism	279
5.7	Agriculture	279
5.8	Rural Development	279
5.9	PKS Bulk water supply project	280
5.10	Spatial fundamentals	290
5.11	Budget 2013/14 (Final )	300

Volume 2: sector plans	305
------------------------	-----

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1	Land cover by Local Municipalities	10
Table 2	Process Timeframe	18
Table 3	Activity and resource plan	21
Table 4	Alignment of structure	26
Table 5	General Management	33
Table 6	Local Municipality Structure	45
Table 7	Functions	47
Table 8	Capacity of Pixley ka Seme District Municipality	48
Table 9	Staffing level as at February 2013	51
Table 10	Implementation challenges and recommendations	62
Table 11	Tourist Attractions by Local Municipality	70
Table 12	Population totals	74
Table 13	Population, households and % females	75
Table 14	Age structure per municipality -2011 Statistics	76
Table 15	Historical population growth 1970 to 1996	82
Table 16	Population growth DWA 2001	81
Table 17	Population by race group	85
Table 18	Population density	87

Table 19	Employment profile, absolute totals 2007	88
Table 20	Employment status	88
Table 21	Table Ratio	90
Table 22	Employment by Economic Sector	92
Table 23	Sectorial GDP contribution	93
Table 24	Location Quotation of Economic Sector	95
Table 25	PKDS Economic Sector 2011	105
Table 26	Human Development indices	106
Table 27	Occupational Classification	106
Table 28	Housing type by local municipality	108
Table 29	House ownership per municipality by household income	109
Table 30	Dwelling ownership	109
Table 31	Housing backlogs at December 2010 by local municipalities	110
Table 32	Land needed for new housing stock by local municipalities	112
Table 33	Incidence rate of children under 5 years old	115
Table 34	HIV/AIDS Infected population	115
Table 35	Distribution of health care facilities	117
Table 36	Population by municipality living below the minimum living levels in the district	119
Table 37	Household per month and unemployment in 2007 census	119
Table 38	Number of households provided with free basic electricity	122
Table 39	Provision of free basic water (FBW)	122
Table 40	Indigent policies	123
Table 41	Source of water per Local Municipality	126
Table 42	Access to water by household	127
Table 43	Sanitation backlog march 2011	128
Table 44	Backlog water and sanitation 2013	130
Table 45	Sanitation per Local municipality	131
Table 46	Energy for heating per Local Municipality	133
Table 47	Energy per heating for lightning per Local Municipality	134
Table 48	Energy for lightning per Local municipality	134
Table 49	Electricity (household)	136
Table 50	Municipal Health services	138
Table 51	Refuse removal census 2011	141
Table 52	Household access to telephone	143
Table 53	Made of transport 2007	144
Table 54	Airstrips by Local Municipality	145
Table 55	Highest Educational level by Local municipality	148
Table 56	Level of education by Local Municipality	149
Table 57	Road maintenance	154
Table 58	Community facilities by Local Municipalities	159
Table 59	Issues identified in Local IDP's	163
Table 60	Sanitation Provision	165
Table 61	Bulk water supply	165
Table 62	LED and Tourism and Poverty Alleviation	166
Table 63	Housing	167
Table 64	Roads, Streets, and storm water Management	167
Table 65	Health and HIV/AIDS	168
Table 66	Electricity	168
Table 67	Education, Youth development	169
Table 68	Land and Reform	169
Table 69	Crime, Security and Disaster management	170
Table 70	Sports and Recreation	170
Table 71	Environmental and waste management	171
Table 72	Cemeteries	171

Table 73	Prioritized needs by Local Municipality	206
Table 74	Policy document	212
Table 75	Summary of District Priorities	201
Table 76	Key Strategies Issues	206
Table 77	Predetermined Issues	250
Table 78	Development Strategies	255
Table 79	Threats and Opportunities	263
Table 80	Lines of Accountability	266
Table 81	Infrastructure Development	270
Table 82	Proposed Karoo projects	271
Table 83	2013/2014 Financial Year	272
Table 84	Bulk projects	273
Table 85	Solar energy projects	276
Table 86	Solar bids	278
Table 87	Pixley Renewable energy projects	282
Table 88	Renewable energy hub	284
Table 89	SKA S.A Benefits Register	286
Table 90	Department of Education projects	292
Table 91	RBIG- Allocation for 2013/2014 Capital projects	297
Table 92	Spatial Development framework project	299

## FIGURES

Figure 1	Structure required for IDP	74
Figure 2	Population Percentage	75
Figure 3	Sex Ratio	76
Figure 4	Growth by district 2001-2011	78
Figure 6	Annual Population Growth	78
Figure 7	Pixley ka Seme population growth by municipality	79
Figure 8	Percentage of people who never moved	80
Figure 9	Population by Race Group	85
Figure 10	Unemployed rate 2011	89
Figure 11		89
Figure 12	Solar Irradiation	96
Figure 13	Renewable Energy Database	97
Figure 14	Solar energy project	98
Figure 15	SKA Telescope	101
Figure 16	Radio Tele scope	102
Figure 17	PKSD Production Structure	104
Figure 18	Percentage Households income	120
Figure 19	Household income per month	120
Figure 20	Pipes water inside dwelling	127
Figure 21	Percentage of people with Access to pipe water	128
Figure 22	Percentage of household with flush toilets	132
Figure 23	Percentage of people with electricity in Pixley Ka Seme	135
Figure 24	Percentage of Removal of household weekly removal	142
Figure 25	Percentage of Education for Pixley Ka Seme	146
Figure 26	Percentage of people with no schooling	150
Figure 27	Current distribution	155
Figure 28	Age distribution	156

## LIST OF MAPS

Map 1	Geo-political positions of Pixley ka Seme District	8
-------	--	---



## **FOREWORD BY THE EXECUTIVE MAYOR**

The 2011 local government elections has indeed demonstrated beyond any measure of doubt, the confidence that our people have in the African National Congress led municipalities in the district, this was a gesture of acceptance by our people that despite all the challenges that we are faced with as a district, our people have witnessed all the interventions that we have implemented in speeding up and responding to service delivery challenges that our communities are faced with.

We are also celebrating twenty years of freedom and democracy in our region, province and country. Indeed the Pixley ka Seme District, the Northern Cape Province and South Africa at large have changed for the better since 1994 and that we have made great strides within a short period of time to improve the quality of life of our people in the region , province and country given more than 300 years of colonial and apartheid rule.

In as far as basic service delivery in the Pixley ka Seme District is concern, the 2011 Census Results speak for themselves: more than 70% of the people of the Pixley ka Seme District has access to flush toilets, more than 95% have access to pipe water , more than 85% have access to electricity with Emthanjeni recording 92.6%, and more than 80% have access to formal housing dwellings.

The socio-economic landscape of the Pixley ka Seme District has changed drastically since the implementation of our last IDP, the Pixley ka Seme District has witnessed the construction of solar, wind, hydro and biomass projects. In particular the construction of solar generating energy plants have changed the socio-economic landscape of the district in terms of business and job opportunities.

The second bidding window for the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPPP) allocation increased our solar portfolio to 367.1 MW. Conservative estimates show that the renewable energy programmes are in the process of creating 1000 temporary construction job opportunities and close to 400 permanent operational jobs

The Pixley ka Seme District is indeed positioning itself, boldly and aggressively, as the Renewable Energy Hub in the province and country, which is able to attract massive national and international investments in the renewable energy sector.

We can also proudly report that the construction of the De Aar Cargo Hub is already at an advanced stage. This Project aims amongst other things, to provide sustainable transport network for the transportation of freight/products by small miners and farmers, revitalizing the rail line to and from De Aar, promoting economic development and ensuring the creation of job opportunities in the area.

We intend to position the Hub as a strategic corridor into Namibia, as this would be ideal in future given the recent discovery of oil on the Namibian coast (estimated at 11 billion barrels). The total estimated investments in this project amounts to approximately 4 billion rand.

The De Aar Cargo Hub would have a huge impact on the local economy in the area, as it would seriously and radically stimulate services and industries such as pallets manufacturing, tyre supplies , vehicle workshops and maintenance , clearing and forwarding , banking , fleet management , trucking , warehousing , shipping , containers, material handling , rail services , specialised trade service , mining – beneficiation , agro-processing , specialised packaging , safety and security and waste management. We call upon our local , provincial , national and international investors to maximally exploit all business and investment opportunities created by the envisaged De Aar Cargo Hub to contribute to the socio-economic development of the region, province and country.

The construction and operation of the Hub both in the short to long term period and depending on the phase of development will involve an estimated investment of R350m to approximately R4



billion and creating job opportunities ranging from one hundred and fifty (150) to three thousand (3000).

This is indeed a massive anchor project intended to stimulate the economy of De Aar, the Pixley Ka Seme region and the province to ensure that we improve the quality of life of the people of the region and province in our fight against poverty, unemployment and inequality.

We can therefore proudly report that, irrespective of the stubborn legacy of unemployment , poverty and inequality that continues to persist, as a District we have successfully implemented our developmental goals and objectives captured in our IDP for 2012/2013 to ensure that we improve the quality of life of all our people in the Pixley ka Seme District.

Last year, we also experienced as a district, province and country the sad passing away of the father of our nation, our international icon uTata Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela. (May his soul rest in peace) We strongly believe that the most lasting way to keep his legacy alive is to ensure that we accelerate the fight against poverty, unemployment and inequality, as these are ideals that he passionately lived and died for.

This Integrated Development Plan (IDP) for 2014/2015 is a developmental but political-driven plan, to guide socio-economic development in our district. It is a strategic plan that defines the synergy between various priority needs and the sector plans that address community needs. The 2014/2015 review process has also assisted in determining community and stakeholder needs, developing a clear vision of the municipality, prioritizing developmental objectives and seeking better ways to implement programmes and projects to achieve key objectives and measuring municipal performance. The municipality has prioritised communities needs particularly, the poor. We want to strongly emphasize the fact that we are a developmental municipality as stated in our constitution and other relevant municipal legislations, which means that our intervention will be biased towards alleviating the depressing socio-economic conditions of the poor and most vulnerable sections of our population.

As part of our responsibility as the district in line with our constitutional mandate we have committed ourselves during the next financial year to accelerate local economic development, and growth in terms of supporting local municipalities own initiatives to create a sustainable local economies, identify economic growth opportunities, and support programmes intended to take advantage of these opportunities. Council is also improving its communication, participatory and decision-making mechanisms to ensure that IDP remains the only popular strategic road map to the betterment of life for all. All these we will do in line with the National Development Plan, which has been adopted by South Africa, as a master plan, that guides our developmental vision as a country.

We present this Plan as a clear strategy based on local needs and is annually fine-tuned to make it a living document. It is very essential to mention that the implementation of this plan requires an accelerated pace of intergovernmental action and alignment to ensures that all developmental players play their part. On behalf of Council, I would like to take this opportunity to thank all the role players who have contributed in various ways to this IDP Review for 2014/2015.

Indeed we have a good story to tell in celebrating our twenty years of democracy and freedom and working together we can move the district, province and country forward.

**I thank you, Enkosi, Baie Dankie**

**CLLR JZ LOLWANA  
EXECUTIVE MAYOR**



## **OVERVIEW BY THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER**

Integrated Development Planning is a locally based plan that is undertaken by the municipality in line with the provisions of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000) as well as other myriad of local government legislation. The IDP, in its nature, must be participatory and must pull together various actors within and outside the municipal area towards achieving common purpose and objectives and eventually making places where people live, work and play better.

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) Review for 2014/2015 deals with the challenges, opportunities, weaknesses and threats that the municipality is facing and will continue to face. Pixley ka Seme District Municipality experiences a number of challenges in the areas of access to water, access to electricity, unemployment which is standing at 28.3%, mechanisms to improve access to sanitation services and more importantly measures that can lead to job creation.

Equally there are success stories that need to be told. From 1996 there has been slight shift in unemployment in the district from 37% to 28.3% in 2011. Access to water has improved and it is now standing at 97% although challenges still remain around operations and maintenance. Electricity access is very high at 84% of the population.

It is important to also realize that there are various local and international issues that the municipality must contribute to in order to ensure that there is better life for all. The municipality must work two-fold to contribute to millennium development goals, the new growth path for South Africa and recently the National Development Plan that was adopted in 2012. Against this background this year's IDP is the strategic document that demonstrates our improvement as the municipality and provide our strategic intention of realizing our unwavering commitment to the ideal of a creation of a better world for all humans.

As the Municipal Manager I am expected to ensure all the times that the commitment of this municipality is realized, and that the skill and the capacity that we have within the organization contributes unreservedly to the attainment of the development goals.

I am responsible among others for efficient, effective and accountable administration that is capable to ensure the proper implementation of the IDP, an improved Performance Management System and implementation of lawful decisions of the council and Political Office bearers.

Priorities and objectives in this IDP will inform the Top Layer Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) which will be published on an annual basis to form the basis of a contract between the Pixley ka Seme District Council, its community, stakeholders and partners.

In conclusion, the IDP review for 2014/2015 has been compiled in line within the provisions of the Municipal Systems Act of 2000 and has included key indicators and targets for performance per Key Performance Area (KPA). It is envisaged that in 2014/2015 and beyond, a demand based performance management system will be implemented which will take into account the requirement in the annual reports, issues raised by the Auditor General, the measurable indicators for development from Statistics South Africa and fit that information into Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP).

**MNR. RE PIETERSE**  
**MUNICIPAL MANAGER**

## **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

### **Introduction**

Pixley ka Seme District Municipality is striving for the 2016 vision, the District and its constituent local municipalities are working as an entity in realizing this vision. This will ensure integration in service delivery for the entire region. In order to realize this vision there must be a strategic development plan or IDP that will guide the council on how best it can work with its citizens, groups and communities to create sustainable human settlement which provides for decent quality of life and meet the social, economic and material needs of its communities in a sustainable manner.

As IDP is one of the key tools for municipalities to tackle their new developmental roles, the 2013/14 IDP was reviewed to develop the council's one year IDP in terms of the MSA of 2000 which will guide and inform all planning, budgeting, management and decision-making in the municipality.

### **Purpose of the IDP**

The purpose of this IDP is intimately related to the developmental mission of the District Municipality and the 8 local municipalities under its jurisdiction. The mission as informed by its constitutional mandate which is to promote a developmental municipality where the quality of life of all people will be improved. This mission also created the momentum needed in preparing the council's IDP that will assist the municipality in promoting sustainable development in the region through effective and efficient service delivery to improve the health and living conditions of the poor and local economic development and job creation.

As noted in some of the IDP guide packs, integrated development planning is one of the key tools for local government to cope with its new developmental role. In contrast to the role planning has played in the past, integrated development planning is now seen as a function of municipal management, as part of an integrated system of planning and delivery. The IDP process is meant to arrive at decisions on issues such as municipal budgets, land management, promotion of local economic development and institutional transformation in a consultative, systematic and strategic manner. Integrated development plans, however will not only inform the municipal management, they are also supposed to guide the activities of any agency from the other spheres of government, corporate service providers, NGOs and the private sector within the municipal area.

Against this background, the overall purpose of the current IDP is to develop an integrated planning framework that will impact positively on the livelihood, progress, employment and community development in the district.

### **Planning process**

The reviewing of the IDP was a lengthy planning process, and involved a wide range of role-players from inside and outside the municipality. Such a process therefore needs to be properly organized and prepared. As a result a business plan or Process Plan that will guide the entire review process was prepared by council. It indicates in a simple and transparent manner what has to happen when, by whom, with whom, and where, and

includes the costs estimates for facilitating the review process. A district framework plan was also prepared to ensure that the process of district IDP and local IDP's are mutually linked and can inform one another.

The preparation of the plans was a prerequisite for the reviewing of the IDP, primarily because they offer guidelines on how to plan and adopt an IDP. Thus, the pre-planning that was undertaken during the review process was a planning exercise that was strategically incorporated into the IDP process so as to ensure that the draft IDP which will be adopted by council is prepared in accordance with the legal requirements and institutional framework of the Municipal Systems Act.

These two documents were adopted by council on 27 August 2013 so that they fulfil the legal requirements of section 28(1) of the Municipal Systems Act, which requires each municipal council to adopt a process set out in writing to guide the planning, drafting and review of its IDP.

## **2014/2015 IDP REVIEW**

This executive summary for the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality 2014/2015 IDP summarizes the comprehensive IDP review document that consists of five (5) different but interrelated chapters. The chapters are as follows:

**Chapter 1:** gives the background of the district and contains the process plan and the district framework that guided the review process. It also contains the 10 focus areas of the IDP. These are issues that are of key importance to the longer-term survival and prosperity of the municipalities and the country as a whole, such as economic growth and job creation, eradicating poverty, broad-based black economic empowerment, maintaining the integrity of the environment, service delivery, sustainable human settlements, inter-governmental collaboration, etc.

**Chapter 2:** is the analysis phase or the status quo report which deals with the existing situation in the district. During this phase a detailed analysis of the municipalities was undertaken. This was in order to establish the type of problems faced by the people in all the municipal areas. The issues or problems that were identified range from lack of basic services to unemployment and low economic growth. The problems were also weighed according to their urgency and/or importance so as to come up with those to be addressed first i.e. priority issues.

During the identification of these problems, the district municipality considered people's perceptions of their problems and needs so as to understand not only the symptoms, but also the causes of the problems. This was in order for the council to make informed decisions on appropriate solutions to the problems. Given the purpose of this phase all relevant stakeholders and the people/communities affected were involved through the IDP representative forum meetings in determining the problems and the extent of the problems.

Prioritization of the identified issues was also done in this chapter to assist the the district municipality in allocating the scarce resources to those issues highlighted as more important and/or urgent.

The envisaged output or outcome of this chapter includes among other things, the assessment of existing level of development in all the municipal areas, priority issues/problems, information on causes of priority issues/problems and information on how to address the identified issues.

**Chapter 3** is the strategy phase and the strategies are structured according to the different **National Outcomes**. Based on the outcome of chapter 2, the council was put in a better position to make crucial decisions on its destination and on the most appropriate ways to deal with the prevailing problems in the district. Therefore during this phase the **long-term vision of the municipality and the mid-term objectives for each priority issues** were done in order to indicate in the plan what the municipality would like to achieve in the long-term and to also provide answers to the question of how the municipality will reach its development objectives. The issues of alignment of the municipality's predetermined objectives with the National, Provincial Policies and Public participation is emphasized in this chapter.

**Chapter 4:** is the integration phase that requires a municipality to align the identified projects with its development objectives and strategies. Furthermore it is also a phase that provides opportunities for the municipality to harmonise the projects in terms of contents, location and timing in order to arrive at consolidated and integrated programme e.g. a local economic development programme. The sector programmes and/plans that are included in this chapter are integrated spatial development framework, district growth and development strategy, disaster management plan, integrated waste management plan, integrated environmental management programme, etc.

**Chapter 5:** is the project phase. As this phase is one of the critical components of an IDP, projects aimed at addressing the developmental challenges were identified. All projects were identified in consultation with relevant stakeholder in order to ensure that they address the needs and priorities of the communities. During the review process the identified projects in chapter 5 were then screened to ensure that they are in line with the priority issues, development objectives, strategies and resources. On this basis the project proposals, sector programmes and plans were prepared to ensure that the projects can be implemented in a coordinated and integrated way.

From the above, it is perhaps important to mention that this document is basically providing guidelines on how the district municipality and its local municipalities will have to arrive at crucial decisions on its destination and on the most appropriate ways to deal with a wide range of problems faced by the people in all the municipal areas. Therefore successful implementation of the IDP remains the responsibility of all relevant stakeholders that are involved in community development.

### **Content of the IDP**

The 2014/15 IDP comprises 2 volumes of documentation. **Volume 1** gives the background of the region and contains the status quo report, development objectives, strategies, projects, district framework plan and process plan that was adopted by Council to guide the IDP review process. It also contains the summaries of some of the following documents:

- Spatial Development Framework

- District Growth and Development Strategy
- Integrated Environmental Management Programme
- 2014/15 Budget
- Integrated Waste Management Plan
- Disaster Management Plan
- Water Services Development Plan
- Integrated Transport Plan
- Integrated housing plan

**Volume 2** contains the following integrated plans/programmes which are regulatory requirements for an intergrated development planning as provided for by the Municipal Systems Act and IDP guide pack.

The documents are:

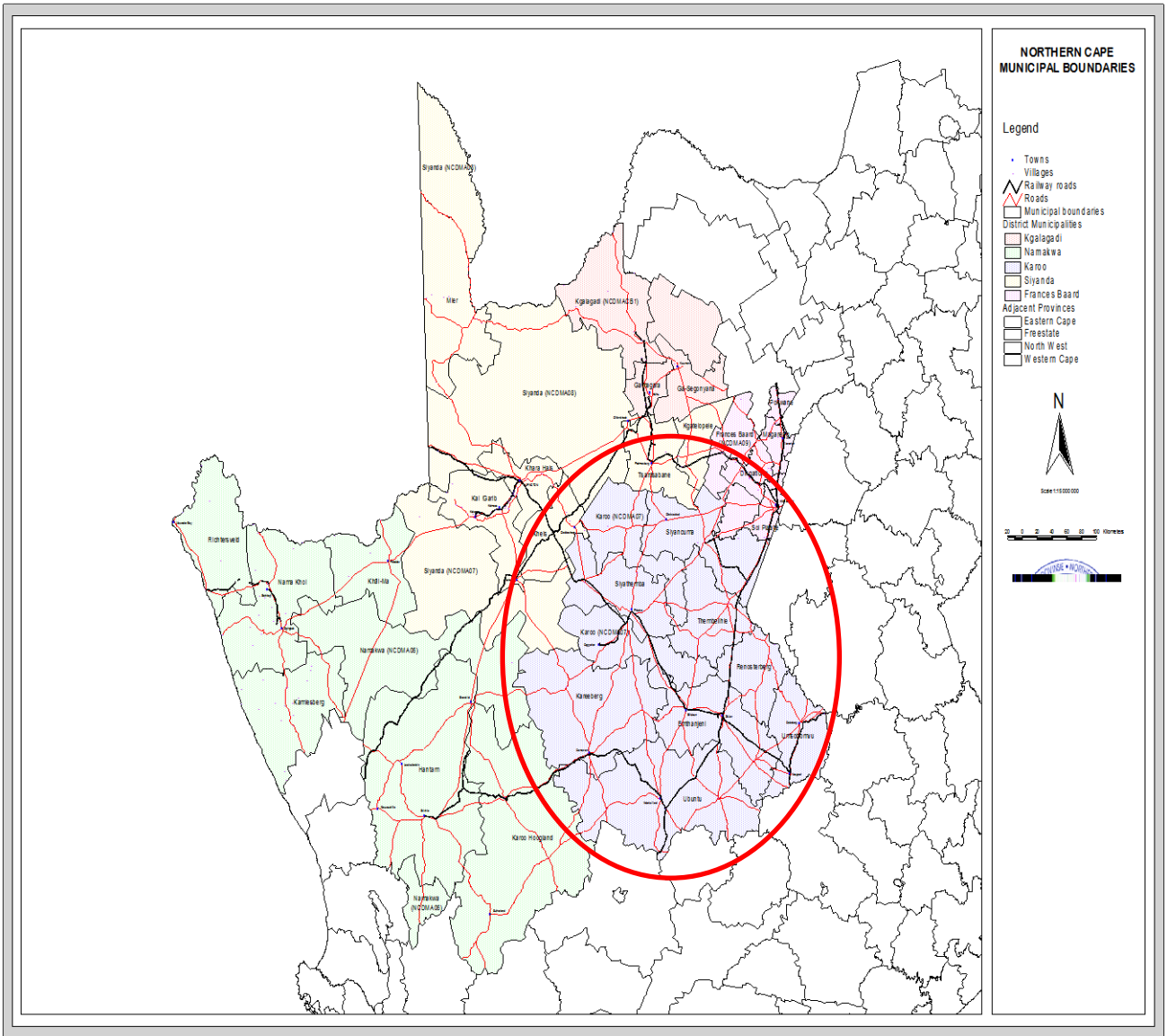
- ◆ Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
- ◆ Consolidated Infrastructure Plan (CIP)
- ◆ Institutional Development Plan
- ◆ Pixley ka Seme District Tourism Sytrategy
- Municipal Supply Chain Management Policy
- Risk Management Policy
- Recruitment Policy for the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Skills Development Policy and Human Resource Skills Development Committee Constitution
- Audit Committee Charter
- Internal Audit Charter
- Draft HIV and Aids Policy
- Health and Safety Policy
- Fraud Prevention Policy
- Credit Conrol Policy
- Employment Equity Plan for Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Fleet Management Policy for Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Career Pathing and Development
- Communication Strategy

## **CHAPTER 1: BACKGROUND**

### **1. Background**

The Pixley ka Seme district lies in the south-east of the Northern Cape Province and shares its borders with three other provinces namely, the Free State province to the east, the Eastern Cape to the south-east and the Western Cape to the south-west. It is one of the five district municipalities in the province and is the second largest covering a surface area of 103 410 km<sup>2</sup>. The geo-political position of the district is shown in map 1.

**MAP 1: Geo-political position of Pixley ka Seme District**



The Pixley ka Seme District Municipality is a category C Municipality. It came into being after the disestablishment of the Bo Karoo District Council. During the same process of disestablishment the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality was established in terms of the Demarcation Act of 1988.

This resulted in the addition of areas formerly under the jurisdiction of the former Hantam District Council as well as Diamantveld District Council. The Pixley ka Seme District Municipal is made up of eight (8) category B municipalities. The category B municipalities include: Emthanjeni, Kareeberg, Renosterberg, Siyancuma, Siyathemba, Thembelihle, Ubuntu and Umsobomvu municipality. The number of towns falling under the jurisdiction of the Pixley ka Seme District municipal area is 26.

They range to medium sized towns with a population of  $\pm 30\ 000$  to very small towns with a population of a few thousands. Because of the sparsely distribution of the population long distances must be travelled in order to serve the different communities.

The District municipal area is ideally located at some key major routes such as the N1 from the Northern Province, Pretoria and Johannesburg to Cape Town. The N9 route from Colesberg joining the N10 to Port Elizabeth and the rest of the Eastern Cape, the N12 route from Johannesburg via Kimberley to Cape Town, the N10 from Namibia via Upington linking Namibia to the Eastern Cape go through the region. The railway network around De Aar is one of the largest in South Africa.

In addition to this there is the mighty Orange River which flows through the heart of the District Municipal area. Three major dams are within the municipal area, namely: Gariep Dam, Vanderkloof Dam and Boegoeberg Dam. Because of the Orange River and the Vaal River flowing through the area there is a lot of intensive crop farming activities on the banks of these rivers.

But unfortunately these activities are only centered in towns situated alongside the rivers, because the towns that are situated just a few kilometers away from the rivers lack water. The situation adversely impact on the economy of these towns. Water provision and availability is one of the issues that will have to be addressed in order to improve the economic activity in most towns situated within the Pixley ka Seme District Municipal area.

The Council has Executive Mayor and a Speaker who are from the majority party. The Council will hold its strategic planning session before this June for the next financial year, where their priority issues will be identified. These priority issues determine the Council's vision, mission, key performance areas, development strategies and development objectives. In order for the Council to achieve its objectives a process should be followed were through participatory means, projects and programmes will be identified that will address the identified issues or problems. This will be achieved through the integrated Development planning process.

As mentioned earlier, the region covers an area of 103 410 square kilometers as shown in table 1, with rainfall mainly in the summer and relatively low, with the exception of the small stock farming resulting in all economic activities being concentrated around the Orange River.



**Table 1: Land Cover by Local Municipalities**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Area (Km<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>% Of Total</b>
Emthanjeni	13 472	13.02
Kareeberg	17 702	17.11
Thembelihle	8023	7.80
Siyathemba	14 725	14.23
Renosterberg	5 527	5.43
Ubuntu	20 389	19.70
Siyancuma	16 753	16.20
Umsobomvu	6 819	6.60
<b>District (Total)</b>	<b>103 410</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: Statistics SA: 2011

## 1.1 Agriculture

Wheat maize and lucerne are very important crops but the possibility exists that there can be a shift to alternative high value crops. Small stock farming is one of the attributes of the region and therefore the region has a strong history of wool farming and this can benefit farm diversification into the more lucrative ventures, like cashmere production.

### 1.1.1 Stock farming

Stock farming takes place throughout the whole region and is mainly focussed on small stock, consisting of sheep and goats. The sheep farming produces mutton and wool. There are several abattoirs in the region with the largest located in the Emthanjeni Municipal Area with a capacity of 2000 sheep slaughtered per day. At present up to 1000 sheep are slaughtered daily in Umsobomvu Municipal Area.

The huge potential for the region lies in adding value to the products within the area. At present products are leaving the areas in unprocessed form.

The area also produces large quantities of wool that are processed in the Eastern Cape. The area is surely the largest wool-producing region in South Africa and again offers the potential of beneficiation within the region.

### 1.1.2 Irrigation

The Orange River and the Vaal River run through the region and irrigation farming is confined to the areas where irrigation farming is practised along these rivers.

Irrigation farming forms a large part of the agricultural activities in the region and numerous products are cultivated along the rivers. The products include maize, peanuts, lucerne, grapes, dry beans, soya beans, potatoes, olives, pop corn, pecan nuts, pistachio nuts and cotton.

These products also leave the area in the raw and there is potential for beneficiation within the Pixley Region. Products produced under the climatic conditions in the region are considered as some of the healthiest available.

## **1.2 Tourism**

Tourism in the district is strengthened by several government owned projects, such as the Rolfontein outdoor Wilderness school, and the re-development of several resorts and facilities (the Wildebeest Kuilrock Art centre, the Douglas holiday resort and Die bos resort in Prieska).

### **1.2.1 Game Farming**

The region has a long history of game farming. Game farming industry provides possibilities of a reasonable income. The Orange and Vaal rivers are major tourist attraction and the district also boosts two game reserves.

## **1.3 Industry**

Industries in the area are mostly confined to light industries. The rivers provide a constant supply of water in certain parts of the region, which at least offer the potential of using the products produced in the area as a basis for beneficiation.

The N1 and N12 routes that link the two main economic centres in South Africa, i.e., the Rand and the Western Cape carry thousands of tons of valuable goods and material every day to all parts of the country. No fewer than 30 trains pass through the railway network around De Aar and Noupoot daily in both directions, to and from these main economic centres.

The N9 and N10 routes link Namibia and Gauteng with the coastline of Port Elizabeth, which is also the nearest export harbour for the Pixley region.

On average 9 freight trains between Gauteng and the Western Cape pass through the station at De Aar every day, 4 to Port Elizabeth, 2 to Namibia and 10 from De Aar to Kimberley. The station at De Aar has direct or indirect links to virtually every corner of South Africa.

An average of 1 000 000 tons are conveyed through this station every month and the capacity exists to increase this tonnage with ease.

Eskom, the country's largest supplier of electricity, has a major presence in the Pixley as a regional Office of Eskom is situated in Colesberg and Eskom is represented in nearly every town in the Pixley.

One of Eskom's largest sub-stations – Hydra – is located near De Aar, supplying high voltage power especially to the Western Cape and the rural areas.

### **1.4 Electricity**

This electricity is mainly generated in the Northern Areas of the country and distributed to the surrounding smaller towns of the southern regions via the central corridor. Spoornet's power lines also originate at Hydra. The station is staffed by 23 trained personnel.

The Vanderkloof Dam is used by Eskom to generate peak demand electricity. The 112m high dam wall houses two 120-megawatt generators, which supply peak demand. Power is generated by turbine engines with an outflow of 150 cubic metres of water per second, into the second largest dam in South Africa.

## **1.5 Mineral resource**

Pixley ka seme district has a few modest mineral wealth. The most important mines which made a significant contribution to the economy were copper, asbestos and diamond (Glen Ellen and Keoghs for asbestos, copper ton for copper and Franshek for diamond). Recent information indicates that uranium and gas deposits are also found in the region.

The copper mine was closed down because of its uneconomical use, asbestos mine closed because of its harmful disease to human kind and the diamond mine is about to close because of the small deposits it produces as required by the Department of Mining

There are some other semi precious stones found in some municipal areas like the tiger's eye and chalcedonies for jewelry production.

In addition there are also a few scale low yielding diamonds site at Schmidsdrift in Siyancuma municipal area which could make marginal contribution to the economy and export earnings. Latest information with regard to this mineral indicates that the mining company that was operating stopped because it was operating illegally.

According to the District Growth and Development Strategy (DGDS) the district and local municipalities together with relevant provincial and national departments plan to emphasize the need to intensify mineral exploration and to update knowledge on the district's mineral resources.

## **1.6 Economic functionality**

The key strengths of Pixley ka Seme's economy are community services, agriculture, transport and tourism. The small towns' functions primarily as agricultural service centers and the main economic activities are located in the main urban areas of De Aar, Colesberg, Victoria-West and Carnarvon. According to the DGDS, opportunities identified for growth and development include manufacturing, agro-processing, mining and semi-precious stones, etc.

## **1.7 Economic Growth**

The Economic growth of the district was 0.6% in 2005, which is below the national average of 4% in 2007 and represents a significant barrier to meeting the material needs of many communities in the region. This information will be reviewed when the 2011 figures are available.

## **1.8 Local Economic Development**

The status of the district economy epitomizes the legacy of apartheid through its skewed development among former white areas and townships. All communities are affected in terms of poverty and development deficit (with unemployment reaching approximately 28.3% SSA 2011). Upliftment of the local economy has therefore been a key area of focus for the district municipality along with its local municipalities. During the implementation of the services delivery plan of the district development support is spread poverty-proportion-wise in the region.

Given the magnitude of poverty (43.5%) and development deficit in the district, the Pixley ka Seme District municipality has vowed to do everything in its power to create jobs. To achieve this goal, the district and local municipalities have compiled the District Growth and Development strategy in 2006 and a significant number of LED projects have been supported to date. It is a strong conviction of the district and local municipalities that in order to lure investors to the district, we should put our weights behind critical development activities that are taking place nationally and internationally.

By virtue of its geographical location, the region provides itself as a natural transportation route for people traveling to destinations such as Cape Town, Gauteng and Bloemfontein since two of the major national roads, namely N1 and N12 pass through the district. The Pixley ka Seme District municipality has prepared its Spatial Development Framework that will ensure maximum economic benefit along these roads.

## 1.9 Developmental Challenges

The developmental challenges in the district include a rising level of poverty, economic stagnation, unemployment and geographically imbalanced settlement structure. The district and local municipalities performed a detailed economic development investigation on every town in the district. This study is informing the LED strategy of the district municipality.

### 1.10 Identified Issues

In addition to the above-mentioned development challenges, local municipalities and IDP representative forum had also identified the following as development challenges in the region:

- Lack of diversification of the district economy
- Lack of investment in the region
- Lack of employment opportunities
- Lack of skills
- Lack of entrepreneurship
- Small number of SMME's active in the region
- Underutilization of the regions natural resources and economic opportunities
- Lack of water for irrigation farming

#### 1.10.1 Integrated Development Planning Process

##### Preparation

DRAFTING an IDP requires a comprehensive planning process and the involvement of a wide range of role-players from inside and outside the Municipality. Such a process has to be properly organised and prepared. The purpose of this document is to indicate the institutional preparedness of the Municipality for the Integrated Development Planning process.

#### 1.10.2 SECTION 1

##### PROCESS PLAN

In order to ensure that the Integrated Development Planning process complies with certain minimum quality standards and that proper co-ordination between and within the spheres of government is established, the preparation of the **Process Plan** is regulated by the Municipal Systems Act, 2000.

The Municipality must notify the local community of the particulars of the process it intends to follow. The **Process Plan** has to be submitted and adopted by Council on or before 20 December 2013, and then be submitted to the Provincial MEC responsible for Local Government.

The **Process Plan** should fulfil the function of a business plan and should stipulate in simple terms what has to happen, when, by whom, with whom, and where.

##### (a) Introduction

The Integrated Development Planning is about the municipality analysing the existing level of development, identifying the present situation and the strengths and weaknesses of the local authority. This determines the vision, mission and key performance areas, strategies and objectives. The identification of projects and programmes to address the issues follows this process. It is critical to link the planning to the Municipal budget and performance management to ensure that identified projects are directed by the IDP. During this process community participation and Provincial and National legislation will be of the utmost importance.

The Integrated Development Planning process comprises:

##### Five year IDP Planning:

- Phase 1: Analysis
- Phase 2: Strategies
- Phase 3: Projects
- Phase 4: Integration
- Phase 5: Approval

## 1.11 Institutional Arrangements

The elected Council is the ultimate decision-making forum on IDP's. The role of participatory democracy is to inform, negotiate and comment on those decisions, in the course of the planning process.

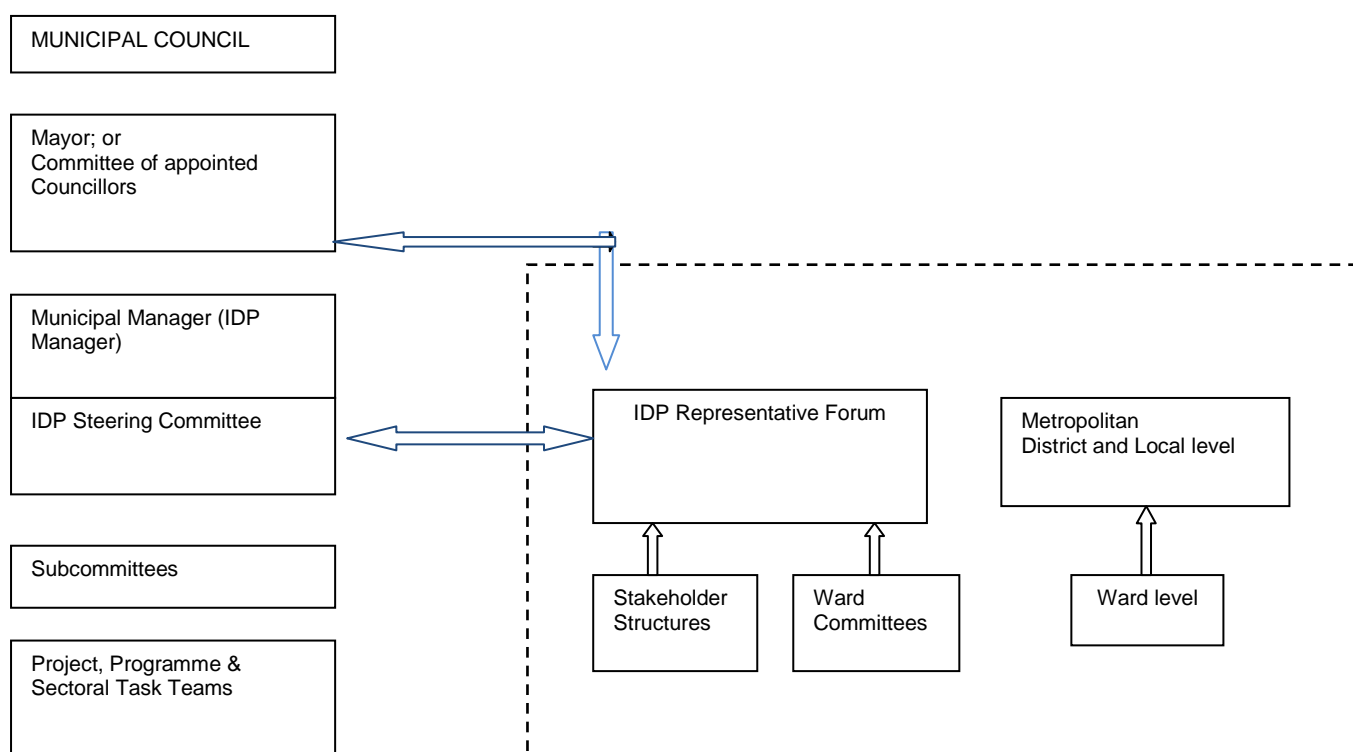
The following positions and structures are recommended and will serve as a guide:

- IDP Representative Forum
- Municipal Manager or IDP Manager
- IDP Steering Committee
- Project, Programme and Sectoral Task Teams

The IDP Manager, IDP Steering Committee and IDP Representative Forum are structures required throughout the Integrated Development Planning process.

The Project, Programme and Sectoral Task Teams will be small operational teams composed of a number of relevant municipal sector departments and technical officials involved in the management of the implementation and, where appropriate, community stakeholders directly affected by the project and programme.

Proposed Integrated Development Planning Structure



## 1.12 Establishment Process

- Committee of Appointed Councillors should, in consultation and with support of the Municipal Manager:
  - ✓ Define Terms of Reference for the IDP Manager and Steering Committee
  - ✓ Identify an appropriate IDP Manager, taking into consideration the importance of IDP
  - ✓ Assign responsibilities to the Municipal Manager regarding the drafting of the IDP;
  - ✓ Identify and nominate suitable candidates for the Steering Committee, ensuring that all relevant issues (e.g. LED, spatial, housing, finance etc.) have at least one responsible Senior Official; and
  - ✓ Include Portfolio Councillors where applicable.
- The newly established IDP Steering Committee should be responsible for the establishment of the IDP Representative Forum by:
  - ✓ Defining Terms of Reference and criteria for members of the IDP Representative Forum; and

- ✓ Informing the public about the establishment of the IDP Representative Forum and request submission of applications from stakeholders/community groups indicating goals, objectives, activities, numbers of members, and constitution.
- (iii) IDP Steering Committee to:
- ✓ Establish subcommittees (if necessary) and decide on relationships/reporting mechanisms;
  - ✓ Appoint the secretariat

### 1.13 Roles and Responsibilities

- (i) Mayor / Committee of Appointed Councillors
- (ii) The Municipality
  - (iii) IDP Manager
  - (iv) IDP Steering Committee
  - (v) IDP Representative Forum
  - (vi) Stakeholder and Community Representatives
  - (vii) Provincial Government
  - (viii) Support Providers and Planning Professionals
  - (ix) District Municipality

### 1.14 Public Participation

The structures, composition and positions may vary between different categories and types of Municipalities to suit the available human and institutional resources, but the proposed generic arrangements are recommended as a minimum requirement, and are based on the following principles:

- Public participation has to be institutionalised to ensure that all residents have an equal right to participate; and
- Structured participation must specify who is to participate, on behalf of whom, on which issues, through which organisational mechanisms and to what effect.

Public participation is not equally relevant and appropriate in each stage of planning, and not all participation procedures are equally suitable for each planning step. To limit participation costs, to avoid participation fatigue, and to optimise the impact of participation, the mechanisms of participation will have to differ from stage to stage.

## **PROPOSED PLANNING ACTIVITIES AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION**

### **Review IDP Planning**

#### **Phase 1: Analysis**

- Community meetings organised by councillors
- Sample surveys (if necessary)
- IDP Representative Forum

#### **Phase 2: Strategies**

- Strategy workshops, with IDP Representative Forum of all Municipalities, sector provincial and national departments and selected representatives of stakeholder organisations and resource people.
- Strategic Planning Session to outline analysis situation and develop Developmental Strategies Objectives based on material situation.

#### **Phase 3: Projects**

- Strategic Planning Session to consolidate projects as anticipated by DORA.
- Municipality-wide Projects/Programmes
  - Technical subcommittees with few selected representatives of stakeholder organisations/civil society
  - IDP Representative Forum
- Localised Community Level Projects/Programmes
  - Intensive dialogue between technical subcommittees and affected

communities/stakeholders

**Phase 4: Integration**

- IDP Representative Forum

**Phase 5: Approval**

- Submission to council for approval.
- Advertise the Draft IDP in media and public places as part of consultation this give opportunity for comments from community and stakeholder organisations
- IDP Steering Committee.

**Annual Implementation**

- Operational Business Plans
- Municipal Budget
- Monitoring and Evaluation
- Reporting

**1.15 Process Programme**

The following is a proposed Integrated Development Planning Process that a Municipality could follow:

**INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

**1. ONE YEAR IDP PLANNING PROCESS**

**1.1 Phase 1: Analysis**

- (a) Legal Framework Analysis
- (b) Leadership Guidelines
- (c) Municipality Technical Development Analysis
- (d) Community and Stakeholder Development Analysis
- (e) Institutional Analysis
- (f) Economic Analysis
- (g) Socio-Economic Analysis
- (h) Spatial Analysis
- (i) Environmental Analysis
- (j) 2011/16 IDP implementation progress report
- (k) In-depth Analysis and identification of Key Development Priorities

**1.2 Phase 2: Strategies**

- (a) Identifying a Vision, Mission and Value System
- (b) Perform a Gap Analysis
- (c) Identify Key Performance Areas (KPA's)
- (d) Determine Strategies and Development Objectives

**1.3 Phase 3: Projects**

- (a) Evaluation and Prioritisation of Projects and Programmes
- (b) Formulate Project and Programme Proposals in terms of:
  - KPA's
  - Objectives and Key Performance Indicators (KPI's)
  - Measures
  - Targets
  - Initiatives
  - Locations
  - Target Dates
  - Responsibility
  - Cost/Budget implications
  - Source of Finance
- (c) Compile Five Year Operational Business Plans which will include the identified Projects and Programmes

#### **1.4 Phase 4: Integration**

- (a) Screening, revision and integration of projects, programmes and Sectoral Operational business Plans
- (b) Institutional restructuring and alignment
- (c) Performance Management System
- (d) Compile an Integrated Communication Plan

#### **1.5 Phase 5: Approval**

- (a) District alignment
- (b) Public comments
- (c) Provincial/National alignment
- (d) Final approval by the Municipal Council

### **2. ANNUAL IMPLEMENTATION**

- 2.1 Compiling Operational Business Plan
- 2.2 Compiling Municipal Budget
- 2.3 Monitoring and Evaluation
- 2.4 Reporting



**Table 2: Process Timeframe July 2014-June 2015**

TIMEFRAME: INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLANNING PROCESS																																																									
Serial No	Planning Activity	Week																																																							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45											
<b>1</b>	<b>PREPARATION</b>	█	█	█	█																																																				
1.1	Process Plan Drafting and Approval	█	█	█	█																																																				
1.2	District Framework Drafting & Approval	█	█	█	█																																																				
<b>2</b>	<b>ONE YEAR IDP PLANNING PROCESS</b>	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█					
<b>2.1</b>	<b>PHASE 1: ANALYSIS</b>	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█					
a	Community & Stakeholder Development Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█					
b	Municipal Technical Development Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█				
c	Institutional Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█			
d	Economic Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█		
e	Socio-Economic Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█		
f	Spatial Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█		
g	Environmental Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	
h	Legal Framework Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	
i	Leadership Guidelines	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	
j	In-depth Analysis	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	
<b>2.2</b>	<b>PHASE 2: STRATEGIES</b>																																																								
a	Vision, Mission and Values																																																								
b	Gap Analysis & KPA's																																																								
c	Strategies & Development Objectives																																																								
<b>2.3</b>	<b>PHASE 3: PROJECTS</b>																																																								
a	Identify Development Project																																																								
b	Formulate Project and Programme proposals																																																								
c	Sectoral Operational Business Plans																																																								
<b>2.4</b>	<b>PHASE 4: INTEGRATION</b>																																																								
a	Screening, revision & integration of projects & programmes																																																								
b	Institutional restructuring																																																								
c	Performance Management																																																								
d	Integrated Communication Plan																																																								
<b>2.5</b>	<b>PHASE 5: APPROVAL</b>																																																								
a	District Alignment																																																								
b	Public Comments																																																								
c	Provincial and national alignment																																																								
d	Final Approval and Submission to MEC for comments																																																								
e	Final Advertisement																																																								
<b>3</b>	<b>ANNUAL IMPLEMENTATION</b>	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	
a	Operational Business Plans	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
b	Municipal Budget	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█

## **IDP Table of Contents**

The form and content of a Five (5) Year IDP are largely subject to the discretion of a Municipality. The following is an example and should not inhibit any other creative ideas:

### **PROPOSED IDP TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1. Introduction
2. Preparation Process
  - 2.1 Process Plan
  - 2.2 District Framework
3. Vision, Mission and Values
4. Existing Development Analysis
  - 4.1 Legal Framework Analysis
  - 4.2 Leadership guidelines
  - 4.3 Technical Analysis (Basic facts, figures and Key Development Priorities)
  - 4.4 Summary of Community and Stakeholder Analysis (Key Development Priorities)
  - 4.5 Institutional Analysis (Strengths and Weaknesses)
  - 4.6 Economic Analysis (patterns, trends, opportunities and threats)
  - 4.7 Socio-economic Analysis (poverty situations, gender issues, opportunity and threats)
  - 4.8 Spatial Analysis (patterns, trends, opportunities and threats)
  - 4.9 Environmental Analysis (trends, potential disasters, opportunities and threats)
  - 4.10 In-depth Analysis and Identify Key Development Priorities
5. Development Strategies
  - 5.1 Key Performance Areas
  - 5.2 Strategies and Development Objectives
  - 5.3 Summarised list of specific identified Development Projects, Programmes and Sectoral Plans
6. PROJECTS  
Project, Programme and Sectoral Plan Proposals (one page each) linked to Performance Management details
7. Institutional Organisational Structure
  - 7.1 Committee system, community participation, decision-making process (all on diagram)
  - 7.2 List of by-laws
8. Performance Management System including a list of Performance Based Contracts
9. Sectoral (departments) Five Year Operational Business Plans
10. Specific Plans/Frameworks
  - 10.1 Communication Plan
  - 10.2 Financial Plan (including capital)
  - 10.3 Spatial Development Framework
  - 10.4 Disaster Management Plan
11. Implementation Plan
  - 11.1 Monitoring and Evaluation
  - 11.2 Reporting

### **Binding National and Provincial Plans, Planning Requirements and Legislation**

To ensure that all relevant binding National and Provincial legislation as well as other policies, programmes, strategies and available funds are considered in the Integrated Development Planning process. Municipalities should be aware of all the relevant information. In order to use synergies and minimise costs, the district should provide Local Municipalities with the required information.

Use opportunity of engaging with National, and Provincial sector departments to establish contacts for alignment and outline the need for information on policies, programmes and funds, to ensure that the IDP is in line with sector requirements and can attract sector budgets.

It is proposed that District Municipality, with the support of the Provincial IDP Co-ordinator, prepare a list of Provincial Legislation, Plans, Programmes and other important National information for the **District Framework** workshop. A list of National Legislation applicable to the functions of Local Government is attached as Annexure B.

The following is an example of a list of Provincial and National Sectoral Plans, Programmes and Policies:

#### **PROVINCIAL AND NATIONAL PLANS/POLICIES**

- Water Services Development Plan;
- Integrated Transport Plan;
- Integrated Waste Management Plan;
- Land Development Objectives (to be replaced by spatial planning as a requirement to be incorporated as a component in the IDP)
- Housing strategies and targets;
- Coastal management issues;
- Local economic development strategies;
- Integrated infrastructure planning;
- Integrated energy planning;
- Spatial framework
- National Environmental Management Act principles;
- Development Facilitation Act principles;
- Environmental Implementation Plans; and
- Environmental Management Plans

**Table 3: Activity and Resource Plan**

Considering the Proposed Integrated Development Planning Process (Process Programme) and that in terms of the Municipal Finance Management Act, Section 15 that prescribes those Municipalities must prepare draft budgets ready for discussion at the end of 31 March 2014. The following **Activity and Resource Plan** is proposed:

<b>ACTIVITY AND RESOURCE PLAN</b>					
<b>Serial No</b>	<b>Planning Activity</b>	<b>Type of Event</b>	<b>Community Participation</b>	<b>Time required (weeks)</b>	<b>Special Resource Requirements</b>
1.	<u>PREPARATION</u> – Commencement Date				
1.1	Process Plan Drafting & Approval	Desk Work		1	Facilitation
1.2	District Framework Drafting & Approval	Steering Committee			
	<b>Completed:</b>		<b>Total weeks</b>	1	
2.	<u>IDP PLANNING PROCESS</u>				
2.1	<b>PHASE 1: ANALYSIS</b>				Facilitator
(a)	Community & Stakeholder Development Analysis				
(b)	Municipal Technical Development Analysis	Desk Work			
(c)	Institutional Analysis	Steering Committee			
(d)	Economic Analysis				
(e)	Socio-Economic Analysis	Desk Work			
(f)	Spatial Analysis				
(g)	Environmental Analysis				
(h)	Legal Framework Analysis	Rep Forum	X	2	
(i)	Leadership Guidelines	Workshop			
(j)	In-depth Analysis	Mayor/ Chairperson Rep Forum Workshop			
	<b>Phase 1:</b>		<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>2</b>	
2.2	<b>PHASE 2:</b>				
(a)	<b>STRATEGIES</b>			1	
(b)	Vision, Mission & Values			1	
(c)	Gap Analysis and KPA's Strategies & Development Objectives	Desk Work		1	Facilitator
	<b>Phase 2:</b>		<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>4</b>	
2.3	<b>PHASE 3: PROJECTS</b>				
(a)	Identify Development	Desk Work		1	
(b)	Project	Desk Work		1	
(c)	Formulate Project & Programme Proposals Sectoral Operational Business Plans	Desk Wor		1	
	<b>Phase 3:</b>		<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>3</b>	
2.4	<b>PHASE 4:</b>				
(a)	<b>INTEGRATION</b> Screening, revision &	Desk work		1	

(b)	integration of projects and programmes	Desk work		1	Facilitator
(c)	Institutional restructuring(	Desk work		1	
(d)	Summary & inclusion of available sector plans)	Desk work & Rep Forum Workshop	X	1	
	Performance Management				
	Integrated Communication Plan				
<b>Phase 4:</b>			<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>4</b>	
2.5	<b>PHASE 5: APPROVAL</b>				
(a)	District Alignment	Steering Committee Councils	X	2	Facilitator
(b)	Public comments				
(c)	Provincial & National Alignment				
(d)	Final Approval, including submission to the MEC and final Advertisement				
<b>Phase 5:</b>			<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>2</b>	
3.	<b>ANNUAL IMPLEMENTATION</b>	Desk work			
(a)	Operational Business Plans				
(b)	Municipal Budget	Desk work & Rep Forum Workshop	X	4	
(c)	Monitor & Evaluate	Rep Forum Workshop	X		
(d)	Reporting	Desk work	X		
<b>Annual Implementation</b>			<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>4</b>	
			<b>Total weeks</b>	<b>20</b>	

- To be done during other planning activities – no separate time requirements

### ACTIVITY AND RESOURCE PLAN BUDGET

The costs of the IDP process have to be budgeted for by the Municipality. This budget serves as a basis for applying for financial contributions from Provincial and National levels. It can also help the municipal management to monitor whether the planning costs are reasonable in relation to other budget items. In case the planning costs seem to be unacceptably high, one will have to reconsider the Process Plan in order to devise a less costly process, or additional contributions must be obtained from other sources.

Crucial budget/expenditure items to be distinguished are:

- Consultant fees
- Facilitator fees
- Costs for disseminating information
- Costs for workshops and meetings
- Printing costs

## SECTION 2

### **DISTRICT FRAMEWORK**

The **District Framework** binds both the District Municipality and the Local Municipalities in the area, and is supposed to ensure proper consultation, co-ordination and alignment of the planning process of the District Municipality and the various Local Municipalities.

Each District Council must, in consultation with its Local Municipalities, adopt a **District Framework** for Integrated Development Planning in the area as a whole. The **District Framework** must be developed during a joint workshop, and is binding on both District and Local Municipalities.

A District Municipality must conduct its own Integrated Development Planning in “close consultation with the Local Municipalities in that area.” This District IDP must be aligned with the **District Framework** and the IDP processes. Proposals of local Municipalities must be “taken into account” in the drafting process.

### **DISTRICT FRAMEWORK PROCESS**

District briefing session of IDP Managers regarding:

- IDP Planning Process and approach
- Legislation (Municipal Structures and Systems Act)
- Support Systems (shared Services Centres, etc)

All Municipalities draft tentative programmes with alignment needs

District to arrange the workshop and to compile a list of National and Provincial binding legislation and planning requirements.

District Framework workshop to:

- Co-ordinate the individual programmes and agree on the Framework Programme;
- Discuss and agree on alignment needs and mechanisms; and
- Develop and agree on legally binding legislation and relevant planning requirements

Adoption of Framework by District Municipality.

Framework to be considered and adopted by all Local Municipalities within the District boundaries.

### **DISTRICT FRAMEWORK CONTENT**

The following is a proposed Table of Contents, with due consideration to prescriptions contained in legislation:

- Introduction
- Consultation Procedures
- Matters requiring alignment
- Binding National and Provincial Plans, Planning Requirements and Legislation
- Amendment Procedures

#### **(a) Introduction**

The following will at least be addressed:

- Purpose of the Framework
- Role players:
  - District Municipality
  - Local Councils
  - Provincial and National Government

**(b) Consultation Procedures**

**(i) Role players**

It is proposed that the following persons and structures be involved in the alignment process:

Between Local Municipalities and the District Municipality:

- **District:** IDP Manager and Chairperson of the IDP Representative Forum
- **Local Councils:** IDP Manager and Chairperson of the IDP Representative Forum;
- PIMS Centres; and
- Provincial IDP Co-ordinator

Between District/Local Municipalities and Provincial/National Government

- District IDP Manager;
- Local IDP Manager;
- Provincial IDP Co-ordinator
- Provincial/National Senior Sector Department Officials; and
- Senior Officials of relevant Service Providers (Eskom, Water Board, Telkom, etc.)

The following Alignment Process is proposed:

- District IDP Steering Committee to present alignment needs at District Framework workshop.
- At workshop:
  - Compile joint list of alignment needs and discuss mechanisms to ensure alignment;
  - Agree on alignment mechanism, as well as timeframes and role players to be involved; and
  - Agree on a final decision mechanism to dissolve disputes or differences between Local Municipalities and between Local and District Municipality.
- District Municipality is to engage (meeting, written communication) with Provincial and National Departments and other stakeholders to outline District alignment needs and expectations and agree on mechanisms.
- Each municipality (local and district) to consider alignment when devising their Process Plans (Process Programme with timeframe).

**(ii) Management Alignment Structure**

The following Alignment Structure is proposed:

<p><b><u>DISTRICT IDP REPRESENTATIVE FORUM</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b><u>Chairperson</u></b> District IDP Representative Forum Chairperson</li> <li>• <b><u>Members</u></b><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Local IDP Representative Forum Chairpersons</li><li>- District IDP Manager</li><li>- Local IDP Managers</li></ul></li> <li>• PIMS Centre and/or Provincial Co-ordinator</li></ul>
--

**(iii) Consultation during Planning Process**

The proposed process for consultation between the District Municipality and the Local Municipalities during the Five Year Planning Process is as follows:

- **Phase 1: Analysis**  
The District Municipality may perform analysis related to region-wide issues and co-ordinate and align Key Development Priorities with the Local Municipalities.
  
- **Phase 2: Strategies**

Local Municipalities should be invited to District strategy workshops to jointly discuss the most appropriate problem-solving strategies. Provincial and National specialists and competent resource-persons from civil society could be invited to join this process, which will be facilitated by staff of the District-level Shared Services Centre.

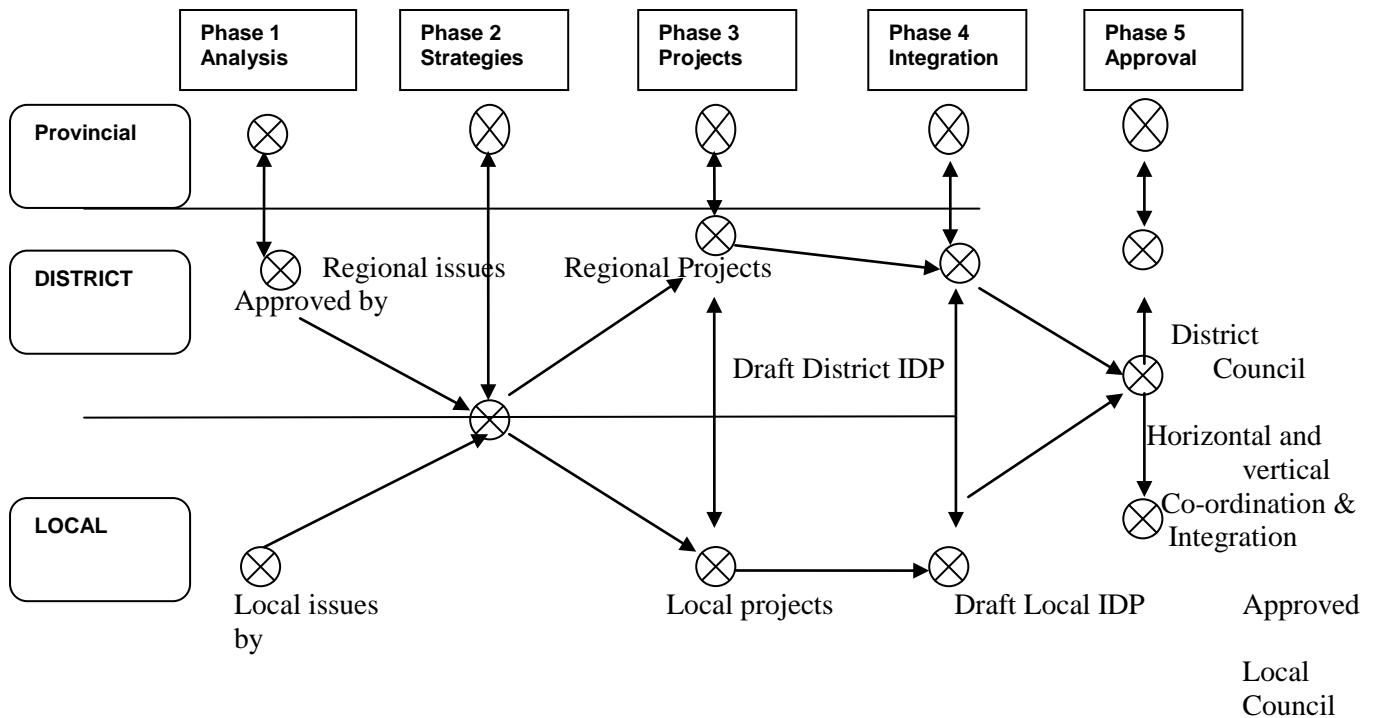
- **Phase 3: Projects**  
Project and Programme planning will require co-ordination and alignment between the District and Local Municipalities.
- **Phase 4: Integration**  
During this phase Local and District Municipalities will consolidate the project proposals in order to finalise their respective integrated Development plans and programmes.
- **Phase 5: Approval**  
The District will play an important role in horizontal (cross-border issues) and vertical co-ordination.

Local and District-level planning will be done parallel, but inform each other mutually, rather than in a one-sided bottom-up or top-down manner.

<b><u>DISTRICT ALIGNMENT ACTIVITY PROGRAMME</u></b>			
<b>Phases</b>	<b>Alignment Activity</b>	<b>Local Municipality</b>	<b>Local Government/ Provincial/National</b>
<u>Phase 1:</u> Analysis	Key Development Priorities	X	X
<u>Phase 2:</u> Strategies	District-level Strategy workshop	X	X
<u>Phase 3:</u> Projects	Project planning co-ordination	X	X
<u>Phase 4:</u> Integration	Integration of Sector Programme (Provincial/National)	X	X
<u>Phase 5:</u> Approval	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Submission of draft IDP</li> <li>• Comment on draft IDP</li> <li>• Compiling District-level Summary of local IDPs</li> </ul>	X X X	X X



## MODEL FOR ALIGNMENT



### (c) Matters requiring alignment

Matters that may require alignment may include the Integrated Development Planning process (5 phases), as well as Section 84 (1) and (2) of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (The Division of Powers).

#### **LIST OF MATTERS THAT MAY NEED ALIGNMENT THROUGHOUT THE DISTRICT**

- IDP Process Programmes
- IDP Process Timeframes
- IDP Table of Contents
- Five Year Planning Process
- Phase 1: Analysis (Co-ordinate Key Development Priorities)
- Phase 2: Strategies
- Phase 3: Projects
- Phase 4: Integration
- Phase 5: Approval (Requires horizontal and vertical alignment)
- Annual implementation
- Municipal Budgets
- Monitoring and Evaluation
- Reporting
- Section 84 (1) and (2) The Division of Powers
- Electricity and gas reticulation
- Fire-fighting services
- Local tourism
- Municipal airports
- Municipal planning (IDP)
- Municipal public transport
- Municipal public works
- Municipal health services

- Water and sanitation services
- Potable water supply systems
- Domestic waste-water
- Sewage disposal systems
- Cemeteries, funeral parlours and crematoria
- Markets
- Municipal abattoirs
- Municipal roads
- Refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal

**(d) Binding National and Provincial Plans, Planning Requirements and Legislation**

Provincial legislation will differ from one Province to another. It is important that Provincial plans and Legislative guidelines be assessed and listed as part of the **District Framework**.

- The District Municipality, with the support of the Provincial IDP Co-ordinator must prepare a list of Provincial legislation and other important national and provincial information for the Framework workshop.
- At the workshop, the District Municipality must provide the above-mentioned list and familiarise the Local Municipalities with the content thereof.

The following is an example of a list of Provincial and National Sectoral Plans, Programmes and Policies:

**Sector Plans, Programmes, Policies and Frameworks**

- Water Services Development Plan;
- Integrated Transport Plan;
- Integrated Waste Management Plan;
- Land Development Objectives (to be replaced by spatial planning as a requirement to be incorporated as a component in the IDP)
- Housing strategies and targets;
- Coastal management issues;
- Local economic development strategies;
- Integrated infrastructure planning;
- Integrated energy planning;
- Spatial framework;
- National Environmental Management Act principles;
- Development Facilitation Act principles;
- Environmental implementation Plans; and
- Environmental Management Plans

A list of National Legislation applicable to the functions of Local Government is attached as Annexure “C”

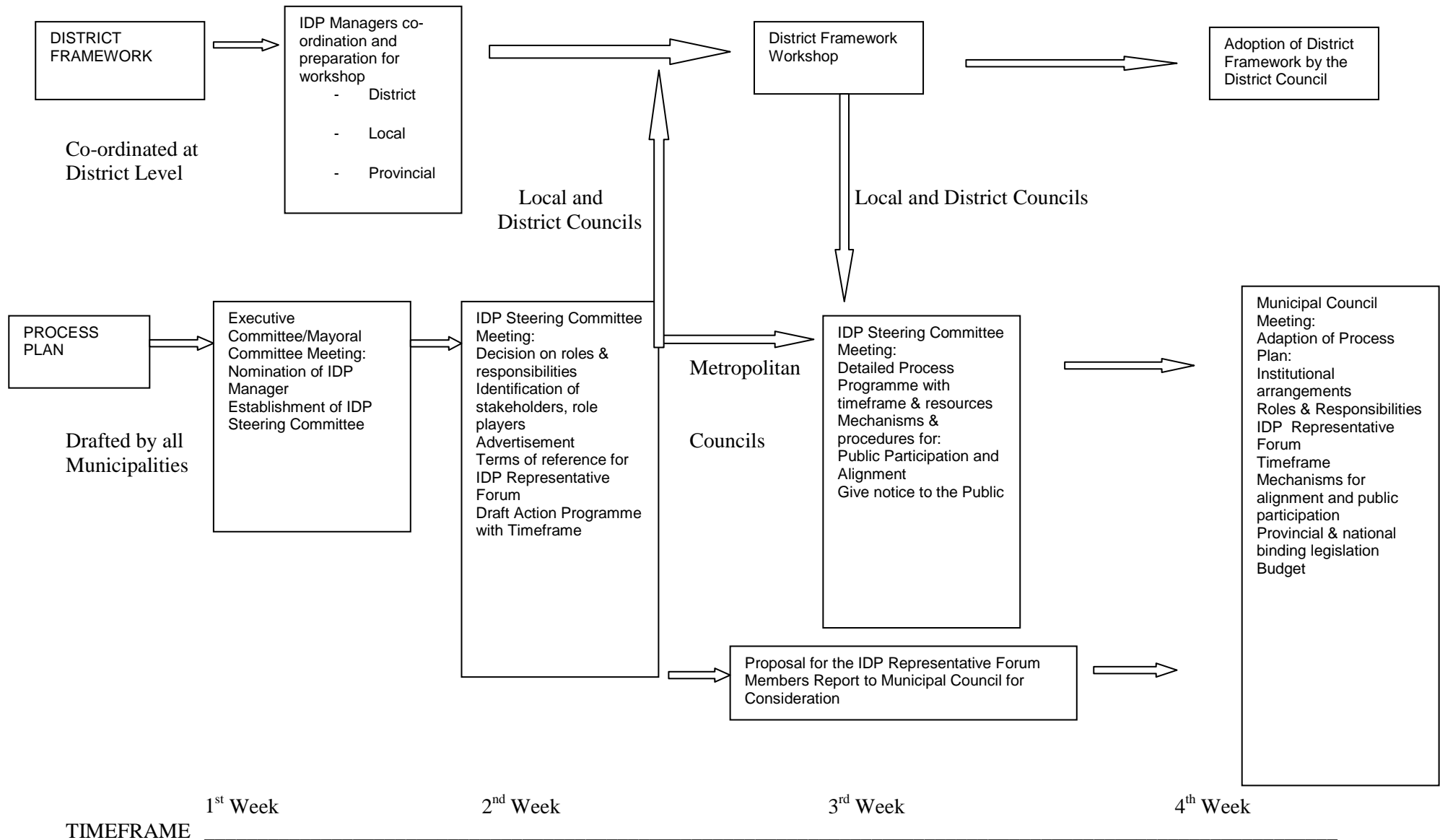
**(e) Amendment Procedures**

Proposed principles and procedures for monitoring of the Process Plan, and the amendment of the District Framework are as follows:

- Each Municipality will be responsible for monitoring its own Process Plan and ensure that the District Framework is being followed as agreed.
- Proposed procedures for deviations:
  - Establish a committee of IDP Managers that meet after each phase to jointly assess progress and decide on amendments;

- Each local Municipality must inform the District Municipality of deviations from the Action Programme that affect District-wide activities (e.g. the identification of municipal priority issues is delayed and the District-wide strategy workshop has to be postponed);
- The District Municipality has the mandate to decide when and how an amendment takes place, and therefore postpones, an activity or continues with the agreed programme; or
- All the relevant Municipalities have to agree before the Framework is amended.

## TIMEFRAME FOR PREPARATION PROCESS



## Roles and Responsibilities

### (i) Mayor/Committee of Appointed Councillors

The Executive Committee or Executive Mayor of a Municipality or, if the Municipality does not have an Executive Committee or Executive Mayor, a committee of appointed councillors by the municipal council, must:

- Manage the drafting of the IDP;
- Assign responsibilities in this regard to the Municipal Manager; and
- Submit the draft plan to the municipal council for adoption.

These are structures already established and required by the Municipal Structures Act. The Committee of Councillors appointed by the Municipal Council (the plenary type) in terms of Section 30 of the Systems Act, is a specific structure established for purposes of the IDP. It is recommended that the responsibility for managing of the IDP be assigned to the Municipal Manager or IDP Manager on his behalf.

### (ii) The Municipality

- Prepare, decide and adopt a **Process Plan**.
- Undertake the overall management and co-ordination of the planning process, which includes ensuring that:
  - All relevant stakeholders are appropriately involved;
  - Appropriate mechanisms and procedures for public consultation and participation are applied;
  - The planning events are undertaken in accordance with the set timeframe;
  - The planning process is related to the Key Development Priorities in the Municipality; and
  - National and Provincial sector planning requirements are satisfied.
- Adopt and approve the IDP.
- Amend the IDP in accordance with the requirements of the MEC for Local Government.
- Ensure that the annual operational business plans and budget are linked to and based on the IDP.

### (iii) IDP Manager

The Municipal Manager or IDP Manager, on his behalf, is the responsible person for championing the Integrated Development Planning process. The selection of the appropriate person is crucial for the success of Integrated Development Planning and has to be done as the first step towards preparing the **Process Plan**, since the IDP Manager is also the responsible person for designing the **Process Plan**.

The IDP Manager should be a dedicated person that has the required experience and authority to involve all relevant role players, and would have the following responsibilities:

- Responsible for the preparation of the Process Plan.
- Responsible for the day-to-day management of the planning process in terms of time, resources and people, and ensuring:
  - The involvement of all relevant role players, especially officials;
  - That the timeframes are being adhered to;
  - That the planning process is horizontally and vertically aligned and complies with national and provincial requirements;
  - That conditions for participation are provided; and
  - That outcomes are being documented

- Chairing the Steering Committee
- Management of consultants

**(iv) IDP Steering Committee**

The Steering Committee should be a technical working team of dedicated Heads of Departments and Senior Officials who support the IDP Manager to ensure a smooth planning process. The IDP Manager is responsible for the process, but will often delegate functions to members of the Steering Committee. In Municipalities where relevant portfolio councillors want to be part of the IDP Steering Committee, they should be included.

(1) Composition of IDP Steering Committee:

- Chairperson - Municipal Manager (or IDP Manager)
- Secretariat - Official of Municipality
- Members - Heads of Departments/Sectors and/or
- Senior officials of Municipality and/or Provincial Departments

Note:

Must also include:

- Financial Manager;
- Human Resource Manager;
- Corporate and Legal Manager;
- Marketing and Communications;

(2) The IDP Steering Committee will be responsible for the following:

- Provide terms of reference for subcommittees and the various planning activities.
- Commission research studies.
- Consider and comment on:
  - Inputs from subcommittee(s), study teams and consultants, and
  - Inputs from provincial sector departments and support providers (Shared Services Centre, etc.)
- Process, summarise and draft outputs.
- Make recommendations.
- Prepare, facilitate and minute meetings. Prepare and submit reports to the IDP Representative Forum.

Note:

- The IDP Steering Committee may establish subcommittees for specific activities and outputs which may include additional persons outside the Steering Committee.
- An official of the Municipality should be appointed to prepare, facilitate and document meetings. The function should be the responsibility of the Municipal Planner or similar official.

- For the logistics of workshops, dissemination of information and invitations, the responsible official should be supported by an administrator.

**(v) IDP Representative Forum**

The IDP Representative Forum is the structure which institutionalises and guarantees representative participation in the Integrated Development Planning Process. The selection of members to the IDP Representative Forum has to be based on criteria which ensure geographical and social representation.

(1) The IDP Representative Forum composition:

- **Chairperson** – A member of the Executive Committee or the Executive Mayor or a member of the Committee of Appointed Councillors
- **Secretariat** – IDP Steering Committee
- **Members:**
  - Members of the Executive Committee/Mayoral Committee;
  - Councillors (including Councillors who are members of the District Council and relevant Portfolio Councillors);
  - Traditional leaders;
  - Ward committee chairpersons;
  - Heads of Departments/Senior officials;
  - Stakeholder representatives of organised groups;
  - Stakeholder representatives of unorganised groups;
  - Resource persons; and
  - Community representative (e.g. RDP Forum)

Note:

- The preparation, facilitation and documentation of meetings and workshops of the IDP Representative Forum may need to be supported by Senior Manager, e.g. Shared Services Centre.

District Note:

- Similar structures will be required at District level for the District IDP;
- The composition of the District IDP Representative Forum should include Local Municipality representation
  - IDP Representative Forum Chairpersons
  - IDP Managers

(2) The Forum will be responsible to:

- Represent the interests of their constituents in the IDP process;
- Provide an organisational mechanism for discussion, negotiation and decision-making between the stakeholders and the Municipality;
- Ensure communication between all the stakeholder representatives; and

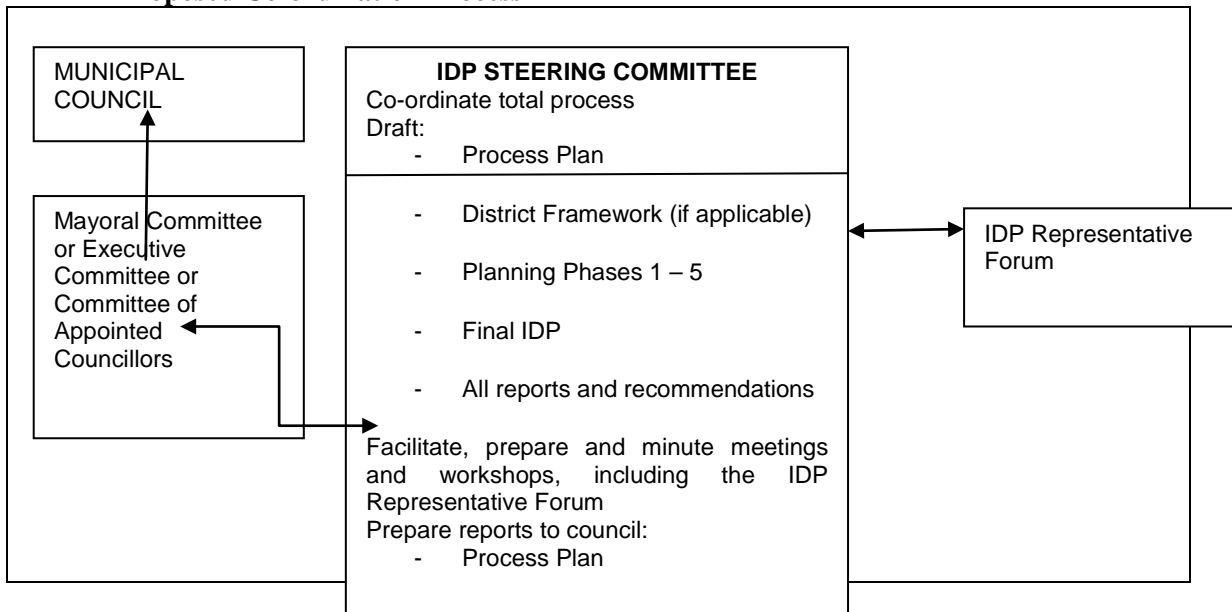
- Monitor the performance of the planning and implementation process.

(3) The IDP Representative Forum Code of Conduct

The Code of Conduct will at least include the following:

- Meeting schedule (frequency and attendance);
- Agenda, facilitation and documentation of meetings;
- Purpose of the Forum;
- Regular feedback to constituents;
- Required majority of approval;
- Quorum requirements; and
- Resolution of disputes (including Provincial assistance)

**Proposed Co-ordination Process**



**(vi) Stakeholder and Community Representatives**

The Stakeholder and Community Representatives have the following roles and responsibilities to fulfil:

- Participating in the IDP Representative Forum to:
  - Inform interest groups, communities and organisations on relevant planning activities and their outcomes;
  - Analyse issues, determine priorities, negotiate and reach consensus;
  - Participate in the designing of project proposals and/or the evaluation thereof;
  - Discuss and comment on the draft IDP;
  - Ensure that annual business plans and budgets are based on and linked to the IDP; and
  - Monitor implementation performance of the IDP.
- Conducting meetings or workshops with groups, communities or organisations to prepare and follow-up on relevant planning activities.

Note:

The specific role of traditional leaders still needs further clarification. The roles of the “civil society” are to be seen as an opportunity rather than a responsibility or duty.



**(vii) Provincial Government**

The Provincial Local Government Department and Sector Departments have the following roles and responsibilities:

- Ensuring horizontal alignment of the Metropolitan and District Municipalities within the province;
- Ensuring vertical/sector alignment between provincial sector departments/provincial strategic plans and the IDP process at Metropolitan/District/Local level;
- Efficient financial management of provincial IDP grants;
- Monitoring the progress of the IDP processes;
- Facilitation of resolution of disputes related to IDP;
- Assist municipalities in the IDP drafting process when required;
- Facilitation of IDP – related training where required;
- Co-ordinate and manage the MEC’s assessment of IDPS;
- Provide relevant information on the provincial sector departments’ plans, programmes, budgets, objectives, strategies and projects in a concise and accessible manner;
- Provide sector expertise and technical knowledge to the formulation of municipal strategies and projects; and
- Engage in a process of alignment with Metropolitan and District Municipalities.

**(viii) Support providers and planning professionals**

Support providers and professionals such as consultants, non-governmental organisations (NGO’s), Shared Services Centre and Municipal Planning officials have the following roles and responsibilities:

- Providing methodological/technical guidance to the IDP process;
- Facilitation of planning workshops;
- Documentation of outcomes of planning activities;
- Special studies or other product related contributions;
- Support to organised and unorganised groups and communities to more effectively engage in and contribute to the planning process; and to
- Ensure the IDP is aligned with the budget and planning requirements of provincial and national departments.

**(ix) District Municipality**

- The District Municipality has the same roles and responsibilities as municipalities related to the preparation of a District IDP.
- Co-ordination roles regarding Local Municipalities:
  - Ensuring horizontal alignment of the IDP’s of the local municipalities in the District Council area;
  - Ensuring vertical alignment between district and local planning;
  - Facilitation of vertical alignment of IDP’s with other spheres of government; and
  - Preparation of joint strategy workshops with local municipalities, provincial and national role players.

**NATIONAL LEGISLATION APPLICABLE TO THE FUNCTIONS OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT**

**GENERAL MANAGEMENT**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996	To introduce a new constitution for the Republic of South Africa and to provide for matters incidental thereto
Local Government: Municipal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To give effect to “developmental local</li></ul>

NATIONAL LEGISLATION	SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION
Systems Act, 2000	<p>government”</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To set principles, mechanisms and processes to promote social and economic upliftment of communities and to ensure access to affordable services for all</li> <li>• To set a framework for planning, performance management ,resource mobilisation and organisational change and community participation</li> </ul>
Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the establishment of municipalities in accordance with the requirements relating to the categories and types of municipality, the division of functions and powers between municipalities and appropriate electoral systems</li> <li>• To regulate internal systems, structures and office-bearers</li> </ul>
Consumer Affairs (Unfair Business Practices) Act, 1996	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the investigation, prohibition and control of unfair business practices in the interest of consumers</li> </ul>
Local Government Cross-boundary Municipalities Act, 2000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To authorise the establishment of cross-boundary municipalities, to provide for the re-determination of the boundaries of such municipalities under certain circumstances and to provide for matters connected therewith</li> </ul>
Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the demarcation of boundaries of municipalities for the establishment of new municipalities</li> </ul>
Municipal Electoral Act, 2000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To regulate municipal elections</li> <li>• To amend certain laws</li> <li>• To provide for matters connected therewith</li> </ul>
Organised Local Government Act, 1997	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the recognition of national and provincial organisations representing the different categories of municipalities and the designation of representatives to participate in the National Council of Provinces etc.</li> </ul>
Promotion of Local Government Affairs Act, 1983	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the co-ordination of functions of general interest to local authorities and of those functions of local authorities which should in the national interest be co-ordinated</li> </ul>
Local Government Transition Act, 1993 REPEALED EXCEPT FINANCIAL PROVISIONS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for matters relating to municipalities in the interim phase, powers and functions of municipalities and actions of officials and councillors</li> </ul>
Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for occupational health and safety in the work place and the protection of persons outside the work place against hazards to health and safety arising from activities of persons at the work place</li> </ul>
Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To control and regulate the right of all persons to access to information</li> </ul>
Promotion of Fair Administrative Justice Act,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To give effect to the right to administrative action that is lawful, reasonable and procedurally fair in</li> </ul>

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
2000	terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996
Promotion of Equality & Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To give effect to section 9 read with item 23(1) of Schedule 6 to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, to prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment</li> <li>• To promote equality and to eliminate unfair discrimination &amp; to prevent &amp; prohibit hate speech &amp; to provide for matters connected therewith</li> </ul>

## **FINANCE**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Business Act, 1991	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To repeal certain laws regarding the licensing of businesses</li> <li>• To provide for the licensing and operation of certain businesses, shop hours and related matters</li> </ul>
Debt Collectors Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for controlled debt collecting</li> </ul>
Income Tax Act, 1962	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the payment of taxes on incomes of persons and taxes on donations</li> </ul>
Insolvency Act, 1936	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To consolidate and amend the law relating to insolvent persons and their estates</li> </ul>
Local Authorities Capital Development Fund Ordinance, 1978 READ WITH Local Government Affairs Second Amendment Act, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the establishment and management of a Capital Development Fund and for matters incidental thereto</li> </ul>
Municipal Accountants' Act, 1988	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the establishment of a Board for Municipal Accountants and for the registration of Municipal Accountants and the control of their profession</li> </ul>
Municipal Consolidated Loans Fund Ordinance, 1952 READ WITH Local Government Affairs Second Amendment Act, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the establishment and management of a Consolidated Loans Fund as approved by the Premier</li> </ul>
Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To regulate financial management in the local sphere of government to require that all revenue, expenditure assets and liabilities of municipalities and municipal entities are managed efficiently and effectively, to determine responsibilities of persons entrusted with local sphere financial management and to determine certain conditions and to provide for matters connect therewith</li> </ul>
Pension Benefits for Councillors of Local Authorities Act, 1987	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide the pension benefits for councillors</li> </ul>
Public Financial Management Act, 1999	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To regulate financial management in the national and provincial governments and, inter alia,</li> </ul>

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
	provincial public entities
Prescribed Rate of Interest Act, 1975	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To prescribe and regulate the levying of interest from debtors</li> </ul>
Reporting by Public Entities Act, 1992	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the reporting to Parliament by public entities</li> </ul>
Value-added Tax Act, 1991	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the taxation in respect of the supply of goods and services</li> </ul>
Local Government Transition Act, 1993 REPEALED EXCEPT FINANCIAL PROVISIONS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for matters relating to municipalities in the interim phase, powers and functions of municipalities and actions of officials and councillors</li> </ul>
Local Government: Property Rates Act	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To regulate general property valuation</li> </ul>

#### **ADMINISTRATION/CORPORATE AND LEGAL SERVICES**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Electoral Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To manage and regulate on national, provincial and local government level</li> </ul>
Expropriation Act, 1975	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the expropriation of land and other property for public and certain other purposes and matters connected thereto</li> </ul>

#### **HOUSING**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Housing Arrangements Act, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the establishment of a national and regional Housing Board(s) and the abolition of certain existing boards</li> </ul>
Rental Housing Act, 1999	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To define the responsibility of Government in respect of rental housing</li> </ul>
Residential Landlord and Tenant Act, 1997	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the regulation of landlord-tenant relations in order to promote stability in the residential rental sector in the province</li> </ul>

#### **TOWN PLANNING AND SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Provision of Certain Land for Settlement, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the designation of certain land and to regulate the subdivision of such land and settlement of persons thereon</li> </ul>
Advertising on Roads & Ribbon Development Act, 1940	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control advertising on national and regional roads</li> </ul>
Black Communities Development Act, 1984	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control the land use rights within the former black areas</li> </ul>

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Development Facilitation Act, 1995	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for Integrated Development Plans, reflecting current planning and to institutionalise development tribunals for evaluating applications</li> </ul>
Physical Planning Act, 1991	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide guidelines for the drafting of urban development plans</li> </ul>
Regulations on Advertisements on or Visible from National Roads, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control all advertising on national and regional roads</li> </ul>
Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control the subdivision of farm land and agricultural holdings</li> </ul>
Town and Regional Planners Act, 1984	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the training and registration of professional Town Planners</li> </ul>

### **SAFETY AND SECURITY**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Criminal Procedure Act, 1977	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To consolidate and regulate procedure and evidence in criminal proceedings</li> </ul>
Disaster Management Bill, 2000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for an integrated, co-ordinated and common approach to disaster management by all spheres of government and related matters</li> </ul>
Fire Brigade Services Act, 1987	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the rendering of fire brigade services and certain conditions to the rendering of the service</li> </ul>
Gatherings and Demonstration Act, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control public gatherings and procession of marches</li> </ul>
Hazardous Substances Act, 1973	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control matters relating to gas, petrol and liquids</li> </ul>
National Land Transport Bill, 1999	
National Land Transport Interim Arrangements Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To make arrangements relevant to transport planning and public road transport services</li> </ul>
Urban Transport Act, 1977, as amended 1992	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To promote the planning and provision of adequate urban transport facilities</li> </ul>
National Road Traffic Act, 1996	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To regulate traffic on public roads, the registration and licensing of motor vehicles and drivers, including fitness requirements and incidental matters</li> </ul>
Road Traffic Management Corporation Act, 1999	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide in the public interest for co-operative and co-ordinated strategic planning, regulation, facilitation and law enforcement in respect of road traffic matters and to provide for matters connected therewith</li> </ul>
Prevention of Illegal Eviction from and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the eviction of unlawful occupants of land and the protection of the rights of such occupants under certain conditions</li> </ul>
South African Police Service Act, 1995	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide, inter alia, for a municipal (city) police</li> </ul>

## HEALTH AND WELFARE

NATIONAL LEGISLATION	SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION
Hazardous Substances Act, 1973	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To control matters relating to gas, petrol and liquids</li> </ul>
Health Act, 1977	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the promotion of the health of the inhabitants of the Republic</li> <li>• To render health services</li> <li>• To define the duties, powers and responsibilities of certain authorities which render such services</li> <li>• To co-ordinate such services</li> </ul>
National Policy for Health Act, 1990	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for control measures to promote the health of the inhabitants of the Republic and for matters connected thereto</li> </ul>

## HUMAN RESOURCES

NATIONAL LEGISLATION	SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION
Employment Equity Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To promote the constitutional right of equality and the exercise of true democracy</li> <li>• To eliminate unfair discrimination in employment</li> <li>• To redress the effect of unfair discrimination in the work place</li> <li>• To achieve a workforce representative of the population</li> </ul>
Basic Conditions of Employment Act, 1997	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To give effect to the right to fair labour practice</li> <li>• To provide for the regulation of basic conditions of employment</li> </ul>
Compensation of Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To regulate the categories of persons entitled to compensation for occupational injuries and diseases, and to determine the degree of disabled employees</li> </ul>
Labour Relations Act, 1995	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To regulate the organisational rights of trade unions, the right to strike and lock-outs</li> <li>• To promote and facilitate collective bargaining and employee participation in decision-making</li> <li>• To provide simple procedures for labour disputes</li> </ul>
Skills Development Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the implementation of strategies to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce</li> <li>• To provide for learnerships, the regulation of employment services and the financing of skills development</li> </ul>
Skills Development Levies Act, 1999	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the imposition of a skills development levy and for matters connected therewith</li> </ul>
South African Qualifications Authority Act, 1995	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the establishment of a National Qualifications Framework and the registration of National Standards Bodies and Standards Generating Bodies and the financing thereof</li> </ul>
Unemployment Insurance Act, 1966	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To provide for the payment of benefits to certain persons and the dependants of certain deceased persons</li> <li>• To provide for the combating of unemployment</li> </ul>

**ELECTRICITY**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Electricity Act, 1987	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for and regulate the supply of electricity and matters connected thereto</li> </ul>

**ENVIRONMENT**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Environmental Conservation Act, 1982	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for environmental impact assessments and exemptions, noise control areas etc.</li> </ul>
Environmental Conservation Act, 1989	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the effective protection and controlled utilisation of the environment and for matters incidental thereto</li> </ul>
National Environmental Management Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for co-operative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment and to provide for matters connected thereto</li> </ul>

**ENGINEERING/TECHNICAL SERVICES**

<b>NATIONAL LEGISLATION</b>	<b>SUMMARY/SCOPE OF LEGISLATION</b>
Advertising on Roads & Ribbon Development Act, 1940	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control advertising on national and regional roads</li> </ul>
Regulations on Advertisements on or visible from national roads, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To control all advertising on national and regional roads</li> </ul>
National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the promotion of uniformity in the law relating to the erection of buildings in the areas of jurisdiction of local authorities and for the prescribing of building standards</li> </ul>
National Water Act, 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for fundamental reform of the laws relating to water resources</li> </ul>
Water Services Act, 1997	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To provide for the rights of access to basic water supply and sanitation, national standards and norms for tariffs and services development plans</li> </ul>

**EXECUTIVE MAYOR :**

\_\_\_\_\_

**DATE POLICY APPROVED :****27 AUGUST 2013****RESOLUTION :****R 2013 – 08 – 27 (9.12.2)**

## **1.16 Focus Areas of the Strategic IDP**

### **1.16.1 Socio-economic development:**

These are issues that are of key importance to the longer-term survival and prosperity of the municipality and the country as a whole, such as economic growth and job creation, eradicating poverty, broad-based black economic empowerment, maintaining the integrity of the environment, etc.

### **1.16.2 Service delivery:**

This relates to the most basic, but also one of the most important functions of municipalities, viz. the provision of quality and efficient services (water, electricity, sewerage, etc.) to communities.

### **1.16.3 Governance:**

Issues in this regard revolve around a myriad of aspects, such as the relationships in the district between the district and local municipality, as well as those between the various local municipalities, the nature and extent of intergovernmental relations, the deepening of democracy through the ward committee system, performance management, annual reporting, capacity building of officials and councillors, etc.

Therefore the major driving force behind this strategic IDP will be the National Spatial development framework, the Northern Cape Growth and development strategy and the District Growth and Developments strategies which includes sector plans.

The Pixley Ka Seme district municipality will align its Development Strategies to support the principles and objectives contained in the abovementioned documents.

### **1.16.4 Economic growth**

The building of a sound local economic base is a huge challenge. It requires careful strategizing in order to position a locality or region in the domestic and international market.

A key part of this positioning is about making the locality functional and appealing through proper infrastructure and service provision and by building the skills and confidence of local communities. In addition to this, Cabinet has recently emphasized the need to focus on economic growth through intensive investment in strategic infrastructure (rail, roads, and ports) and to balance the growth in social spending with growth in public sector economic investment.

- **Challenges**

The major challenge is to develop and implement a strategy that is consistent with the NCPGDS and NSDP that will give effect to this strategy.

Therefore the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality must through thorough investigation and with interaction with all stake holders develop a strategic analysis of each municipality in its jurisdiction that will lead to the identification of sustainable projects that will enhance economic growth and long term job creation.

Strategies to be developed and implemented must be consistent to Provincial sector strategies. Current strategies in place in the District Municipality must be reviewed and amended to ensure consistency.



## **1.17 Broad based Black Economic Empowerment**

BEE extends beyond affirmative procurement and has to become one of the key elements of the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality's IDP. The District Municipality has to develop a strategy that enhances BEE in all its projects, especially in the focus areas as determined by the NCPGDS and DGDS.

- **Challenges**

To develop a strategy consistent with national guidelines that will be consistent and supportive to the sector strategies as determined.

### **1.17.1 Fiscal Discipline**

It is imperative that implementation activities are planned within the resource limits of what can be afforded. Development plans must therefore be realistic and be based on medium term expenditure allocations. At the same time development plans must provide guidance for long term infrastructure development and form the basis for strategizing economic growth.

As development plans also serve to mobilize off-budget resources and guide private sector investment, this means that there need not be a one-to-one correlation between a development plan and the budget.

The coordination of IDPs for example, with the Municipal budgets will ensure that IDPs do not end up as "wish lists" but that the IDPs become strategic and implementation orientated that fulfil one of the big objectives with regard to speeding up delivery of services and becoming developmental orientated.

- **Challenges**

- To guide local municipalities in prioritizing projects in line with available funding.
- To develop a strategy to attract private investors
- To develop strategies for assisting private investors to find counter funding from other sources.
- To persuade government departments to participate in active planning and to direct their medium term budgets to the priorities identified by the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality.

### **1.17.2 Environment**

Many Municipalities in the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality are reliant on the natural environment in which they are located.

- **Challenges**

To develop and implement management strategy or programme that is in line with the Provincial Environmental Sector Strategy, that will both offer protection to the environment as well as optimal use of the environment within its sustainable capacity.

### **1.17.3 HIV/ AIDS**

All actions in government should assist in minimizing the agony that the disease is causing in communities and on ridding the country from the scourge of this disease.

- **Challenges**

- To amend the District Municipality's HIV/AIDS strategy to be in line with national policy and to assist local municipalities to maintain actions for the awareness of the problem and ensuring that the problem receives attention in the plans and budgets of provincial and national sector departments.
- To activate the support of the private sector in coming on board with the fight against HIV/AIDS.

### **1.18 Sustainable Human Settlements**

A key consideration of the future of every municipality in the District Municipality is the consolidation of the spatial form of its settlement form inherited from apartheid.

Key factors to the realization of the ideal of sustainable human settlements are that:

- **Housing** is provided in places where it makes economic sense, i.e. that it is located within easy reach of the key areas of economic activity in a locality and that it can over time grow as an asset.
- **Roads** are developed in such a way and in such places where they can both (1) grow, sustain and support the local and regional economy and (2) ensure ease and affordability of movement of especially the poorest of the poor in a particular settlement.
- **Land reform** takes place to ensure that the previously deprived gain access to the economy. Municipalities also have to ensure that such land is well managed as an asset, by ensuring that the relevant national and provincial sector departments introduce capacity building programmes for new farmers. In addition to this local municipalities need to know how much land they have at their disposal and what is happening with regards to land reform in the district.
- **The living environment** is developed and managed to ensure the highest possible sustainable quality of life. This includes the efficient regulation of land development in the district/metro municipality, and the effective integration of land, transport and infrastructure planning and investment, so as not to create spatial forms that are as inefficient and inequitable as that left behind by apartheid.

- **Challenges**

In the light of (1) the resilience of the apartheid space economy with its dualistic nature, deep-rooted inequalities and inefficiencies (2) the persisting relatively low quality of the areas inhabited by the poor, (3) the lack of growth in the asset value of housing provided in terms of the subsidy programme, (4) the permanence of the infrastructure investment and housing subsidy programmes in many areas, and (5) the Millennium goals, the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality needs to collectively focus on the development of "Sustainable Human Settlements", which have the following characteristics

- agreements reached with other spheres of government, (3) in accordance with integrated development plans prepared in a participatory way (4) with a strong commitment to the management of service and infrastructure provision and (5) on a partnership basis with civil society, including local communities and the private sector.
- The present and future inhabitants of such settlements that are located both in urban and rural areas live in a safe and a secure environment and have adequate access to (1) economic opportunities, (2) a mix of safe and secure housing and tenure types, (3) reliable and affordable

basic services, (4) educational, entertainment and cultural activities and (5) health, welfare and police services.

- Land utilization in these settlements is well planned, managed and monitored to ensure the development of compact, mixed land-use, diverse, life-enhancing environments with maximum possibilities for pedestrian movement and transit via safe and efficient public transport in cases where motorized means of movement is imperative. Specific attention is paid to ensuring that low-income housing is provided in close proximity to areas of opportunity, and for such areas to over time, become likewise. Under these circumstances an investment in a dwelling becomes a crucial injection in the second economy, and a desirable asset that grows in value and acts as a generator and holder of wealth.
- Sustainable human settlements ensure the integration of vulnerable and marginalized groups and individual in the economy, social fabric and physical structure of the settlement. In order to give effect to this (1) social spending and skills development is focused on previously disadvantaged groups, (2) investment by government is geared towards areas in which such groups are concentrated and (3) the business community is levered into investing in such area through creative use of incentives and disincentives.

### **1.19 Intergovernmental collaboration**

It is imperative for the successful implementation of strategies, projects and programmes as per the District Municipality's IDP that alignment, integration and coordination takes place between the various stakeholders.

- **Challenges**

The Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will have to use and maintain the IDP Representative forum where alignment and coordination between stakeholders take place on a regular basis to ensure effective and efficient implementation of strategies and development.

#### **1.19.1 Powers and functions**

It is imperative that district and local communities discuss and reach a viable and sustainable agreement on powers and functions, as communities suffer in the absence of a satisfactory dispensation, as services are simply not rendered

- **Challenges**

To establish a communication channel and to facilitate proper functioning of the ward committees and community development workers

### **1.20 INSTITUTIONAL PROFILE**

#### **1.20.1 Political structure**

The area consists of nine Municipalities of which one is a District Municipality. The name of the District Municipality is Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality and has 18(eighteen) Councillors elected to the Council indirectly and on a proportional basis. The District Municipality has an Executive Mayor, a Speaker and 5 members of Mayoral Committee. The mayoral committee members are:

Executive Mayor  
Speaker

: Clr JZ Lolwana  
: Clr M Kibi  
-Clr Itumeleng  
-Clr Sintu  
-Clr Arens

The following eight local authorities consist of directly elected Councillors as ward Councillors and proportionally elected Councillors. The eight Municipalities comprise 26 (twenty-six) towns as shown in the table below.

**Table 6: Local Municipality Structure**

Local Municipalities	Components	Councillors	System	Wards
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	De Aar Hanover Britstown	14	Collective executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	7
<b>Kareeberg</b>	Carnarvon Van Wyksvlei Vosburg	8	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
<b>Thembelihle</b>	Hopetown Strydenburg Orania	7	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
<b>Siyathemba</b>	Prieska Marydale Niekerkshoo	8	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
<b>Renosterberg</b>	Petrusville Van Der Kloof Phillipstown	7	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
<b>Ubuntu</b>	Victoria West Richmond Loxton Hutchinson	8	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	4
<b>Siyancuma</b>	Douglas Campbell Griekwastad Schmidtsdrift	9	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	5
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	Colesberg Noupoort Norvalspont	10	Plenary executive system combined with a ward participatory system.	5

*Source: Pixley ka Seme DM IDP 2012/13*

## 1.21 Mandate, Powers and Functions

### 1.21.1 Mandate

The constitution assigns the developmental mandate to local government. This implies that all municipalities must strive to achieve the goals of local government within its financial and institutional capacity, namely:

- To promote democratic and accountable government for local communities
- To ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner

- To promote social and economic development
- To promote a safe and healthy environment
- To encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matter of local government.

It further requires municipalities to structure and manage their administration and budgeting and planning process to give priority to the basic needs of the community and to promote the social and economic development of the community whilst participating in national and provincial development programmes.

### **1.21.2 Powers and Functions**

The Local Government Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998) sets out the basis for the establishment of new municipalities. This legislation divides municipalities into the following categories: Category A is metro councils; Category B is local councils and Category C is District Municipalities. The Act also defines the institutional and political systems of municipalities and determines the division of powers and functions between the categories.

According to Chapter 5 (Section 83 (1)) of the Act, a local municipality (Category B) has the functions and powers assigned to it in terms of Sections 156 and 229 of the Constitution. Section 156 deals with the powers and functions of municipalities, while Section 229 deals with fiscal powers and functions.

The district municipality (Category C) “must seek to achieve the integrated, sustainable and equitable social and economic development of its area as a whole...” (Section 83 (3)) The division of functions and powers between district and local municipalities are described in Section 84 of the Act and the adjustment of division of functions and powers between district and local municipalities by the Provincial MEC for local government is described in Section 85 of the Act.

The passing of by-laws is one of the tasks of municipalities. The Local Government Municipal Structures Act (Act 17 of 1998) directs that after amalgamation, all existing by-laws had to be reviewed and rationalized. An analysis of the status quo of Northern Cape local governance found that in the year after amalgamation, the most common by-law passed was credit control by-law. (Dept of Housing 2002)

The Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997) transfers the responsibility for the provision and management of existing water supply and sanitation from national to local government. The two key areas of responsibility in terms of water services provision are the governance functions and the provision functions. Governance functions are legally the responsibility of the Water Services Authority (WSA) and include the planning and regulatory functions, as well as ensuring water services provision, which includes monitoring, finances, governance, contracts, and reporting. According to the Constitution and the Water Services Act, local government is responsible for ensuring water services provision to its constituency.

Local authorities may be constituted as Water Services Authorities, and would have the role of selecting and appointing a Water Services Provider (WSP) for their area.

The WSA may however not delegate the authority and responsibility for providing services of adequate standard to all residents within their areas of jurisdiction. In some cases a WSA can simultaneously be the WSP.

In general, the Minister of Provincial and Local Government had authority to assign certain functions to local and district municipalities. According to Provincial Gazette of June 2003, the local and district municipalities have been authorized to perform the following functions:

## **POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE MUNICIPALITIES**

**(In terms of Municipal Structures Act)**

**As re-adjusted from 01 July 2000**

*Table 7: Functions*

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>POWERS AND FUNCTIONS</b>	<b>DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY</b>	<b>LOCAL MUNICIPALITY</b>
84(1)(a) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Integrated Development Planning for the district municipality as a whole including a framework for intergrated development plans for the local municipalities, taking into account the intergrated development plans of those municipalities.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(b)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bulk supply of water that affects the significant proportion of municipalities in the district.</li> </ul>	Yes	No
84(1)(c) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bulk supply of electricity that affects the significant proportion of municipalities in the district.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(d) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bulk sewerage purification works and main sewerage disposal that affects a significant proportion of the district.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(e) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Solid waste disposal sites serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(f) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Municipal roads which form part of the road transport system for the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(g) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regulation of passenger transport services.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(h) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Municipal airport serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(i) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Municipal health service serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	No
84(1)(m) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotion of local tourism for serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	No
84(1)(j)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fire fighting services serving the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Municipal public works relating to any of the above function or any</li> </ul>		

SECTION	POWERS AND FUNCTIONS	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
and 84(3)	other function assigned to the district municipality.	Yes	Yes
84(1)(n) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishment of conduct and control of cemeteries and comotona serving the district as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(k) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The receipt, allocation and if applicable the distribution of grants made to the district municipality.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(o)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The imposition and collection of taxes, levies and duties as related to the above functions or as may be assigned to the district municipality in terms of national legislation.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(p)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishment, conduct and control of fresh produce markets and abattoirs servicing the area of the district municipality as a whole.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
84(1)(l) and 84(3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Powers and functions assigned to municipality in terms of Section 156 and 229 of the constitution i.e Administration, Composition of by laws.</li> </ul>	Yes	Yes
83(1)		Yes	Yes

**Table 8 : Capacity of pixley ka seme District Municipality**

Function	0 No Capacity	X Limited Capacity	✓ Available Capacity and/or Structure
Planning		X	
Water			
Sanitation			✓
Environmental Health		X	
Fire Services		X	
Roads			✓
Electricity			
Transport			
Airports/Airstrips			
Markets/Abattoir		X	
Tourism		X	
LED		X	
Rate Collection			✓
Protective Services			
Housing		X	
Culture/Sport/Recreation			✓
Waste and environmental management		X	

**The above table indicates the following issues:**

- District Municipality lacks capacity in eg. Planning, environmental health, electricity, tourism, LED, housing and environmental management to fulfil its new developmental responsibilities.
- There is a need to increase the capacity of staff in areas where capacity is limited.
- External funding and governmental assistance would be of utmost importance to ensure optimization of the Municipality's human resources.

**1.21.3 The Executive Mayor**

**1.22 The functions and powers of the Executive Mayor are to:**

- Identify the needs of the Municipality;
- Review and evaluate those needs in order of priority;
- Recommend to the Municipal Council strategies, programmes and services to address priority needs through the IDP, and the estimates of revenue and expenditure, taking into account any applicable national and provincial development plans; and
- Recommend or determine the best way, including partnership and other approaches, to deliver those strategies, programmes and services to the maximum benefit of the community.
- The Executive Mayor in performing the duties of office must also undertake the following functions:
  - Identify and develop criteria in terms of which progress in the implementation of the strategies, programmes and services of the Council.
  - Evaluate progress against the key performance indicators.
  - Review the performance of the municipality in order to improve:
    - the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of the municipality;
    - the efficiency of credit control and revenue and debit collection services, and
  - The implementation of the municipality's by-laws.
- Monitor the management of the municipality's administration in accordance with the directions of the Municipal Council.
- Oversee the provision of services to communicate in the municipality in a sustainable manner.
- Perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Council may delegate to the Executive Mayor in Section 59 of the Municipal Systems Act.
- Report annually on the terms of involvement of communities and community organizations in the affairs of the municipality.
- Ensure that regard is given to public views and report on the effect of consultation on the decisions of the Council.
- Performs a ceremonial role as the Council may determine.
- Report to the Council on all decisions taken by the Executive Mayor.

**1.23 Committees**

**1.23.1 Council Committees**

Council Committees provide the opportunity for councillors to be more involved in the active governance of the municipality. At present most of the Pixley ka Seme municipalities have a number of standing committees that have been organized according to a portfolio system. Renosterberg has no standing committee due to its size.

As indicated earlier, the Pixley ka Seme District municipality has 18 councillors. Once a month a mayoral meeting is conducted, while the Council has regular quarterly meetings.



### 1.23.2 Ward Committees

As noted earlier, the Constitution requires of Local Government to provide democratic and accountable government, to ensure sustainable service provision, to promote social and economic development, and to encourage community involvement in its affairs. Furthermore the White Paper on Local Government (1998) defines Developmental Local Government as “local government committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs to improve the quality of their lives.”

The primary objective for the establishment of ward committees is to enhance participatory democracy in local government. The Local Government Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998) makes provision for the establishment of wards determined by the Demarcation Board in metropolitan and Category B municipalities. Ward Councillors are elected in terms of the Municipal Electoral Act to represent each of the wards within a municipality. A Ward Committee is established consisting of a Ward Councillor as the Chairperson, and not more than 10 other persons. The Ward Committee members must represent a diversity of interests in the ward with an equitable representation of women. No remuneration is to be paid to Ward Committee members.

The functions and powers of ward Committees are limited to making recommendations to the Ward Councillors, the metro or local council, the Executive Committee and/or the Executive Mayor. However a Municipal Council may delegate appropriate powers to maximize administrative and operational efficiency and may instruct committees to perform any of council’s functions and powers in terms of Chapter 5 of the MSA as amended. The Municipal Council may also make administrative arrangements to enable Ward committees to perform their functions and powers.

In District Management Areas where local municipalities are not viable, the District Municipality has all the municipal functions and powers. The legislation does not make provision for the establishment of Ward Committees in District Management Areas.

The principles of developmental local government are further expanded upon in the Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000) and strongly endorse the purpose and functions of Ward Committees, allowing for representative government to be complemented with a system of participatory government. The municipality is to encourage and create the conditions and enable the local community to participate in its affairs. Members of the local community have the right to contribute to the decision-making processes of the municipality, and the duty to observe the mechanisms, processes and procedures of the municipality.

**Ward Committees have been established in all Pixley category B municipalities, but some of these ward committees are not functioning due to the following reasons:**

- No proper training has been provided
- Many municipalities do not provide resources such as transport, human resources and facilities
- There are no monitoring mechanisms

Municipalities are obliged to develop a system of delegation of powers as outlined in both the Local Government Municipal Structures Act (1998) and the Municipal Systems Act (2000). In compliance with this provision the District Municipality has developed and adopted its system of delegation of powers.

## 1.24 Integrated Institutional Programme

### 1.24.1 Institutional

Broadly speaking the Pixley District Municipality acts as a link at district level between the local authorities, provincial and national government in all matters such as governance, planning, service delivery and project management. Therefore one of the primary purposes for the establishment of the Pixley District Municipality is to have an institutional machinery for enhancing coordination of planning and implementation of projects at local level.

- **Purpose**

**From the above, and in our capacity as a district municipality, the purpose of our integrated institutional plan/ programme is to:**

- Ensure that a consistent and integrated set of measures for institutional transformation is adopted by council
- Ensure that integrated implementation occurs in the municipality, thereby contributing to a close planning implementation link.
- Provide institutional set up that will indicate the magnitude of our preparedness for effective implementation of the IDP

### 1.24.2 Administration

**Personnel:**

The current staffing level shows that the municipality has 87 employees. The staff complement consists of managers, administrative personnel, a technician and security personnel as shown in the table below:

**Table 9 : Staffing Level as at March 2014**

Category	Number of employees
Management	9
Administration	58
Technicians	1
Other:	
• Security personnel	5
• Radio operators	5
<b>Total</b>	<b>78 (excluding Councillors)</b>

*Source: Dept of corporate services*

### 1.25 Administrative- Structure

The structure of the municipality consists of the office of Municipal Manager and the following departments/unit as shown in the organogram below:

- ⇒ Internal Audit Unit
- ⇒ Department of Shared Services
- ⇒ Department of Finance
- ⇒ Department of Infrastructure, development and Housing
- ⇒ Department of Corporate Services

## 1.26 Office of the Municipal Manager

- **Functions:**

The Municipal Manager is the head of the administration and it is responsible for the formation and development of an economical, effective, efficient and accountable administration which is equipped to implement the integrated development plan, operates within the municipality's performance management system and is responsive to the needs of the local community to participate in municipal affairs. The Municipal Manager is the accountable officer and therefore needs to account for all income and expenditure of the municipality, all assets and the discharges of liabilities of the municipality, compliance with legislative requirements as well as the appointment and management of staff. The Municipal Manager is furthermore responsible for:

- The management of communication between Councillors and officials
- The handling of all matters pertaining to disaster management
- The rendering of financial management services
- The rendering of corporate service to the entire organization
- The initiation and management of developmental programmes
- The handling of risks threatening environmental programmes
- The rendering of planning and implementation management support services to local municipalities.
- Facilitating the District and Technical IGR Forum meetings.

In support of the Council's developmental responsibilities as mentioned earlier, the main purpose of the office of the Municipal Manager is to enhance an integrated sustainable and equitable social and economical development of the demarcated area through the delivery of municipal services.

## 1.27 Departments/Units

**Generally speaking, the functions of the departments are jointly aimed at:**

- Safe-guarding public interest
- Planning for future development of all human settlement in the district,
- Ensuring local economic development
- Ensuring efficient use of natural resources.
- Developing and providing basic services for all the citizens of the district.

**The functions of the departments which are complementary to one another are as follows:**

### 1.27.1 Internal Audit unit

- **Purpose:**

- To evaluate the internal control of the municipalities

- **Functions:**

- To facilitate the process of the risk assessment
- To prepare a three year strategic plan and the internal audit program for each of the financial year
- To evaluate and contribute to improvement of:
  - o Risk management Control
  - o Governance system
- Advise the accounting officer and report to the audit committee on the implementation of the internal audit plan and matters relating to:
  - o Internal audit

- Internal controls
- Accounting procedures and practices
- Risk and risk management
- Loss control
- Compliance with relevant Act

### 1.27.2 Shared Services

- **Purpose:**
  - To improve the performance of Local Government.
  - To rationalize the support services that will be given to municipalities.
  - Municipalities would share expertise and skills in planning, project human resources management, performance management system and environmental health services.
  - To provide hand on support to municipalities in the short to medium term.
- **Functions:**
  - Draft and/or facilitate district-level IDP's
  - Facilitate IDP representative forums
  - Land Use Management/Development Control
  - Environmental management
  - Environmental health services

### 1.27.3 Department of Finance

- **Purpose:**
  - To render and manage financial services
  - To render corporate services to the entire organisation
- **Division: Finance**  
**Functions:**
  - The collection of income
  - The rendering of support regarding local authorities finances
  - The rendering financial information system service
  - The handling of budget control service
- **Division: Income Collection**

#### **Purpose:**

- To collect income for the District Council

#### **Functions:**

- The registration of businesses
- The collection of levies from businesses
- The handling of enquiries from businesses
- The compilation of account information
- The cancellation of irrecoverable levies

- **Division: Local Authorities**

**Purpose:**

- To render support to local authorities regarding financial matters

**Functions:**

- The provisioning of training to local authorities regarding financial procedures
- The assisting of local authorities with financial procedures/ systems
- The introduction of proper financial systems

- **Division: Financial Information System**

**Purpose:**

- To render a financial information system service

**Functions:**

- The loading of new programmes on the computer system
- The rendering of an information technology service
- The handling of network problems
- The updating of changes on personnel's salaries.
- The printing of cheques
- The provisioning of financial related information when necessary

- **Division: Budget Control**

**Purpose:**

- To promote budget control services

**Functions:**

- The facilitation of the budget compilation process
- The controlling of the expenditure of the District Municipality
- The rendering of advice on budgetary issues
- The recording of expenditure

**1.27.4 Department of Corporate Services****Purpose:**

- To render auxiliary support services

**Functions:**

- The rendering of secretarial services
- The provision of administrative support services
- The handling of provision of administrative matters
- The provision of logistical services viz
  - Registry services
  - Typing services
  - Cleaning/ food services
  - Maintenance services
  - Switchboard/ reception services
  - Establishment and management of ICT

- **Division: Human Resources Management**

**Purpose:**

- To handle human resources management matters

**Functions:**

- The handling of recruitment and appointment matters
- The administration of conditions of matters
- The maintaining of personnel records and staff establishments
- The implementation of policies relating to human resources management

- **Division: Disaster Management**

**Purpose:**

- To handle all matters pertaining to disaster management

**Functions:**

- The prevention of possible disasters
- The formulation of disaster management plans and policies
- The rapid and effective response to disaster and post disaster recovery
- The rendering of an efficient and effective radio service (NEAR SYSTEM)

### **1.27.5 Department: Infrastructure, Development and Housing**

- **Division: Infrastructure**

**Purpose:**

- To provide new and refurbished infrastructure for previously disadvantaged communities, through the different infrastructure grants and
- To assist local municipalities with the contract management of the infrastructure projects and with operation and maintenance of water, sanitation, internal roads and stormwater assets.

**Functions:**

- Financial management
- Project management/feasibility process
- Contract management
- Monitoring database
- Project monitoring and evaluation
- Operation and planned maintenance
- Community liaison/development.

- **Division: Local Economic Development (LED)**

**Purpose:**

- To manage the implementation of LED strategies within the IDP
- To manage and monitor LED projects
- To initiate and manage development programmes

**Functions:**

- The promotion of tourism and local economic development within the boundaries of the District Municipality
- Formulation of LED component of the IDP
- Provide support to local municipalities to ensure alignment of LED to local IDP's
- Manage, co-ordinate and administer all LED projects identified in the IDP
- CO-ordinating and alignment of LED programmes in the district across all spheres of government and other stakeholders
- Facilitating integration and co-ordination of all LED programmes with that of the LED agency
- Tourism development and marketing, agriculture, heritage, environment, cooperatives and SMME development.

- **Division: Housing**

**Purpose:**

- To plan and manage development of human settlements in the region

**Functions:**

- Within the IDP and within housing policy to ensure, on a progressive basis, that conditions not conducive to the health and safety are prevented or removed
- Provide services i.e. water, sanitation, electricity, roads, storm water drainage and transport
- Identify and designate land for housing development
- Promote the resolution of housing conflicts arising in the housing development process
- Provide bulk engineering services
- Plan and manage land use and development (amentities, protect values and functionality)
- Prepare local housing sector plans:
- Informed by proven need (detailed waiting list system)
- Create environment attracting the construction of houses
- Security of tenure/tenure upgrade
- Act as developer according to Preferential Procurement Policy
- Allocation of sites to beneficiaries
- Assist in the completion of subsidy application forms
-

## **1.28 Organisational structure: see volume 2.**

### **1.28.1 Municipal Budget:**

It is critical to understand the financial situation of an organization so as to understand its capacity and commitment to deliver all delegated functions. The financial position of the municipality is determined by the amount of income it can generate versus its expenditure. Thus the more income it generates and the less it spend, the greater the profit or surplus.

Over the past couple of years, the information from the budget of the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality always indicates the following:

- The municipality is 100% grant dependent and revenue is not sufficient to address service delivery. This confirms the fact that the Municipality will have to be supported financially by national and provincial government to ensure its long-term existence as its revenue base is very limited.
- Most of the money spent by the Municipality is towards operational expenses.
- There is little or no contribution made by the District Municipality towards projects at local municipality level.
- The District Municipality has financial constraints in implementing its constitutional mandate.

- **Issues:**

#### **The issues that can be identified from the above are:**

The small income potential and levy base of the municipality has the following ramifications:

- Insufficient staff component
- Insufficient funds available to finance infrastructure development in the region.
- Little or no funds available to provide funds to participating local municipalities for maintenance of infrastructure and equipment.
- National and Provincial Government funding would be of utmost importance to ensure the sustainability of the municipality.
- Insufficient funds affects the implementation of the IDP.

### **1.28.2 Financial Viability and Management**

During the 2013/14 financial year, the District Municipality budgeted for total expenditure of R33 262 262 million. Of this amount R350 000 is for capital expenditure and R32 912 262 million for operating expenditure. It budgeted for total operating revenue of R36 679 000 million.

The expenditure on salaries and wages as a percentage of total operating revenue is 72.72%, which is above the norm of 35% of operating revenue determined by National Treasury. Repairs and maintenance at 0.95% of total operating revenue is substantially lower than the norm of 10-12% of operating revenue, also determined by National Treasury.

There is no provision for bad debt and the collection of rates and service charges included in budgeted annual revenue is 0%. This indicates that budgeted annual revenue may be collected effectively, which will strengthen the financial viability of the District Municipality.

Capital expenditure as a percentage of total expenditure consisting of operating and capital expenditure is approximately 1.05%.



The benchmark for grant dependency is 95% of operating revenue but most of the local municipalities and the District Municipality receive substantial amounts of operating grants. Operating grants 94.22% of the total operating income.

It was also noted in some sources of information that the formula for replacement of regional services levy did not take into account the previous growth in size of levies.

The financial position of the District Municipality is more of a concern as the situation will no doubt affect the ability of the Council to undertake its constitutional responsibilities effectively.

This analysis gives an indication of the possible strategies/interventions that may be needed to improve the viability of the District Municipality.

- **Financial Management**

A number of financial policies which are relevant to the powers and functions of the district municipality have been developed and implemented. In the previous financial years a number of audit issues were raised by the external auditors and internal audit unit and management has consistently addressed them. The issues are addressed through:

- Establishment of a credible performance management system
- Conducting performance reviews
- Improving on the performance management information
- Functionality of the performance audit committees
- Risk management

### **1.29.3 Financial Strategy**

The dependency of the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality on grants and loss of RSC levies and MIG grant have left it with a small revenue base. It is important for the municipality to think creatively about new sources of funds to improve its revenue base. At this stage, it is critical to define strategies in a realistic way by considering all the resources at the disposal of the municipality. The resources which will be needed to implement the strategies are found in the form of human resources, natural, financial, information for all the priority. The financial strategy defines the ways and the means of increasing revenue and obtaining external funding. A financial committee may be established to look into the development of the strategy.

### **Proposed**

**The financial strategy may comprise but not limited to the following:**

- Innovative ways of raising revenue;
- Asset management strategies;
- Financial management procedures;
- Internal Audit procedures;
- Capital financing through grants and loans;
- Operational finance strategies by entering into partnerships with other municipalities; and
- Cost effectiveness strategies.

#### **1.28.4 Internal Audit**

A fully functional internal audit department is staffed with competent officials and works closely with all the senior managers. The department is currently implementing the approved audit plan and has developed an anti fraud and corruption strategy for ensuring good governance in the municipality.

#### **1.28.5 Supply Chain Management**

The supply chain management unit has been established and it is fully functional. All procurements are through the unit and it submits reports on a regular basis to council. The reports are reviewed or discussed by council to ensure that all procurement and /or contracts awarded compiled with the supply chain management policy.

#### **1.28.6 Good Governance and Community Participation**

For the promotion of public participation, there are forums such as District Mayors forum, District Municipal Managers and Treasurer's forum, the various Farmers unions and the Tri-District alliance. The District Council has been training the Ward Councilors after the local government elections and the Community Development Workers (CDWs) programme has been implemented.

With regard to the implementation of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act (2005), the launch of the Provincial IGR Structure in April 2006 was followed by the establishment of district forums. Both technical and political structures are functional. The Pixley Ka Seme IGR District Forum meets at least 4 times a year.

- **Imbizo Programme**

The imbizo programme is used by the Council to promote good governance and public participation in the region. The Council meets the Communities every month where developmental challenges are discussed.

**Other systems or meetings used by the Council to promote good governance in the region are:**

- Scheduled Council meetings;
- Mayoral Committee meetings;
- Committee meetings
- Advertisements
- Newsletters
- Local radio station (Ulwazi FM)
- Adherence to Batho Pele principles

- **Rural development, poverty alleviation and gender equality**

The women, children, people with disabilities, the aged, the farm workers and rural residents are most vulnerable groups in the communities. The disparities and poverty express themselves along racial and spatial lines. These socially disadvantaged are found in rural villages and townships. Since development is about improving the lives and standards of living people, the said groups should benefit as well. Their rights to basic and human dignity are protected in the Constitution of the RSA.

Inequality also plays itself in the form of unemployment and empowerment opportunities among women, people with disabilities and the youth. The IDP in particular and the municipal policies in general have been drafted and adopted by Council to assist in dealing with the issues of inequality and employment. The causes of these inequalities and influence over access to and control over the social, political and economic resources should be fully understood. All of these have a bearing on service delivery and development in the context of the IDP. The mainstreaming of the gender in the IDP process is important.

War on poverty programme and other poverty alleviation programmes have been implemented to assist in dire need. The introduction of learnership programme for the learners who come from poor families is also used and as a relief measure. The main instruments which are currently used by council are social and local economic development programmes.

- **Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development**

As the location of Pixley Ka Seme District makes it difficult to recruit and retain highly skilled staff for the medium to long-term, the District Municipality has compiled its institutional development plan to address this challenge. The first draft of the plan identified alternative strategies for retaining specialized staff especially in specialized technical areas such as environmental health/management specialists and engineers.

The District Municipality is very instrumental in supporting local municipalities with institutional capabilities in the following areas:

- IDP
- LED
- Leag Services
- Budget-planning alignment;
- Identification and project implementation;
- LGnet information services;
- Internal audit services;
- Administrative support;
- Performance management system (PMS)
- Environmental Health Services

### 1.30 IDP implementation: successes and challenges

The Pixley ka Seme District Municipality has achieved some critical development and local economic milestones that are related to the strategies and policies put in place as informed by its IDP process.

Although much progress has been made in terms of local economic development within the district and the local municipalities, impact on job creation and poverty relief is still limited. Continued infrastructural and institutional support with regard to achieving sustainable settlement and development are required at the district and local municipal level, particularly in respect of addressing the looming backlogs. The following are some of the successes:

#### Successes

According to 2011 statistics the impact that the IDP has had over the past years is overwhelming. The following are positive social impact that the IDP has had in the lives of the population of the district:

- Regarding the number of households with piped water inside the dwelling there is an increase from 32.8% in 2001 to 47.0% in 2011.
- The percentage of households with access to flush toilets connected to a sewerage system, increased from 45.4% in 2001 to 65.7% in 2011, while the use of pit latrines without ventilation declined from 17.33% in 2001 to 3.4% in 2011, meaning that the district has improved in providing basic access to sanitation which also led to the proportion of households without access to any toilet facility to decline very significantly.
- There is an increase in the proportion of households using electricity for lighting from 75.1% in 2001 to 85.1% in 2011. This is an indication that the government is working on achieving the Millennium Development Goals of providing universal access to electricity since dawn of democracy in 1994.
- The 2011 census also shows that the number of households living in formal dwellings has decreased from 87.1% in 2001 to 86.8% in 2011.
- Unemployment rate has decreased from 36.4% in 2001 to 28.3% in 2011.
- Youth unemployment rate (official 15-34 years) has also decreased from 44.1% in 2001 to 35.4% in 2011.

#### HOUSING PROJECTS

Municipalities	Towns	Progress
Umsobomvu	Colesberg Noupoort Novalspoint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ouboks 2220 houses</li> <li>- 1050 houses completed</li> <li>- Additional 200 to be completed end of June 2014</li> <li>- 09 disaster houses in progress</li> <li>- 100 houses for services</li> </ul>
Renosterberg	Philipstown	Building 341 houses-30 Houses completed 22houses in proses.
Siyathemba	Prieska	Building 203 houses
Kareeberg	Carnarvon	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 88 Houses</li> <li>• 81 completed</li> </ul>
Siyancuma	Bongani Campbell Schmidtsdrift	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Phase 1: 150 houses completed</li> <li>- Phase 2: 71 houses to be build</li> <li>- 100 houses completed</li> <li>- 100 houses completed</li> <li>61 not connected to sewer lines</li> </ul>

### Housing projects

Municipalities	Towns	Status Quo
Emthanjeni	De Aar	09 houses completed and handed over to the beneficiaries
	Hanover	450 for services
Ubuntu	Loxton	35 houses will be completed in June 2014

### Challenges

The implementation of the IDP has not been without challenges. Some of the implementation challenges that can be mentioned are:

**Table 10: Implementation challenges and recommendations**

Challenges	Recommendations
Implementation of IDP's is a serious challenge due to lack of funds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use of IGR structures to strengthen the commitment of sector departments to the district-level IDP's.</li> <li>• All stakeholders to assist municipalities with implementation of identified projects.</li> </ul>
Participation of sector departments in IDP Representative Rorum meetings is a challenge. Municipalities do not receive projects, plans and programmes from all sector departments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Premier's Office, COGHSTA, SALGA to ensure that sector departments participate in forum meetings.</li> <li>• Sector departments to be involved in the planning process of IDP to allow meaningful integration.</li> <li>•</li> </ul>
Very high cost of servicing remote rural areas with basic services to meet constitutional responsibilities. 01 quantum across the board	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Government must ensure that provision of a strong social development programme within the constraints of high provision costs because of sparse of population and large distance.</li> <li>• Require more finances for infrastructure and allocation in different ways.</li> </ul>
The district and local municipalities with very limited own resources because of restricted revenue base (scarcity and poverty of population)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase financing (MIG Formula) to give municipalities more access to external resources.</li> </ul>
Present structuring of MIG financing through municipalities makes funding of larger infrastructural priorities very difficult.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MIG financing formula and format to be reviewed by Treasury.</li> </ul>
Water scarcity in the region and in remote areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clear decisions required on viability and financing for Pixley ka Seme bulk water supply project – DWA.</li> </ul>
Poor coordination of projects implementation for externally funded projects.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greater involvement involvement of Pixley ka Seme District Municipality in coordination of externally funded projects.</li> </ul>
Even with maximised economic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The three spheres of government to formulate</li> </ul>

development poverty levels will remain high.	<p>integrated and strategic poverty alleviation programmes rather than present ad hoc approach.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In health, co-operation between spheres to attract and retain health workers for the district services</li> </ul>
Limited economic potential linked mainly to National and Provincial economy.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greater involvement of all stakeholders in coordination of driving the development of the economic opportunities.</li> </ul>
<p>Lack of alternative income or revenue generation other than the inter-governmental conditional allocations affects the ability of the District Municipality to deliver on capital projects.</p> <p>100% grant dependent</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The allocation model of MIG funding should take into account the dynamics of the municipal areas.</li> <li>• Replacement of regional services levy</li> </ul>
Completion of the Ouboks project as per contemplated timelines. Funding to this project is matter of extreme urgency.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase financing on Ouboks project is required to fast track the implementation of the project.</li> </ul>
Ouboks housing projects: No proper planning as the project is not included in DORA	Allocation for Ouboks housing project should be reflected in the DORA
Level 2 accreditation	The Department to fund level 2 accreditation

## **CHAPTER 2 : STATUS QUO**

### **2. EXISTING FEATURES**

#### **2.1 Topography**

The topography of Pixley Ka Seme region is related to the geology and relief with an altitude that ranges between 1000 to 1800m above sea level. Landforms associated with plains, hills and lowlands cover approximately 80% of the region. Plains have slopes of less than 5° (8%) and result in a gradual change of climatic conditions. Ridges have slopes of more than 5° and more variable climatic conditions.

The ridges and escarpment have significant potential in terms of aesthetic appeal as well as habitat for rare and endangered plants and animals. These features occur mainly in the north, and on the borders of the region.

The general drainage pattern of the region is from the southeast to the north and northwest. The Orange and Vaal rivers are the primary drainage channels in the area to which many other streams and rivers link to.

#### **Issues**

##### **The following issues were identified:**

- Ridges and koppies must be conserved and kept clear of transformation or development of any kind.
- A non-development buffer of 50m is proposed around areas steeper than 5° (1 in 11).
- Include the buffers in local IDP's for planning purposes.

#### **2.2 Flood Lines:**

In the order of 30% of plot in informal settlements in particular are subject to flooding. This suggests that proper flood lines calculations should be done for all streams prior to detailed layout plans in urban areas. Engineering calculations, however, revealed 1 in 50 flood line remains within river banks in almost all instances.

#### **2.3 Geology**

The geology is characterized by horizons of dolerite rocks. The dominant lithological units are covered in the Spatial development Framework (SDF) and Integrated Environmental Management Programme. According to these documents dolerite covers 36% of the region followed by tillite (12%). The rock types, sand, andesite and quartzite cover between 7% and 5% of the region. The rest of the rock types cover less than 4%.

## **Issues**

### **Identified issues are:**

- The northern part of the district, particularly Siyancuma and District Municipal area host some dolomitic formations which should be taken into account with any new developments.
- Dolerites are expansive and may cause damage to foundations.
- Mudstones are highly dispersive and they cause formation of deep dongas.
- Shale rocks are highly erodable.
- Sands are too loose for normal foundation.

### **2.4 Climate:**

The district lies in the upper region of the karoo and experiences moderate to hot summers. The average annual maximum temperature is 40°C, while the average annual minimum temperature is -10°C. Winters are cold and dry with moderate frost occurring at night. The coldest months are June and July. The area is located in a summer rainfall region. Rain occurs predominantly in the form of thunderstorms and 60% of the average annual rainfall occurs between October and April. The mean annual rainfall ranges from 130mm to 300mm per year. The district is battered by severe droughts and often experiences heavy rainfalls with the possibility of flooding. Humidity which is the amount of moisture in the atmosphere is only 43%.

## **Issues**

### **Issues identified are:**

- Low rainfalls and frost limit agricultural potential.
- Access to irrigation water will be crucial for any cultivation to occur due to the overall arid conditions and the risk of wilting under the influence of very high temperatures, while frost limits the type of crops that can be cultivated in the region.
- The distribution of cultivated fields along the major perennial rivers and in association with extensive irrigation schemes supports this statement.

### **2.5 Soil conditions:**

The top of the rocky and hills areas are caved sandstone with a shallow covering of loose sandy soil. The flatter slopes and undulating territory have a deeper layer of loose sandy top soil underlain either by decomposed shales and mudstones or by sandstones. The shales decompose to clays. In many instances, especially where underground drainage is bad, the clay is decomposed to montmorillirite clay mineral. These clays are notoriously known for their expansive properties which cause cracking in buildings. The sandstones usually decompose to a dense clayey sand. In low lying areas transported soils (usually clay) are found. Because of bad drainage the clays are expansive. Many cracked buildings are noted in all the urban areas. The erosion gullies are probably caused, to a certain extent, by overgrazing. The so-called escort soils which are clays with an excess of sodium cations have dispersive properties. The dispersive properties usually lead to rapid erosion in rain water (i.e. water with a low dissolved solids content). The latter clay also requires special engineering treatment when they are to be used in down walls or roads embankments.



The four broad soil patterns and the distribution of agriculturally important soils in the region are covered in section 2 of the Integrated Environmental Management Programme of the municipality.

**Issues:**

- Although the soil potential is high in some areas, land capability takes into account climate as well, and land capability of the region is generally poor.
- This means the land is prone to erosion, degradation and rehabilitates slowly. Veld management and land use policies are therefore crucial.

**2.6 Water resources:**

There are two rivers of significance that run through the district. They are the Orange river, which forms the northern boundary and the Vaal river, which is to the northwest of the district and which joins the orange river at the southern part of the Siyancuma municipal area.

**The utilization of these water resources are being complicated by the following factors:**

- The highly intermittent flow of the rivers.
- Weakening water quality of the available resources, which approaches the safety limit for good health.
- The wide variety of consumers within the system, varying from those (commercial/progressive farmers) who need a high degree of assurance for continuous supply, to those who can adopt to various levels of supply.
- Water pollution

**2.7 Ground water:**

As noted in the Integrated Environmental Management Framework, the potential for exploitation of groundwater exist and there are a number of existing boreholes. In general there are a number of obstacles for the realization of the full potential of groundwater resources. These are:

- Ignorance on the development and management of groundwater.
- A lack of reliable hydrological and geo-hydrological information.
- A lack of enterprise to develop groundwater resources.
- Reluctance to use an invisible resource.
- The geological formation of aquifers that is usually far below the surface.
- Groundwater pollution.
- Financial constraints.

**These problems can be overcome by:**

- An information programme and more financial assistance;
- Effective water resource management education;
- Water resource management education;
- Community participation in water resource management programme.
- Establishment of land fill site specification.

### **2.7.1 Water resource management**

Each town, village or settlement in Pixley ka Seme has a unique setting as far as landscape, geology, water occurrence and environment is concerned. However, there are certain aspects of the environment that apply to the whole area. These aspects are therefore discussed here and should be read with each town's separate discussion. For planning purposes, aspects related to water resources and aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal and pollution is distinguished.

#### **Aspects related to water resources that we should take into account when planning or managing water resources are:**

- The landscape and rocks or geology of the area.
- The water-bearing properties of the rocks in the area such as success rate, expected yields and water quality.
- Rainfall and recharge which tell us about the sustainability of the resources. Recharge in the area is estimated to be about 10 to 15 mm per annum.
- Groundwater management and protection principles which include protection against depletion of resources or degradation of quality.
- Education and awareness programs for users in aspects such as occurrence, conservation and pollution of groundwater, should be part of water management.

#### **Aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal or other pollution sources that should be taken into account when planning, developing or managing such activities are:**

- Rock type or geology, which plays an important role in the feasibility and design of specific sanitation systems for specific settlements and indirectly affects the costs of a sanitation system and if ignored it can affect the health and lifestyle of a community.
- Shallow rock or deep soils occur within the confines of a development.
- The soils are sandy or clayey resulting in excavations collapsing or remaining open and stable.
- The soils and rocks are permeable and absorb water or are impervious so that no water penetrates them.
- A temporary or permanent shallow ground water table exists which serves as a water supply for the population and may be easily polluted.
- The rock formations upon which the development is located contain zones of groundwater storage, which are of regional, national or even only of local importance (aquifers). If the water in them is polluted and becomes unusable or requires treatment before it can be used may result in acute water shortages or high cost implications.
- No development upstream of a water source should be planned without professional advice regarding the potential impact on the resource.
- The geohydrological and geotechnical considerations are very site specific and it is recommended that a professional consultant or officer from DWA be consulted on these aspects.

### **2.8 Environmental Aspects:**

The environmental aspects of the region are fully described in the Integrated Environmental Manage

### **2.8.1 Hydrology:**

#### **Erosion gullies:**

Accelerated erosion is not a striking landscape feature in the region. However there are few areas (hilly and rocky areas) where farms have been threatened by erosion gullies.

#### **Sedimentation:**

The deposition of sediment resulting from erosion is minimal in the stream courses which are characterized by severe scour, the base level of which is generally the bedrock. Dams are also not seriously affected by sedimentation.

### **2.8.2 Water quality:**

The Environmental Health Practitioners of the District Municipality conduct water sampling on a monthly basis at the raw water supply intake and at the discharge from the waste stabilization ponds. From the monthly samples and DWA reports the following sources have been identified as the most likely contributors to poor water quality:

- Sewerage pollution;
- Intensive agricultural use of fertilizers and pesticides;
- Industrial wastes;
- Mining and soil erosion;
- Lack of education;
- Waste disposal sites in urban areas.
- Littering

Typical pollutants from the agricultural sector include high salt loads, pesticides and nitrates and phosphates from fertilizers. All these contribute to algal growth and lead to eutrophication of water courses and heightened risk of human health of ingested. There was abundant evidence of eutrophication in the two main rivers. The two main rivers (Orange and Vaal rivers) are degraded and polluted.

### **2.9 Air quality**

Air quality monitoring has not been conducted in the region, therefore it would be difficult to determine the extent to which air is polluted.

#### **Issues:**

The most likely local source of air pollution are:

- Dust storms
- Burning waste at the refuse disposal sites
- Household burning coal
- Mining activities – dust and processing plants
- Medical facilities – coal powered heating systems and/or incinerators
- Agricultural areas – burning of crop residues, veld management or accidental fires

**Strategies:**

- Education of officials regarding the legal requirements of air control legislation.
- The District and Local Municipalities must designate air quality officers to be responsible for co-ordinating matters pertaining to air quality management.
- Airs quality officers must co-ordinate their activities in such a manner as may be set out in the national framework as prescribed by the Minister.

**Effects of air pollution**

- Respiratory disease
- Increase in greenhouse effect
- Acid rain
- Undesirable living environment

**Air Quality Plan**

The department of Environmental Affairs is in the process of developing an air quality plan for the district and local municipalities in which case the municipalities will be able to manage the problems that affect air quality.

**2.10 Cultural and historical sites:**

This aspect of the district is fully described in the Integrated Environmental Management Programme. It is summarized as follows:

The available literature shows that the region is richly endowed within cultural and heritage sites. Rock Art is found throughout the area with especially good examples in the Thembelihle municipal area. These rock paintings should be conserved. Various battle grounds and cemeteries dating the Anglo-Boer War are also found in the region.

In and around the towns are several buildings with particular environmental, architectural or historical value which form part of the national heritage. A ground survey conducted shows that the general condition of some buildings is not satisfactory and are in some desperate need for rehabilitation. As these buildings play a vital role in the tourism conservation and preservation of them is recommended as one way or the other, spill-off effect from such planning practice would significantly contribute to the development of tourism industry in the region. Examples of these cultural and historical sites are shown in the table below.

**Table 11 : Tourist Attractions by Local Municipality**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Tourist Attraction</b>	<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Tourism Attraction</b>
<b>Emthanjeni Britstown</b>	Khoisan rock art Britstown museum Holy Trinity Church Dutch Reformed Church	<b>Kareeberg Carnavon</b>	Blikkiesbar, Brickyard and corbelled houses
<b>De Aar</b>	Garden of Remembrance House of Olive Schreiner Khoisan rock engravings	<b>Vosburg</b>	Vosburg Museum Khoisan's implements at Mrs. Van Heerdens's home or Keurfontein.
<b>Hanover</b>	Anglican Church Cenotaph Memorial House of Olive Schreiner	<b>Van Wyksvlei</b>	San rock engravings
<b>Thembelihle Hopetown</b>	Concentration camp cemetery Battle of Belmont Old wagon bridge	<b>Siyathemba Prieska</b>	Fort, memorial garden, Prieska museum, Khoisan rock art and game reserves.
<b>Orania Strydenburg</b>	History museum Aloe garden Cruciform Church Khoisan rock art		
<b>Renosterberg Petrusville</b>	Dutch Reformed Church Museum and san rock art	<b>Ubuntu Victoria-West</b>	Victoria trading post and Mannetjies Roux Anglican Church, Dutch Reformed Church, museum, print shop and Appolo theatre.
<b>Phillipstown</b>	Khoisan rock engravings Old prison museum Magistrate's office Reformed Church and Teichhouse	<b>Richmond</b>	Anglo-Boer war graves, De Oude Dak, Driefontein, Dutch Reformed Church, Mailbox, Old tome horse corn-mill, pedestrian bridge and saddle horse museum
<b>Vanderkloof</b>	Damhuise information centre Museum Vanderkloof dam and game reserves		

Source: PKS IDP 2011/16

## **2.10.1 Threatened and unusual species:**

As noted in the Integrated Environmental management programme, the only known critically endangered species is the Riverine Rabbit. Riverine Areas have already been transformed to a large degree because of impoundments (dams) which in turn reduces the ecological reserve of these systems.

## **2.10.2 Birds (Avifauna):**

No dates available.

## **2.10.3 Reptiles and Amphibians (Herpetofauna)**

This category represents reptiles of which only the Giant Bullfrog is listed as threatened. Bullfrog can potentially occur within pan and seepage areas.

## **2.10.4 Invertebrates:**

No Lepidoptera (butterflies) are listed threatened in the district.

## **Issues:**

### **2.10.5 Mammals:**

- Destruction of habitat
- Insufficient distribution data and poorly compiled EIA's contribute to lack of knowledge.

### **2.10.6 Birds (Avifauna):**

- Power lines
- Destruction of habitats
- Indiscriminate use of pesticides
- Intolerance towards raptors
- Insufficient knowledge and habitats destruction.

### **2.10.7 Invertebrates:**

- Insufficient knowledge and habitat destruction

## **Strategies:**

- Conservancy stewardship programme
- Community and farmer awareness.

## **2.11 Agriculture and Forestry:**

Agriculture varies from typical extensive arable use to more intensive irrigation use, particularly along the two main rivers. The farms are intensively cultivated, and the farmers are clearly far more able to control erosion in the small parcels of land under their control than the farmers who are farming more extensively.

Many rural households have no access to wood and forced to purchase paraffin and gas in towns. The most important constraint affecting woodlot (tree plantation) development is the lack of unused land as almost 98% of the land is used for arable and irrigation farming in the region.

## **2.12 Aesthetic Resource:**

The aesthetic problems in the region are concerns the question of waste and litter.

In the rural areas (farms), the absence of a waste collection system has resulted in indiscriminate dumping, particularly along the main roads and in river dongas, which give many of these areas an air of decay and neglect. In the urban areas, the lack of priority given to the prevention of littering and the absence of any attempt to encourage greater civic responsibility in this regard has resulted in degraded conditions with litter strewn throughout the CBD (Central Business District).

### **2.12.1 Dams:**

**The main dams in the district are the following:**

- Vanderkloof dam
- Gariiep dam
- Smart Syndicate dam

**Smaller dams include:**

- Van Wyksvlei dam
- Boegoeberg dam
- Killowen dam

## **2.13 Wetlands and springs:**

On the basis of available literature, no significant wetlands occur in the district. Many of the non-perennial tributaries and river beds function as wetlands and riparian zones, providing important habitat in the arid region. The physical distribution of the wetlands is discussed in the Integrated Environmental management Programme and the Spatial Development Framework.

With regard to springs, severe grazing pressure and arable farming has destroyed most of the perennial springs which would be abundant in an undisturbed ecosystem in this environment.

## **2.14 Issues and management of wetlands:**

The conservation and management of wetlands in the district are utmost importance. The identified issues and proposed programmes for mitigating the identified issues are discussed in the annexure.

## **2.15 Considerations for water resource management**

Each town, village or settlement in Pixley ka Seme has a unique setting as far as landscape, geology, water occurrence and environment is concerned. However, there are certain aspects of the environment that apply to the whole area. These aspects are therefore discussed here and should be read with each town's separate discussion. For planning purposes, aspects related to water resources and aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal and pollution is distinguished.

**Aspects related to water resources that we should take into account when planning or managing water resources are:**

- The landscape and rocks or geology of the area.
- The water-bearing properties of the rocks in the area such as success rate, expected yields and water quality.
- Rainfall and recharge which tell us about the sustainability of the resources. Recharge in the area is estimated to be about 10 to 15 mm per annum.

- Groundwater management and protection principles which include protection against depletion of resources or degradation of quality.
- Education and awareness programs for users in aspects such as occurrence, conservation and pollution of groundwater, should be part of water management.

**Aspects related to sanitation, waste disposal or other pollution sources that should be taken into account when planning, developing or managing such activities are:**

- Rock type or geology, which plays an important role in the feasibility and design of specific sanitation systems for specific settlements and indirectly affects the costs of a sanitation system and if ignored it can affect the health and lifestyle of a community.
- Shallow rock or deep soils occur within the confines of a development.
- The soils are sandy or clayey resulting in excavations collapsing or remaining open and stable.
- The soils and rocks are permeable and absorb water or are impervious so that no water penetrates them.
- A temporary or permanent shallow ground water table exists which serves as a water supply for the population and may be easily polluted.
- The rock formations upon which the development is located contain zones of groundwater storage, which are of regional, national or even only of local importance (aquifers). If the water in them is polluted and becomes unusable or requires treatment before it can be used may result in acute water shortages or high cost implications.
- No development upstream of a water source should be planned without professional advice regarding the potential impact on the resource.

The geohydrological and geotechnical considerations are very site specific and it is recommended that a professional consultant or officer from DWA be consulted on these aspects.

## **2.16 Development profile**

### **2.16.1 Demographics**

An understanding of the demographic characteristics of the Pixley District is an essential pre-requisite for effective development planning for the region. Therefore the aim of this section is to analyse some demographic statistics of the district so as to provide a base on which development planning within the IDP framework could be made.

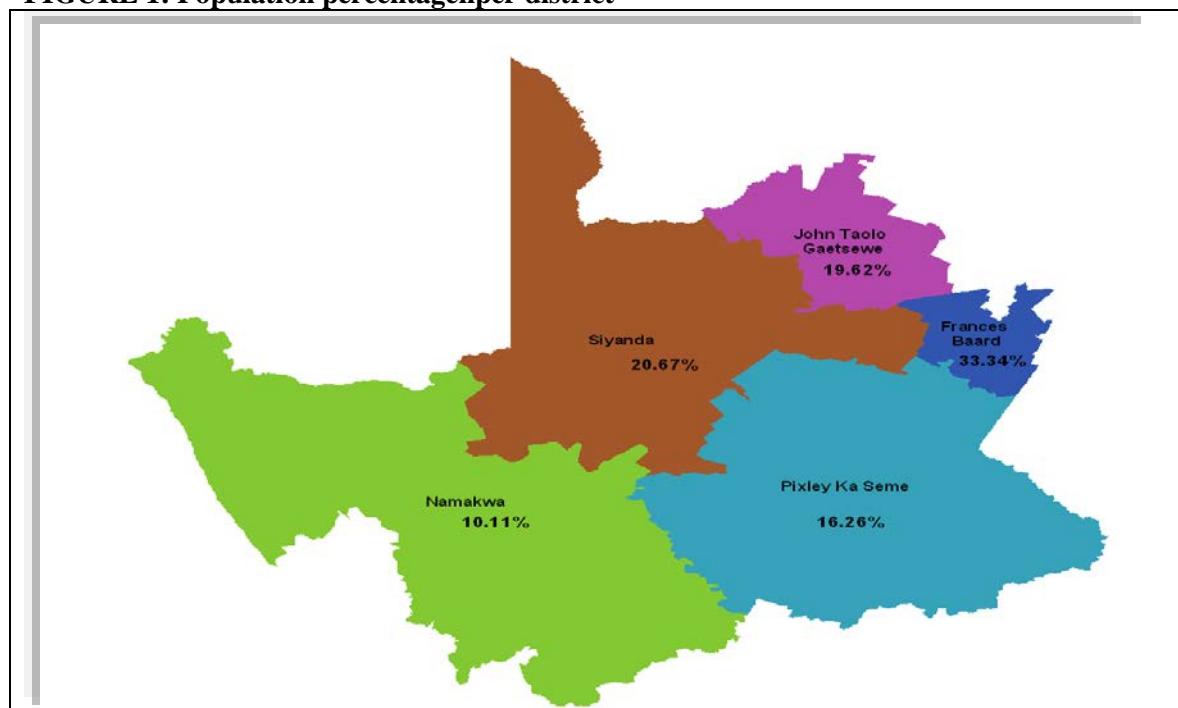
The information in the table below shows that although Pixley ka Seme District municipality has a vast extent (second largest geographical district municipality), it has a very low total population (second lowest district municipality). This vast district municipality consists mainly of rural farming areas with vast distances between the towns.



# 1. SOCIAL AND HUMAN INDICATORS

## DEMOGRAPHICS

**FIGURE 1: Population percentagenper district**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**Table12: Population totals**

Location	Total population	% of Province
Northern Cape Province	1 145 861	100
Namakwa District Mun.	115 842	10.11
Pixley ka Seme District Mun.	186 351	16.26
John Taolo Gaetsewe District Mun.	224 799	19.62
Siyanda District Mun.	236 783	20.67
Francis Baard District Mun.	382 086	33.34

Source: statistics South Africa: 2011

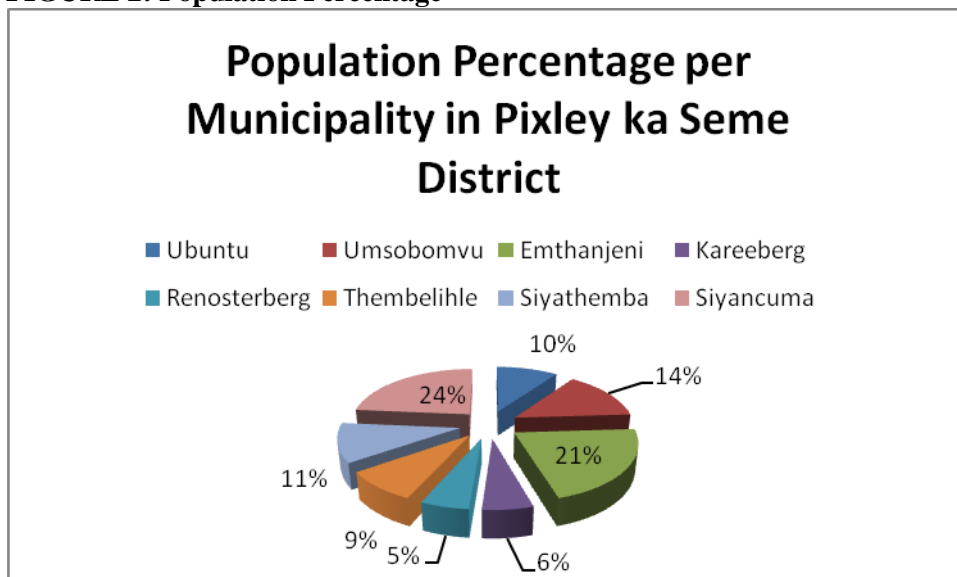
### 2.16.2 The Pixley population & households

The largest municipality in Pixley ka Seme in terms of population is Emthanjeni with 42 356 people accommodating 22.79% of the Pixley ka Seme household. The smallest municipality is still Renosterberg, which only has 5.9% of the population and 2 995 households. Siyancuma municipality which was the largest in 2001 is now the second largest. Its population decreased from 39 275 in 2001 to 37 076 in 2011.

While the population size of the Pixley in 2001 was 166 547, the table below shows that the region's population has increased. The population increased from 166 547 in 2001 to 186 351 in 2011. According to DWA's feasibility study for the bulk water supply in the region, a negative growth rate is forecast for the rural population and by 2015 most of the towns are expected to show a negative growth rate of 1.31%. Siyancuma municipality is already experiencing a negative growth rate since 2001 as shown below.

The average Pixley ka Seme household size is 3.7 persons per household, with Ubuntu and Umsobomvu municipalities having the smallest household size 3.5 and Emthanjeni the highest. In terms of gender distribution, the district almost had an equal gender distribution, with slightly more males(50.1%) than females. Kareeberg, Ubuntu and Umsobomvu municipalities had slightly more females, unlike the district norm.

**FIGURE 2: Population Percentage**



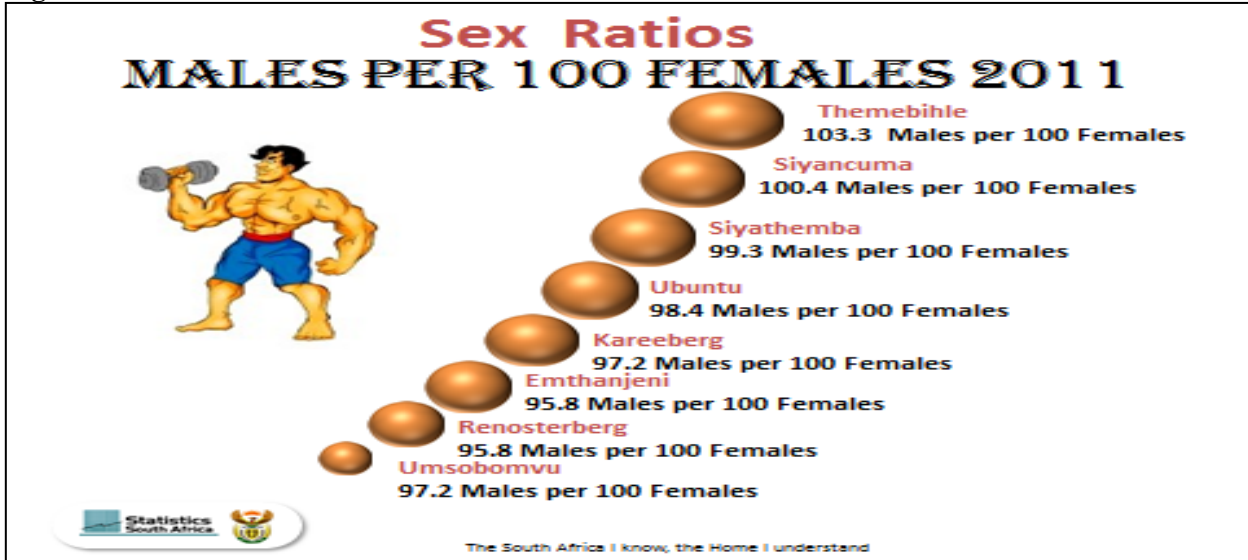
Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**Table 13 : Population, households and % females**

Municipality	Population		Households		Average household size		%females	
	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
Emthanjeni	35 549	42 356	8 706	10 457	3.9	3.9	52%	48.7
Kareeberg	9 488	11 673	2 401	3 222	3.9	3.4	53%	51.3
Renosterberg	9 069	10 978	2 448	2 995	3.7	3.4	51%	50.0
Siyancuma	39275	37 076	10 091	9 578	3.7	3.8	51%	49.9
Siyathemba	17 512	21 591	4 455	5 831	4.0	3.6	51%	49.9
Thembelihle	13 987	15 701	3 596	4 140	3.8	3.7	51%	49.6
Ubuntu	16 376	18 601	4 163	5 128	3.8	3.7	52%	51.7
Umsobomvu	23 640	28 376	5 848	7 841	3.9	3.5	52%	50.3
<b>Pixley</b>	<b>166 547</b>	<b>186 351</b>	<b>41 707</b>	<b>49 193</b>	<b>3.8</b>	<b>3.7</b>	<b>51%</b>	<b>49.9</b>

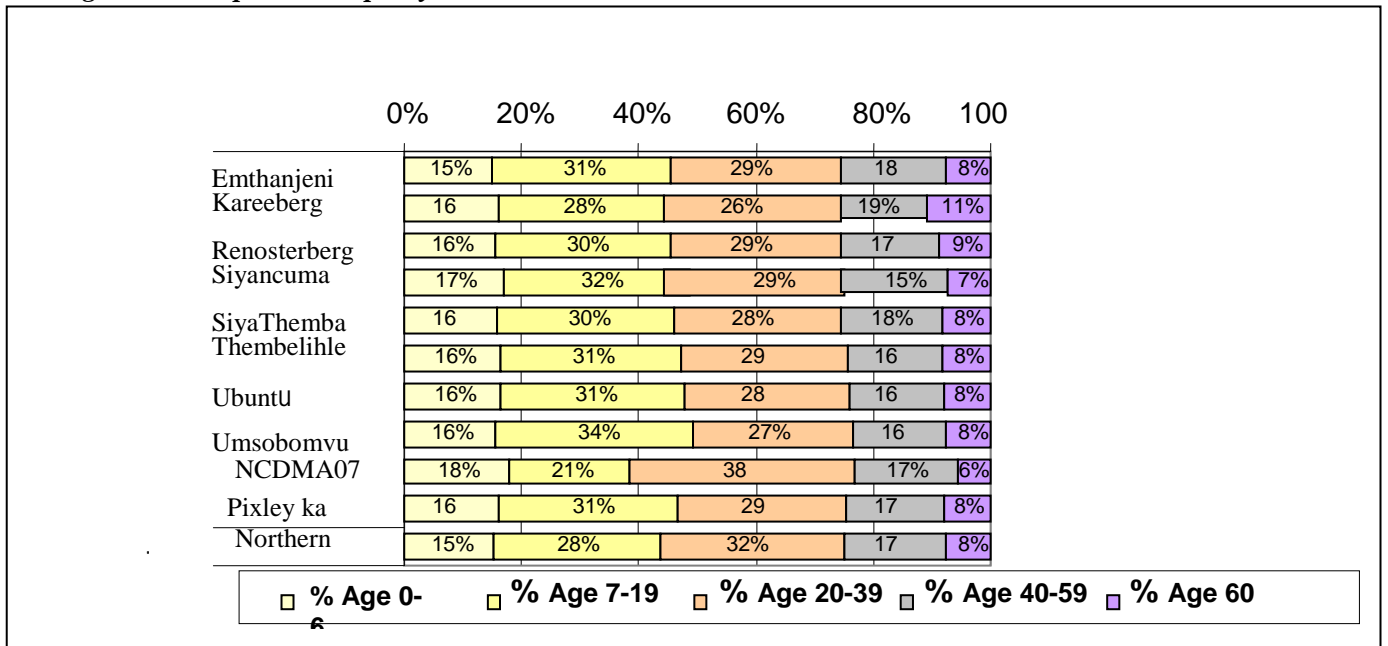
Source: Statistics South Africa : 2011

Figure 3: Sex Ratio



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

Age structure per municipality -2011 Statistics



**Table 14: Population by Age**

		Population		Age Structure					
				Less than 15		15- 64		65 plus	
		2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
<b>DC 07</b>	Pixley ka Seme DM	166547	186351	32.6	31.6	61.5	62.4	5.9	6.1
<b>NC 071</b>	Ubuntu	16375	18601	33.2	33.3	61.1	61.1	5.7	5.6
<b>NC 072</b>	Umsobomvu	23641	28376	33.7	31.4	61	62.8	5.3	5.8
<b>NC 073</b>	Emthanjeni	35785	42356	31.6	31.7	62.4	62.5	6	5.8
<b>NC 074</b>	Kareeberg	9488	11673	32.6	29.4	59	62.5	8.4	8.1
<b>NC 075</b>	Renosterberg	9070	10978	32.9	32.8	60.6	61	6.5	6.2
<b>NC 076</b>	Thembelihle	14467	15701	32.1	30.9	61.9	62.8	5.9	6.4
<b>NC 077</b>	Siyathemba	18445	21591	33.7	30.8	60.4	63.2	5.9	6
<b>NC 078</b>	Siyancuma	39275	37076	32.3	32.2	62.1	62.2	5.6	6

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

The age structure of Pixley's population is similar to that of the Northern Cape. An average of 16% of the Pixley ka Seme population is between 0-6 years old while 8% are 60 years old or older. A further 31% are in the school going age group of 7 to 19 years. The economically active age group of 20 to 59 years old accounts for almost half the population (46%). The population proportion can be summarized as follows: Pixley ka Seme district has about 32% of the population aged >15 years, 31.6% >15 years, 62.4% between 15 and 64 years and the population aged 65+ years accounts for only 6.1%.

The implications of this population structure are a higher demand on the provision of social and physical facilities, like schools, primary health care centres, etc. in the district

### 2.16.3 Youth

#### Identified issues

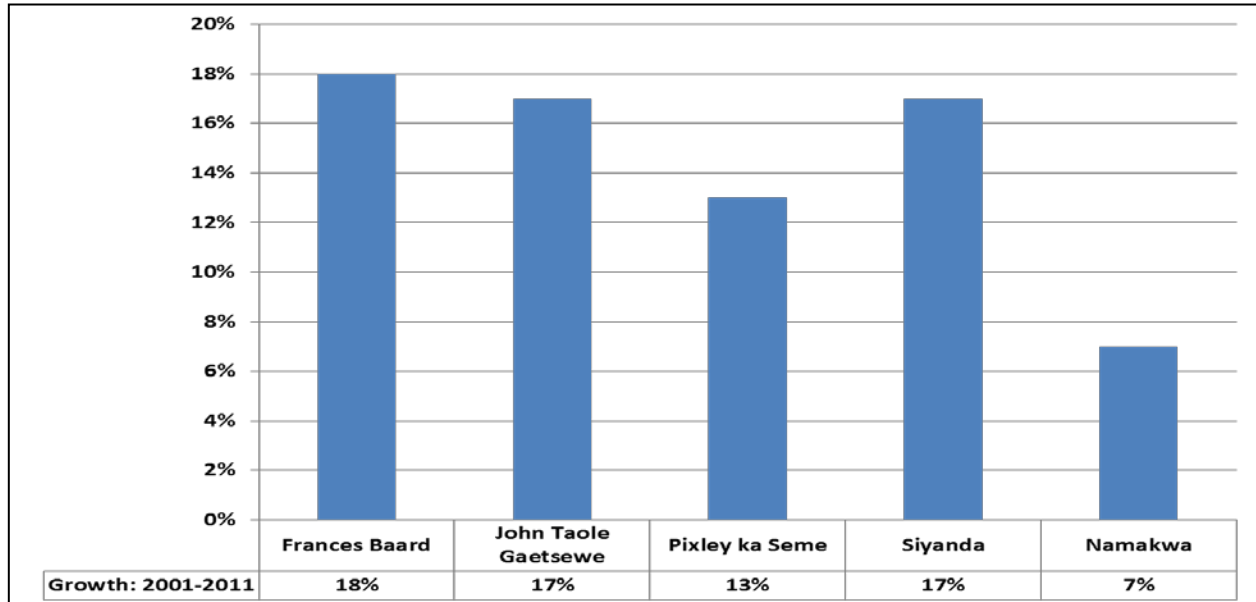
**The following issues were identified in the IDPs of local municipalities regarding the youth:**

- Rise in teenage pregnancies
- Lack of sport and recreational centres
- Substance and alcohol abuse
- High unemployment under the youth
- Homelessness
- Street children
- Increasing rate of HIV infections amongst the youth
- High drop out rate at school
- Lack relevant skills that are required for employment

- High levels of domestic violence and rape
- Vulnerability
- Lack of children's homes

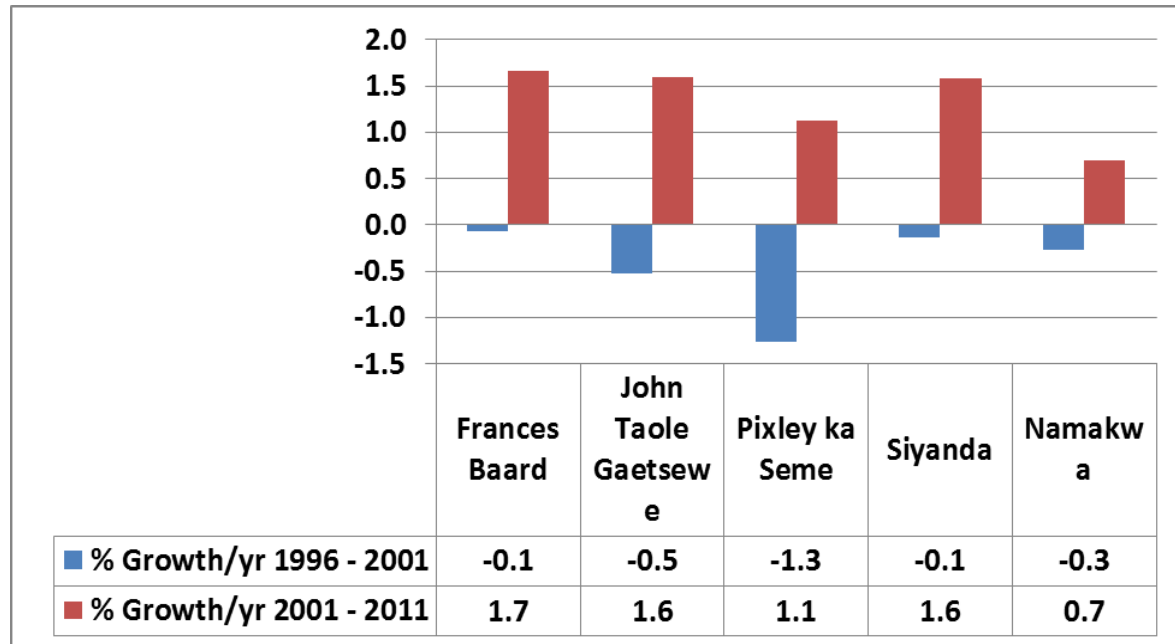
**Population growth**

**FIGURE 5: GROWTH BY DISTRICT 2001-2011**



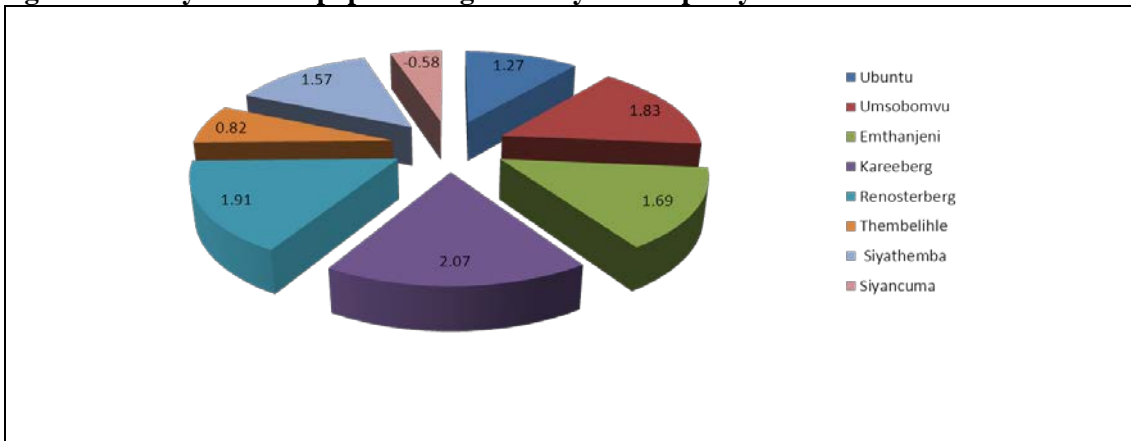
Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**FIGURE 6: ANNUAL POPULATION GROWTH**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**Figure 7: Pixley ka Seme population growth by municipality 2001-2011**



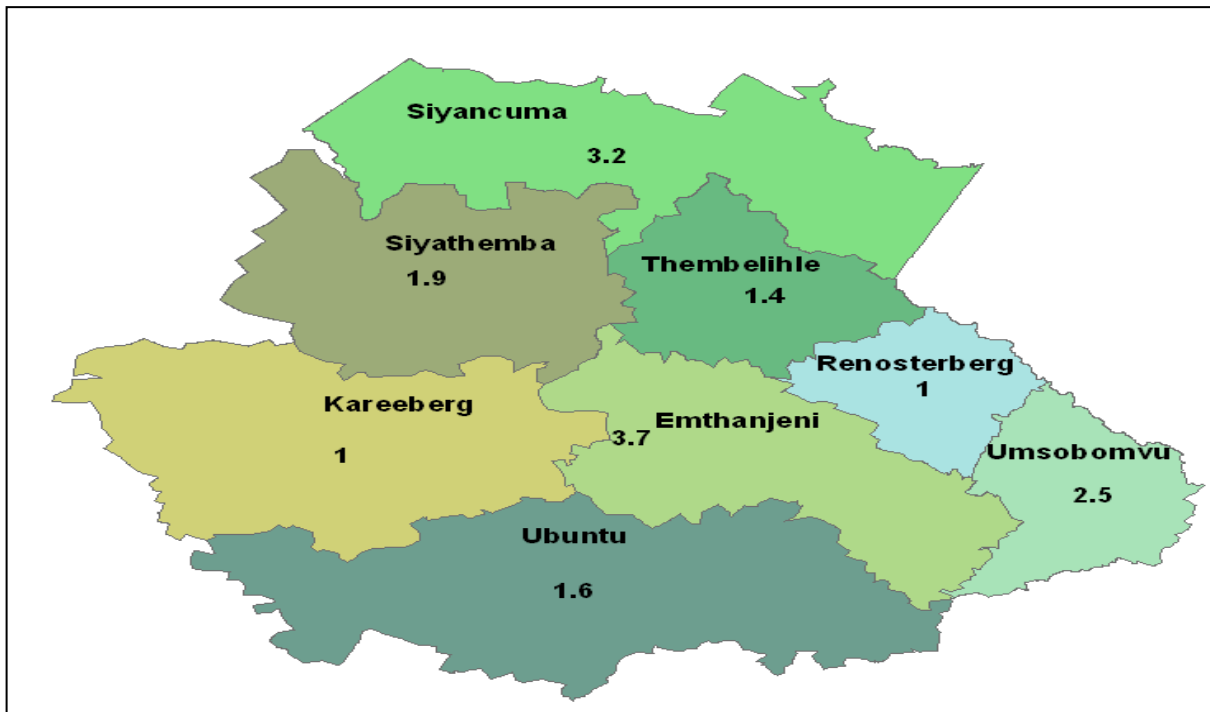
Source: Statistics South Africa: 2011

Growth rate: 2001-2011

Northern Cape: 1.44%

Pixley ka Seme District: 1.12 % per annum

**FIGURE 8 Annual Growth 2001-2011**



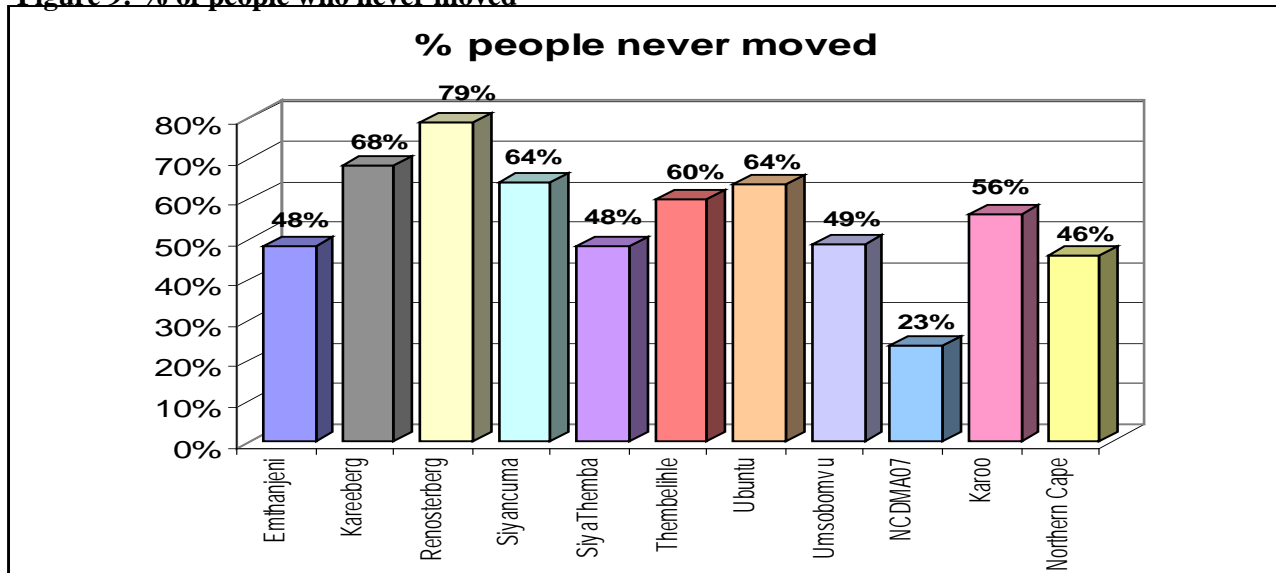
Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

The Northern Cape Province recorded a population growth rate of 1.44% between 2001 and 2011, while the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality recorded a population growth of 1.12% over the similar period. The low population growth rate experienced in Pixley ka Seme District can be ascribed to the following factors:

Notwithstanding the low population growth (1.12% pa), the prevalence rate of HIV is a major factor in shaping future population estimates. The HIV/AIDS prevalence rate of Pixley ka Seme in 2001 was only marginally lower than the Northern Cape average (14.4% compared to 15.85% respectively), and well below the South African prevalence rate of 24.5%. Although it is not high by comparison to South Africa it is undoubtedly a factor which will impact on the growth and welfare of the Pixley ka Seme population.

Migration is also a determinant of population growth. Both urban to urban migration and rural to urban migration are relevant in Pixley ka Seme. Rural to urban migration is perceived as the dominant migration type at present. A rapid decline in net migration into the province is predicted. With declining economies, Pixley ka Seme is unlikely to attract immigrants. However, while the Pixley ka Seme population may appear to be stagnant, the towns are growing as rural households move to towns to access better facilities and services. This trend is expected to continue with the access to health and education facilities as major pull factors.

**Figure 9: % of people who never moved**



Source: Pixley ka Seme District Municipality IDP 2011/16

### People who never moved from the place in which they currently live

The Pixley ka Seme population is not mobile. Mobility is expressed as percentage of persons who have never moved from the place in which they are currently living. 56% of Pixley ka Seme inhabitants have never moved, compared to 46% of Northern Cape people. Renosterberg inhabitants are the least likely to move while those living in the farms or rural areas are the most likely to move.

### 2.17 Historical population growth

Because water and sanitation supply is provided at a household level, the growth in households is more relevant than population growth. In many instances the population may be static (i.e. no population growth)

but the settlement is increasing with the formation of new households. Household size has decreased over time.

The farms have experienced negative population growth and this is predicted to continue. Most of the towns have also experienced low growth rates. Where higher growth rates have occurred seem to be at: Prieska, De Aar and Douglas.

It must also be noted that the Enumeration Areas of each of the Censuses are possibly not the same and historical data in the table below should be used for an indication of a trend only.



**Table 15: Historical population growth 1970 to 1996**

Magisterial district	Total 1996	Total 1991	Total 1985	Total 1980	Total 1970	Growth	Growth 1970-1980 pa	Growth 1980-1985 pa	Growth 1985-1991 pa	Growth 1970-1996 pa	Growth 1980-1996 pa	Growth 1985-1996 pa	Growth 1991-1996 pa
<b>Britstown</b>	<b>6 066</b>	<b>6 523</b>	<b>5 528</b>	<b>6 346</b>	<b>6 853</b>	<b>Negative</b>	-0.77%	-2.72%	2.80%	-0.47%	-0.28%	0.85%	-1.44%
<b>De Aar</b>	<b>28 880</b>	<b>25 438</b>	<b>24 772</b>	<b>23 319</b>	<b>20 324</b>	<b>Low</b>	1.38%	1.22%	0.44%	1.36%	1.35%	1.40%	2.57%
<b>Hanover</b>	<b>4 747</b>	<b>4 399</b>	<b>4 564</b>	<b>5 222</b>	<b>5 358</b>	<b>Low</b>	-0.26%	-2.66%	-0.61%	-0.46%	-0.59%	0.36%	1.53%
<b>Carnarvon</b>	<b>9 732</b>	<b>9 728</b>	<b>9 139</b>	<b>10 175</b>	<b>11 008</b>	<b>Low</b>	-0.78%	-2.12%	1.05%	-0.47%	-0.28%	0.57%	0.01%
<b>Philipstown</b>	<b>9 436</b>	<b>8 799</b>	<b>8 117</b>	<b>7 690</b>	<b>8 743</b>	<b>Low</b>	-1.28%	1.09%	1.35%	0.29%	1.29%	1.38%	1.41%
<b>Hay</b>	<b>12 062</b>	<b>11 104</b>	<b>9 887</b>	<b>11 456</b>	<b>12 228</b>	<b>Low</b>	-0.65%	-2.90%	1.95%	-0.05%	0.32%	1.82%	1.67%
<b>Herbert</b>	<b>28 855</b>	<b>26 316</b>	<b>19 143</b>	<b>21 567</b>	<b>18 278</b>	<b>Low</b>	1.67%	-2.36%	5.45%	1.77%	1.84%	3.80%	1.86%
<b>Hopetown</b>	<b>13 570</b>	<b>11 175</b>	<b>10 812</b>	<b>11 983</b>	<b>10 823</b>	<b>Med</b>	1.02%	-2.04%	0.55%	0.87%	0.78%	2.09%	3.96%
<b>Prieska</b>	<b>20 171</b>	<b>19 185</b>	<b>20 344</b>	<b>26 144</b>	<b>19 931</b>	<b>Low</b>	2.75%	-4.89%	-0.97%	0.05%	-1.61%	-0.08%	1.01%
<b>Colesberg</b>	<b>17 615</b>	<b>15 446</b>	<b>13 353</b>	<b>15 670</b>	<b>14 873</b>	<b>Med</b>	0.52%	-3.15%	2.46%	0.65%	0.73%	2.55%	2.66%
<b>Noupoort</b>	<b>7 754</b>	<b>8 348</b>	<b>8 613</b>	<b>8 605</b>	<b>9 138</b>	<b>Negative</b>	-0.60%	0.02%	-0.52%	-0.63%	-0.65%	-0.95%	-1.47%
<b>Richmond</b>	<b>6 604</b>	<b>6 326</b>	<b>6 529</b>	<b>7 344</b>	<b>7 195</b>	<b>Low</b>	0.21%	-2.33%	-0.53%	-0.33%	-0.66%	0.10%	0.86%
<b>Victoria-West</b>	<b>14 022</b>	<b>11 910</b>	<b>10 475</b>	<b>10 934</b>	<b>11 413</b>	<b>Med</b>	-0.43%	-0.85%	2.16%	0.79%	1.57%	2.69%	3.32%
<b>Pixley</b>	<b>179 514</b>	<b>164 697</b>	<b>151 276</b>	<b>166 455</b>	<b>156 165</b>	<b>LOW</b>	<b>0.64%</b>	<b>-1.89%</b>	<b>1.43%</b>	<b>0.54%</b>	<b>0.47%</b>	<b>1.57%</b>	<b>1.74%</b>
<b>Northern Cape</b>	<b>840 323</b>	<b>721 796</b>	<b>646 967</b>	<b>702 288</b>	<b>613 571</b>		1.36%	-1.63%	1.84%	1.22%	1.13%	2.41%	3.09%

*Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2011/16*

**Table 16: Population growth, DWA 2001**

Municipality	Location	GR2005	GR2015	GR2025	POP 95	POP 2005	POP 2015	POP 2025	GR2005	GR2015	GR2025	POP 95	POP 2005	POP 2015	POP 2025
Emthanjeni	Britstown / Mziwabantu	-1.402	-2.294	-3.050	5 300	4 602	3 649	2 677	-1.442	-1.918	-2.306	5 300	4 583	3 598	2 632
Emthanjeni	Britstown Rural	-1.979	-2.915	-3.747	1 650	1 351	1 005	686	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	1 650	1 345	988	672
Emthanjeni	De Aar Rural	-1.984	-2.915	-3.755	1 250	1 023	761	519	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	1 250	1 019	748	509
Emthanjeni	De Aar/Nonzwakazi	0.210	-0.680	-1.436	26 950	27 521	25 705	22 244	0.170	-0.306	-0.694	26 950	27 412	25 350	21 872
Kareeberg	Carnarvon	0.040	-0.851	-1.605	5 700	5 723	5 254	4 469	0.000	-0.475	-0.863	5 700	5 700	5 182	4 394
Kareeberg	Carnarvon Rural	-1.981	-2.918	-3.746	2 950	2 415	1 796	1 226	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 950	2 405	1 766	1 202
Kareeberg	Vanwyksvlei	0.038	-0.852	-1.605	1 300	1 305	1 198	1 019	0.000	-0.475	-0.863	1 300	1 300	1 182	1 002
Kareeberg	Vosburg	0.111	-0.774	-1.535	1 350	1 365	1 263	1 082	0.074	-0.402	-0.790	1 350	1 360	1 246	1 064
Renosterberg	Petrusville / Thembinkosi / Vanderkloof	0.296	-0.592	-1.346	3 300	3 399	3 203	2 797	0.257	-0.218	-0.606	3 300	3 386	3 159	2 750
Renosterberg	Phillipstown/ Lukhanyisweni	0.298	-0.594	-1.346	2 650	2 730	2 572	2 246	0.257	-0.218	-0.606	2 650	2 719	2 537	2 208
Renosterberg	PhillipstownRural	-1.982	-2.914	-3.747	3 450	2 824	2 101	1 434	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	3 450	2 813	2 066	1 406
Siyancuma	Campbell	0.075	-0.811	-1.566	1 600	1 612	1 486	1 269	0.038	-0.438	-0.826	1 600	1 606	1 466	1 248
Siyancuma	Douglas / Bongani	0.077	-0.813	-1.568	9 950	10 027	9 241	7 890	0.038	-0.438	-0.826	9 950	9 987	9 114	7 758
Siyancuma	Griekwastad / Mathlomola	0.084	-0.808	-1.564	5 000	5 042	4 649	3 971	0.043	-0.433	-0.821	5 000	5 021	4 585	3 905
Siyancuma	Hay Rural	-1.983	-2.916	-3.747	4 750	3 888	2 892	1 974	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	4 750	3 872	2 844	1 935
Siyancuma	Herbert Rural	-1.983	-2.914	-3.748	14 750	12 073	8 982	6 130	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	14 750	12 025	8 832	6 009
Siyathemba	Marydale	0.040	-0.852	-1.605	1 750	1 757	1 613	1 372	0.000	-0.476	-0.864	1 750	1 750	1 591	1 349
Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	0.083	-0.805	-1.567	1 200	1 210	1 116	953	0.043	-0.433	-0.821	1 200	1 205	1 100	937
Siyathemba	Prieska / Ethembeni	0.040	-0.850	-1.606	11 000	11 044	10 140	8 624	0.000	-0.476	-0.864	11 000	11 000	10 000	8 480
Siyathemba	Prieska Rural	-1.984	-2.913	-3.748	5 700	4 665	3 471	2 369	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	5 700	4 647	3 413	2 322
Thembelihle	Hopetown	0.118	-0.774	-1.529	7 100	7 184	6 647	5 698	0.077	-0.398	-0.786	7 100	7 155	6 555	5 603
Thembelihle	Hopetown Rural	-1.983	-2.914	-3.750	3 350	2 742	2 040	1 392	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	3 350	2 731	2 006	1 365
Thembelihle	Orania	0.124	-0.767	-1.535	320	324	300	257	0.077	-0.398	-0.786	320	322	295	253
Thembelihle	Strydenburg	0.119	-0.778	-1.530	1 750	1 771	1 638	1 404	0.077	-0.398	-0.786	1 750	1 764	1 616	1 381
Ubuntu	Loxton	0.114	-0.775	-1.537	700	708	655	561	0.074	-0.402	-0.790	700	705	646	552
Ubuntu	Richmond / Sabelo	0.186	-0.706	-1.461	4 150	4 228	3 939	3 400	0.146	-0.330	-0.718	4 150	4 211	3 885	3 344
Ubuntu	Richmond Rural	-1.983	-2.913	-3.751	2 000	1 637	1 218	831	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 000	1 630	1 198	815

Ubuntu	Victoria-West Masinyusane	0.114	-0.776	-1.532	7 850	7 940	7 345	6 294	0.074	-0.402	-0.790	7 850	7 908	7 243	6 189
Ubuntu	Victoria-West Rural	-1.981	-2.918	-3.746	2 950	2 415	1 796	1 226	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 950	2 405	1 766	1 202
Umsobomvu	Colesberg / Kuyasa	0.130	-0.761	-1.516	12 950	13 119	12 154	10 432	0.090	-0.386	-0.774	12 950	13 066	11 986	10 257
Umsobomvu	Colesberg Rural	-1.982	-2.918	-3.749	2 850	2 333	1 735	1 184	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	2 850	2 323	1 706	1 161
Umsobomvu	Hanover Nompumelelo	0.072	-0.818	-1.576	3 200	3 223	2 969	2 533	0.032	-0.443	-0.831	3 200	3 210	2 928	2 491
Umsobomvu	Hanover Rural	-1.984	-2.915	-3.755	1 250	1 023	761	519	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	1 250	1 019	748	509
Umsobomvu	Norvalspont	0.133	-0.763	-1.520	1 500	1 520	1 408	1 208	0.090	-0.386	-0.774	1 500	1 513	1 388	1 188
Umsobomvu	Noupoort Kwazamuxolo	-0.591	-1.481	-2.236	6 950	6 550	5 642	4 500	-0.630	-1.106	-1.494	6 950	6 524	5 565	4 425
Umsobomvu	Noupoort Rural	-1.979	-2.911	-3.762	850	696	518	353	-2.022	-3.039	-3.777	850	693	509	346
<b>PIXLEY</b>		-0.49%	-1.31%	-2.00%	<b>171 270</b>	<b>162 989</b>	<b>142 862</b>	<b>116 743</b>	-0.53%	-1.41%	-2.03%	<b>171 270</b>	<b>162 334</b>	<b>140 807</b>	<b>114 735</b>

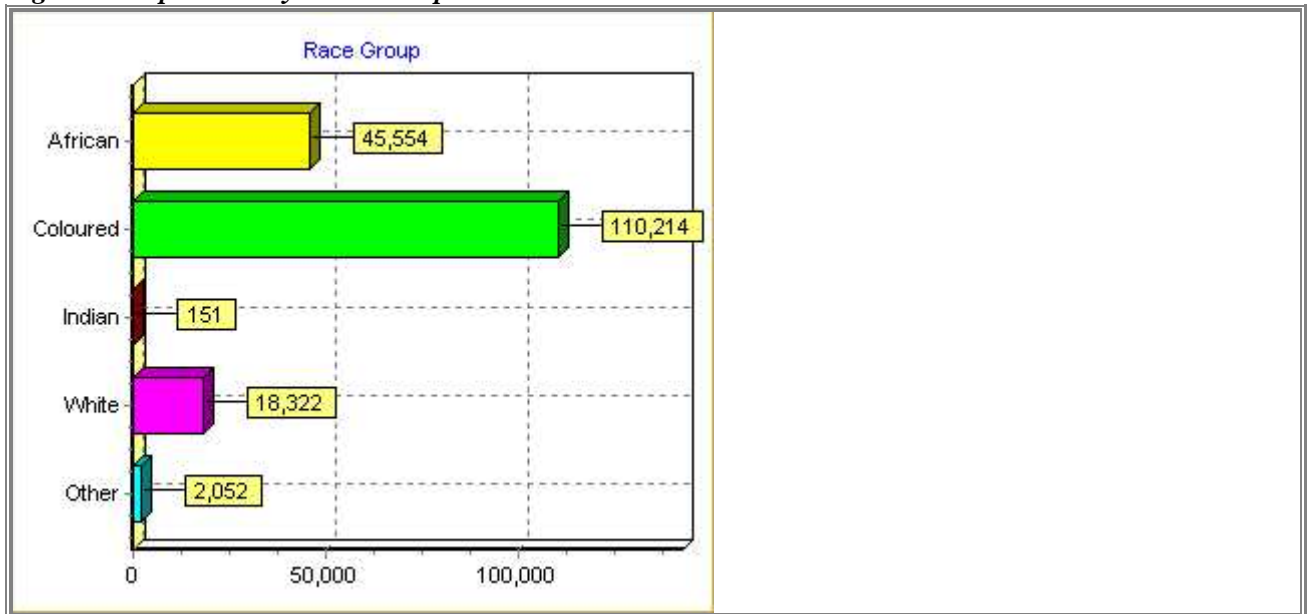
*PKS DM IDP 2011/16*

**Table 17: Population by Race Group**

<i>Municipality</i>	<i>Black African(%)</i>	<i>Coloured(%)</i>	<i>White(%)</i>	<i>Indian/Asian(%)</i>
<i>Emthanjeni</i>	33.2	57.7	8.0	0.6
<i>Kareeberg</i>	4.8	85.1	9.1	0.5
<i>Thembelihle</i>	15.2	70.7	13.1	0.5
<i>Siyathemba</i>	18.8	71.9	8.5	0.5
<i>Renosterberg</i>	32.9	57.4	8.6	0.5
<i>Ubuntu</i>	21.3	69.8	7.6	0.5
<i>Siyancuma</i>	33.0	57.5	7.5	0.7
<i>Umsobomvu</i>	62.6	30.6	5.7	0.5
<i>District</i>	27.7	62.5	8.5	0.5

Source: Statistics South Africa: 2011

**Figure 8: Population by Race Group**



Sources: SSA: 2011

The above table shows the population race of the district by local municipality. The dominance of coloured population group is clearly visible in the above table and figure. They account for about 63 % of the district total population, which is an indicative that the district is a coloured community. The Indian/Asian race group is in the minority.

## **2.18 Population Density**

Population density is a key factor in determining the provision of infrastructure and services. It is found by simply dividing the total population and the area. The total land area of the District is 103 410km<sup>2</sup>, thus giving a population density of 1.8 people per square kilometre.

The table below indicates that Umsobomvu Local Municipality has the highest population density and (4 persons per square kilometre) in 2011. The population density for the other municipalities ranges from 3.1 to 0.7 persons per square kilometre. This really suggests that Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu have a population density being well above the average population density of 1.8 persons per square kilometre for the District. From the planning point of view, this inequitable population distribution within the district will require formulation and implementation of regional development policies so as to remove the imbalance. Provision of basic services in areas that are currently under-serviced would somehow draw population into those areas and in future the densities would be the same

**Table 18: Population density by Local Municipality**

<b>Municipalities</b>	<b>Population</b>	<b>Average Population Annual Rate Of Growth Between 2001 - 2011</b>	<b>% Of Total Population</b>	<b>Area (Km2)</b>	<b>Density Per Km2</b>	<b>HH</b>	<b>Average HH (2011)</b>
Emthanjeni	42 358	1.69	22.7	13 472	3.1	10 457	3.9
Kareeberg	11 673	2.07	6.9	702	0.7	3 222	3.4
Thembelihle	14 467	0.82	7.7	8023	2.0	4 140	3.7
Siyathemba	18 445	1.57	9.8	14725	1.5	5 831	3.6
Renosterberg	10 978	1.91	5.8	5527	2.0	2 995	3.4
Ubuntu	18 601	1.27	9.9	20 389	0.9	5 129	3.5
Siyancuma	37 076	-0.58	19.8	16 753	2.2	9 578	3.8
Umsobomvu	28 376	1.83	15.2	6 819	4.2	7 841	3.5
<b>District (Total)</b>	<b>186 351</b>	<b>1.12</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>103 410</b>	<b>1.8</b>	<b>49 193</b>	<b>3.7</b>

*Sources: Statistics South Africa: 2011*

## 2.19 Socio-economic conditions(Unemployment)

Levels of unemployment (28.3%) as recorded in the census survey 2011 seem unrealistically low compared to current conditions. However, it is also clear that the Census and many other references do not use the same definition of unemployment and it is difficult to compile trends.

According to the figure the district has a higher unemployment (33.0%) and a lower employment rate (36.1%) than the province. A larger portion (37.8%) of the population is not economically active, although they are of a PEA age (between 15 – 65 years). These persons are either not able to work or chose not to work.

**Table 19: Employment Profile, absolute totals 2007**

Employment Status	Northern Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
Employed	225031	37353
Unemployed	121745	21467
Not Economically Active	277398	43036
<b>Total</b>	<b>624194</b>	<b>101865</b>

Source: PKS DM IDP 2011/16

Census 2011 indicates that Umsobomvu municipality has the highest rate of unemployment (33.0% in the district, which is attributed to the decline in the railway industry. There is a decrease of youth unemployment rate (official) 15 -34 years from 44.1% in 2001 to 35.4% in 2011. This is an indication that the government is working on addressing the issues around unemployment in the country.

When the actual numbers of unemployed in the districts are considered, the municipalities that have the most people in the unemployed trap are Emthanjeni, Siyancuma, Umsobomvu and Siyathemba. These account for 20 153 (70,8%) of the unemployed in the district. Interventions in these municipalities would render the unemployment rate in the district to 7,2% provided the unemployed 20 153 are employed in these areas.

The information in Pixley ka Seme IDP of 2003-2005 indicates that being disabled does not seem to disadvantage the disabled from being employed. The rate of unemployment and looking for work in the Pixley ka Seme for able-bodied persons was 31% compared to 34% disabled persons. However, in the Northern Cape as a whole it was a distinct disadvantage, where only 28% of able-bodied persons were unemployed and looking for work compared to 36% of disabled persons who were looking for work.

Females are more likely to be unemployed and looking for work in the Pixley ka Seme than males (43% versus 22% respectively). This is similar to the Northern Cape pattern, although the female unemployment rate is greater in Pixley ka Seme (43%) than in the Northern Cape (38%).

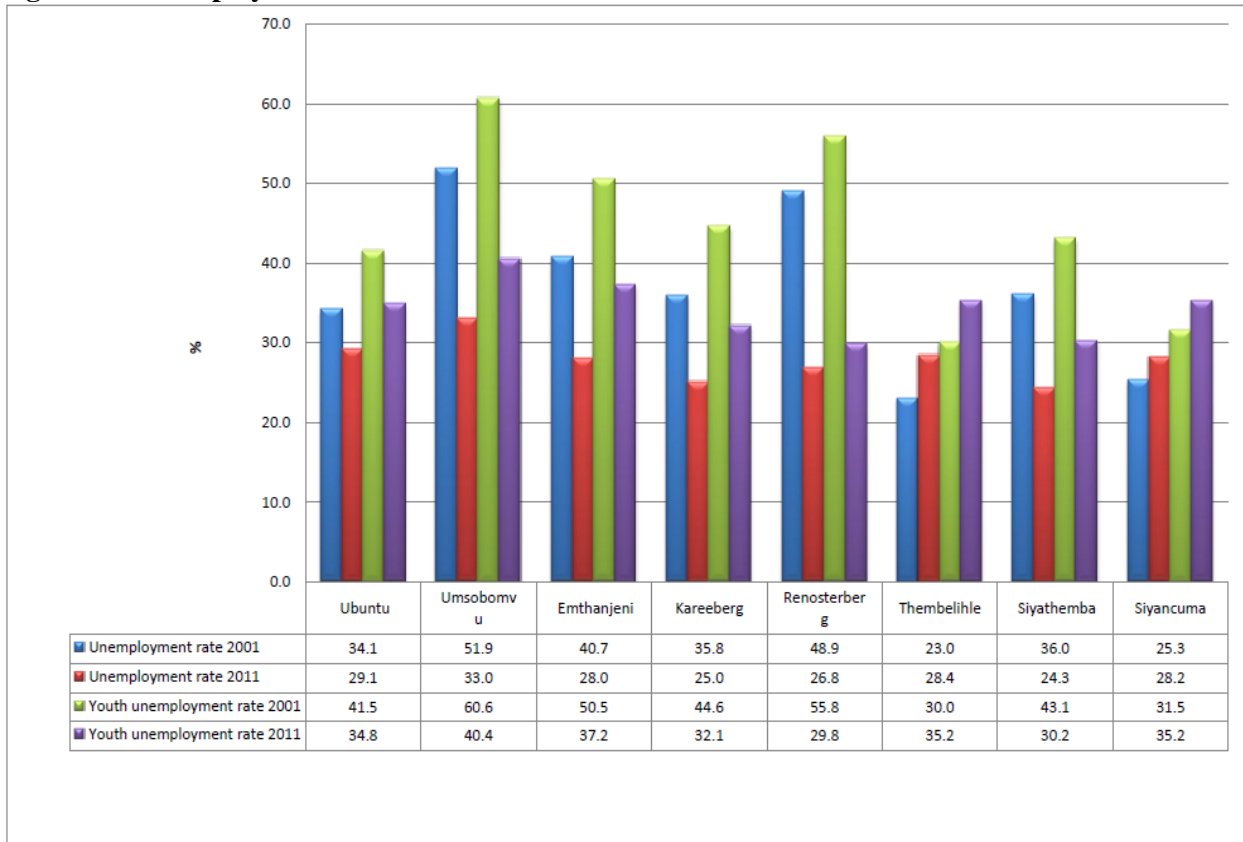
**Table 20: Employment Status per Local Municipality**

	Employed	Total%	Unemployed	Total%	Discouraged work-seeker	Total%	Other not economically active
<b>Ubuntu</b>	5028	27	2064	11	507	3	3774
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	6117	22	3018	11	1188	4	7491
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	9864	23	3831	9	1203	3	11559
<b>Kareeberg</b>	2856	24	951	8	456	4	3030
<b>Renosterberg</b>	2616	24	957	9	324	3	2796
<b>Thembelihle</b>	3861	25	1533	10	687	4	3777
<b>Siyathemba</b>	5370	25	1728	8	765	4	5787
<b>Siyancuma</b>	7947	21	3120	8	1422	4	10575
<b>Total</b>	43659	192	17202	75	6552	30	48789

Statistics South Africa 2011

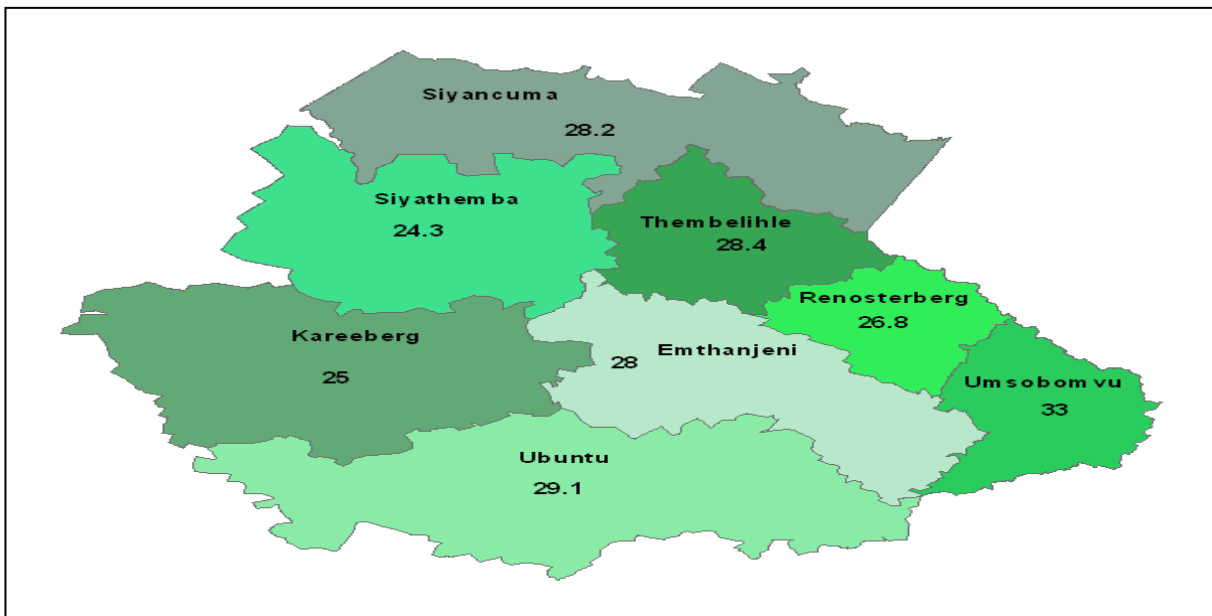
The figures below shows unemployment trend in local Municipalities:

**Figure 11: Unemployment rate 2011**



Source :Statistics South Africa 2011

**FIGURE 12**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011



## LABOUR

### ❖ LABOUR PARTICIPATION RATE

The labour participation rate in the district is 50,43%. This indicates the labour force as a percentage of the population in the age group 15-64 years of age.

### ❖ LABOUR DEPENDENCY RATIO

The total number of persons supported by every person in the labour force, excluding him or herself is indicated by the labour dependency ratio. In the case of the Pixley ka Seme district this ratio is 1,81 with working individuals in the Siyathemba, Siyancuma and Thembelihle municipalities having to support approximately 2 persons. The lowest ratio in the district is to be found in the DMA area, at 0,81.

### ❖ LABOUR YOUTH DEPENDENCY RATIO

Indicates the total number of youths, aged 0-14, supported by every person in the labour force, excluding him or herself. The ratio in the Pixley ka Seme district is 0,09. This indicates that working individuals support approximately one youth in the age group 0-14.

### ❖ LABOUR AGED DEPENDENCY RATIO

The labour aged dependency ratio indicates the total number of aged persons, older than 65, supported by every person in the labour force, excluding him or herself. The ratio for the district is 0,85.

### ❖ LABOUR ABSORPTION CAPACITY

The labour absorption capacity is the ability of the formal sector of the economy to absorb the supply of labour in the region. Approximately 25% of the economically active population of the district is unemployed. The municipalities that have the largest percentage of unemployed in the district is Umsobomvu and Renosterberg with unemployment rates of 30% and 31% respectively. The table 18 below indicates the above ratios in each municipality in the district:

**Table 21: Labour Ratio**

Local Municipality	Labour Participation Rate	Labour dependency ratio	Labour youth dependency ratio	Labour aged dependency ratio
Emthanjeni	49,70	1,81	12,05	84,53
Kareeberg	54,80	1,65	13,91	79,13
Renosterberg	56,94	1,52	18,66	84,97
Siyancuma	45,81	2,09	-1,83	83,53
Siyathemba	48,19	1,99	0,36	83,92
Thembelihle	46,93	1,95	3,10	83,68
Ubuntu	54,39	1,64	13,09	86,03
Umsobomvu	51,94	1,73	8,19	86,81
	<b>5043</b>	<b>1,81</b>	<b>8,80</b>	<b>84,65</b>

Source Statistics South Africa 2011

## **2.20 Employment by Economic Sector**

The table below, shows the occupation of the employed population by economic sector for the district. Assessment of the table revealed that agriculture/ farming and commercial services both play an important role in providing employment to the working population. About 39 % of the total working population were employed in agricultural sector and 23.2% were employed in commercial services. Therefore it is evident that local employment is mainly provided by agricultural and commercial sectors.

**Table 22: Employment by Economic Sector**

<b>Economic Activities</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>00</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>%</b>
<b>Farming Agriculture</b>	356	780	1 056	440	670	1 445	2 627	1 304	252	876	1 807	713	1 346	13 672	38.9
<b>Mining</b>	0	0	11	7	0	15	22	0	0	0	0	8	10	73	0.2
<b>Manufacturing</b>	46	23	18	212	38	233	65	113	16	4	90	18	115	991	2.8
<b>Electricity</b>	0	6	40	112	0	0	15	0	0	130	29	0	0	332	0.9
<b>Construction</b>	24	15	112	279	47	65	88	17	0	20	174	21	35	897	2.5
<b>Trade</b>	166	263	562	789	98	218	490	430	113	154	583	165	539	4 570	13
<b>Transport</b>	10	31	23	504	0	13	97	109	59	21	129	23	117	1 136	3.2
<b>Finance</b>	21	24	51	429	9	27	76	44	12	34	104	8	153	992	2.8
<b>Community Services</b>	189	557	804	1977	210	430	1 090	655	295	392	729	158	666	8 152	23.2
<b>Household</b>	266	268	304	655	68	335	574	320	148	168	391	206	581	4 282	12.2
<b>Total</b>	1 078	1 967	2 981	5 404	1 140	2 781	5 144	2 992	895	1 799	4 036	1 320	3 569	<b>35 099</b>	

Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2011/16

## Part-time employment

Part-time employment in the district forms 5.8% (2003) workers of the total workforce of these part-time workers, the majority are casual workers (2-9%/991 workers) or temporary workers (2 – 6%/916 workers). A very small percentage (0–3%/97 workers) is seasonal workers.

### 2.20.1 Gross Domestic Product (GDP) contributions and growth rate.

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP) indicates the scale of production within the district. According to the current Socio-Economic profile of the district, the Gross Domestic Product of the district is as follows:

- **GDP Contributions (2008):**

- Northern Cape Province Contribution to GDP 2.08%
- Pixley ka Seme DM Contribution to province GDP 12.09%
- Pixley ka Seme DM Contribution to RSA GDP 0.27%

- **GDP per Capital (2007):**

- South Africa R21,367.80
- Northern Cape Province R21,641.65
- Pixley ka Seme DM R18,204.70

- **GDP growth rates (2001-2005)**

- South Africa 4.0%
- Northern Cape Province 2.7%
- Pixley ka Seme DM 3.6%

Sectoral GDP Contribution (2007)

The sectoral GDP contribution of the district is as follows:

**Table23: Sectoral GDP contribution (2007)**

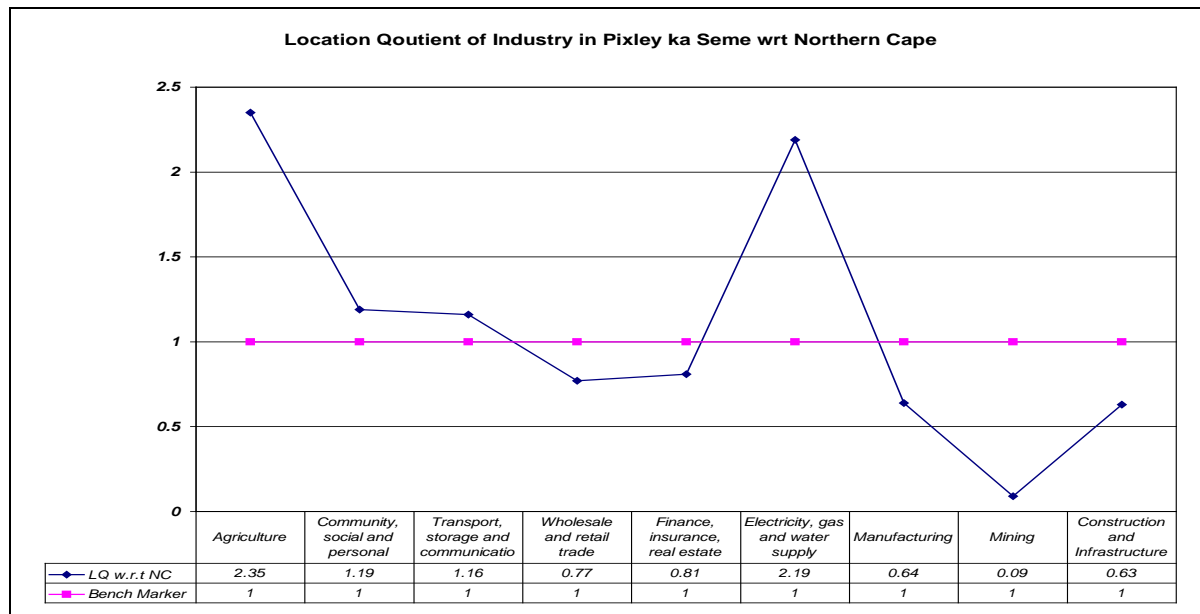
Sector	Northern Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
Government Services	13.1%	12.9%
Community and Social Services	8.7%	5.6%
Finance and Business Services	12.8%	22.5%
Transport and Communication	10.7%	11.3%
Trade and Accommodation	12.9%	15.4%
Construction	1.4%	3.3%
Electricity and water	2.0%	2.3%
Manufacturing	3.3%	17.4%
Mining	28.4%	6.8%
Agriculture	6.7%	2.7%

**Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2008**

The total GDP of Pixley ka Seme DM for 2008 was R2.8 billion. The economy of the district is diversified with the largest GDP contributors being the financial and business services sector (22.5%) as well as the government services sector (12.9%). The district has a larger GDP contribution than the province in terms of the manufacturing, trade, financial and business services, transport and communication, construction as well as electricity and water sectors. Agriculture has a very small GDP contribution only 2.7%.

## LOCATION QUOTIENT

A comparative advantage indicates a relatively more competitive production function for a product or service in specific economy than the aggregate economy. This economy therefore renders this service



Source :Statistics South Africa 2011

more efficiently. The location quotient is an indication of the comparative advantage of an economy in terms of its production and employment. A location quotient greater than 1 indicates a comparative advantage regarding the sector in one location with respect to another.

The analysis below indicates the location quotient of the Pixley ka Seme District with respect to the Northern Cape Province. The table and graph below indicates the location quotients of sectors in the district municipality with respect to the Northern Cape.

Sectors in the economy of Pixley ka Seme that have a location quotient larger than 1 are agriculture (2,35); community, social and personal services (1,19); transport, storage and communication (1,16); electricity, gas and water supply (2,19). These indicate sectors that show potential for additional development in this does not imply that sectors, that do not feature here, should not be pursued since there may be latent potential in these sectors that could be exploited.

Table 22 below indicates the location quotients of the economic sectors in the municipalities

**Table 24: Location Quotients of Economic Sectors**

	Kareeberg	Emthanjeni	DMA	Renosterberg	Siyancuma	Siyathemba	Thembelihle	Ubuntu	Umsobomvu
<b>Agriculture</b>	1,18	0,31	1,62	0,54	1,11	1,46	1,47	1,59	0,82
<b>Mining</b>	0,08	0,05	0,45	0,00	4,28	0,09	0,02	0,21	0,00
<b>Manufacturing</b>	0,41	0,71	1,28	0,13	1,92	0,76	1,99	0,91	0,18
<b>Electricity, gas and water supply</b>	0,17	0,60	0,36	11,42	0,08	1,14	0,23	0,00	0,97
<b>Construction</b>	0,52	1,25	0,85	0,58	0,99	1,69	0,48	0,55	1,00
<b>Wholesale and retail trade</b>	1,12	1,05	1,20	0,56	1,02	0,94	1,17	0,79	1,13
<b>Transport, storage and communication</b>	0,52	1,76	0,53	0,33	0,84	0,83	1,33	0,75	0,51
<b>Finance, insurance, real estate</b>	1,06	1,79	0,94	0,46	0,78	0,71	0,61	0,72	0,67
<b>Community, social and personal services</b>	1,18	1,37	0,58	0,54	0,82	0,72	0,56	0,85	1,55

Source : Statistics South Africa 2011

Other sectors in the district that have a distinct comparative advantage with respect to the Northern Cape and South Africa are:

- Electricity, Gas and Water supply
- Community, social and personal services
- Transport, storage and communication

The municipalities in the district that have comparative advantages with respect to the sector Electricity, Gas and Water supply are Renosterberg and Siyathemba with location quotients of 11,42 and 1,14 respectively. This resounding comparative advantage in the sector for the Renosterberg municipality is due to the presence of the van der Kloof dam in the municipality. It is the only sector in which Renosterberg has a comparative advantage with respect to other municipalities in the district.

Kareeberg, Emthanjeni and Umsobomvu have location quotients, with respect to other municipalities in the district, of 1,18, 1,37 and 1,55 respectively in the Community, social and personal services sector. In the Transport, storage and communication sector, Emthanjeni and Thembelihle have location quotients of 1,76 and 1,33 respectively, indicating a comparative advantage in this sector with respect to other municipalities in the district. The sectors that contribute significantly to the Northern Cape GDP is highlighted in the table above with agriculture having the highest LQ, Electricity, gas and water supply second highest LQ etc.

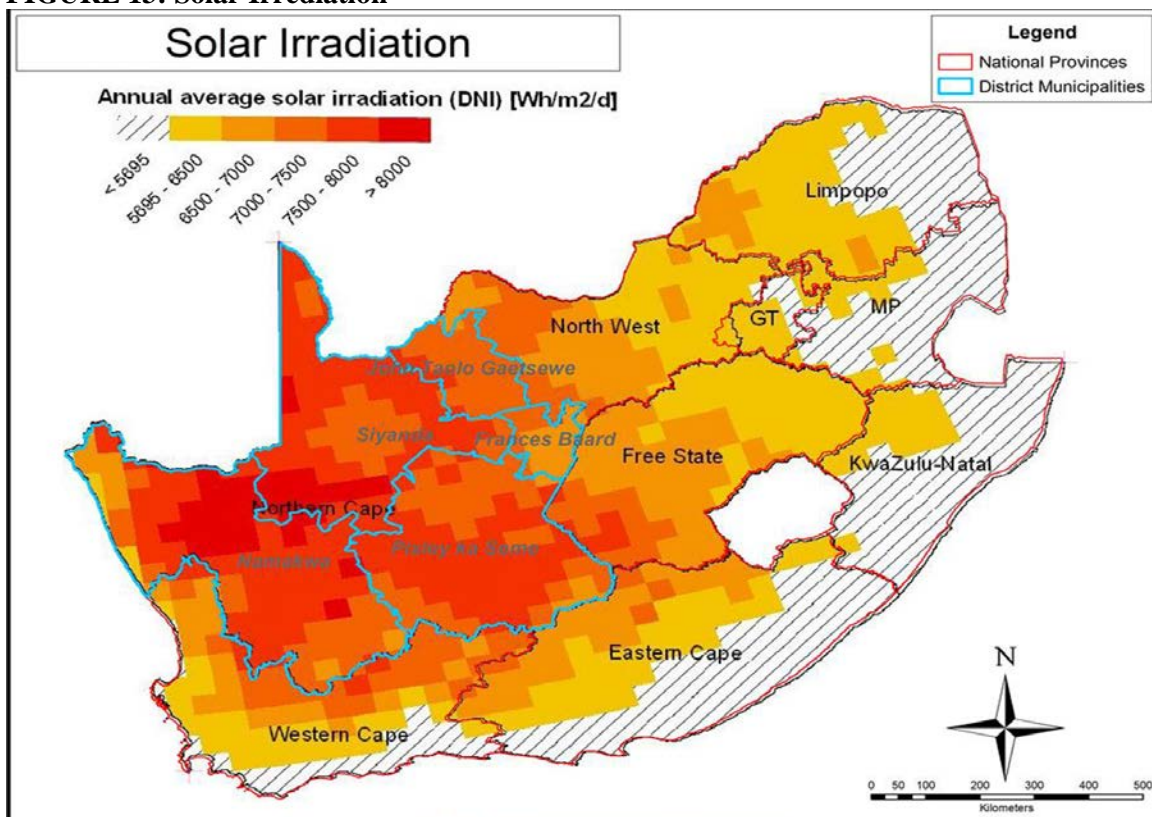
The agricultural sector has the potential for growth with a number of comparative and competitive advantages for the Northern Cape and Pixley ka Seme in particular.

### TRESS INDICATORS

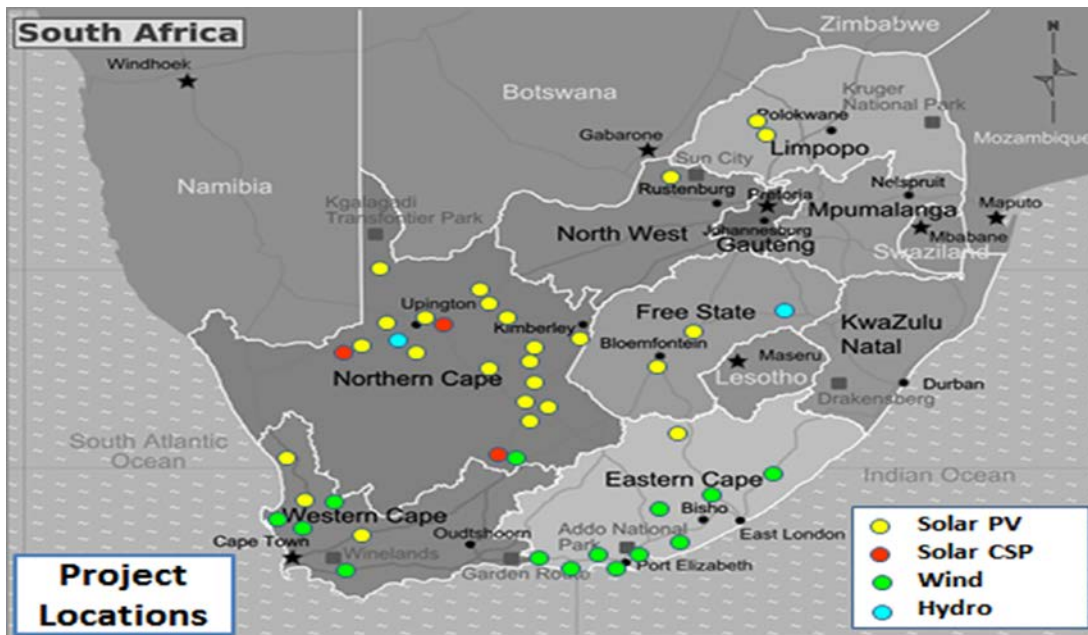
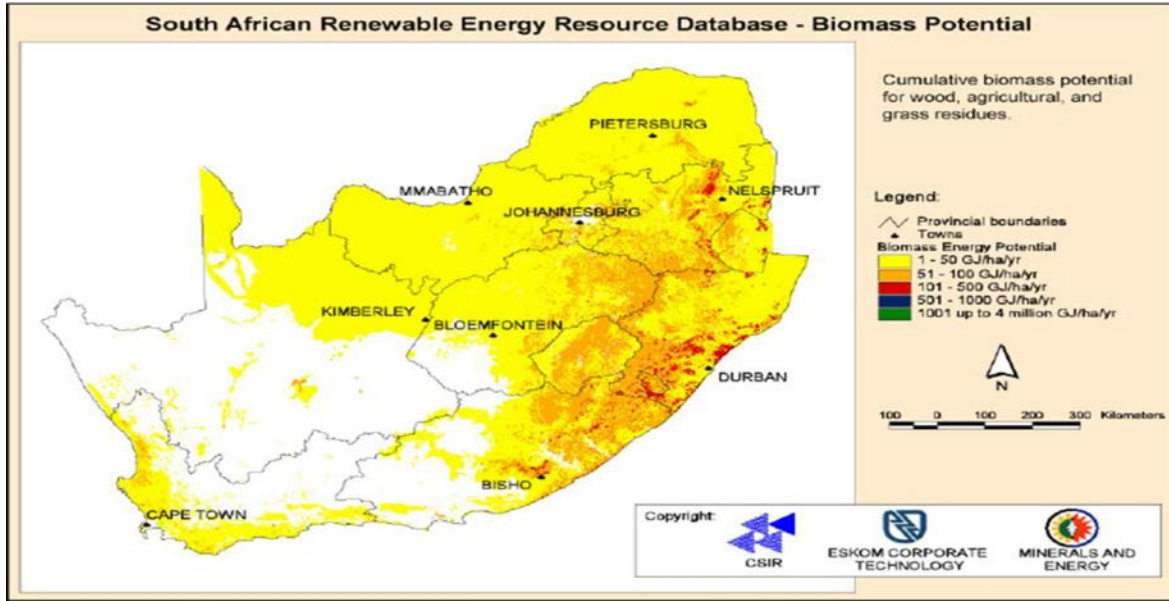
The level of diversification or concentration of a region's economy is measured by a tress index. A tress index of zero represents a totally diversified economy whilst the higher the index, the more concentrated or vulnerable the region's economy is to exogenous variables e.g. adverse climatic conditions and commodity price fluctuations.

The economy of the Pixley ka Seme district has a tress index of 56,18 indicating a reliance of the Pixley ka Seme economy on the agriculture, transport and services sector. This tress index indicates that the economy is not diversified but is largely dependant on the agriculture and is vulnerable to exogenous variables such as adverse climatic conditions, commodity price fluctuations. We need to look at ways of diversifying the economy

**FIGURE 13: Solar Irradiation**



**FIGURE 14**



**2.21 PIXLEY RENEWABLE ENERGY HUB**

The Pixley ka Seme District Municipality proactively took bold steps towards diversification of the District economy from one that relies on mining and agriculture. The Pixley ka Seme District 2010 Investment and Renewable Energy Conference was an important milestone aimed at 92 ‘Setting the District on a Growth Path’ through innovative local economic development initiatives. The gains made in this emerging sector are a product of committed political and administrative leadership from District and local municipalities. Taking a bird’s eye view of the District together we managed to declare ourselves as a Renewable Energy Hub seeking to attract foreign direct investments into solar, wind, hydro and Biomass projects.



During December 2011, the Department of Energy (DoE) and the National Treasury named the first 28 preferred bidders, along with solar and wind projects collectively representing 1 416 MW of potential capacity. These developers had until June 2012, to take 19 of their projects to financial close. The Pixley ka Seme District Renewable Energy Hub got a boost in the second window again made it in the nine solar PV bidders identified, with the 75 MW Solar Capital De Aar 3 and the 36.8 MW Linde project (Hanover) making the list, this adds 111,8 MW The second bidding window for the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPPP) allocation increased our solar portfolio to 367.1 MW.

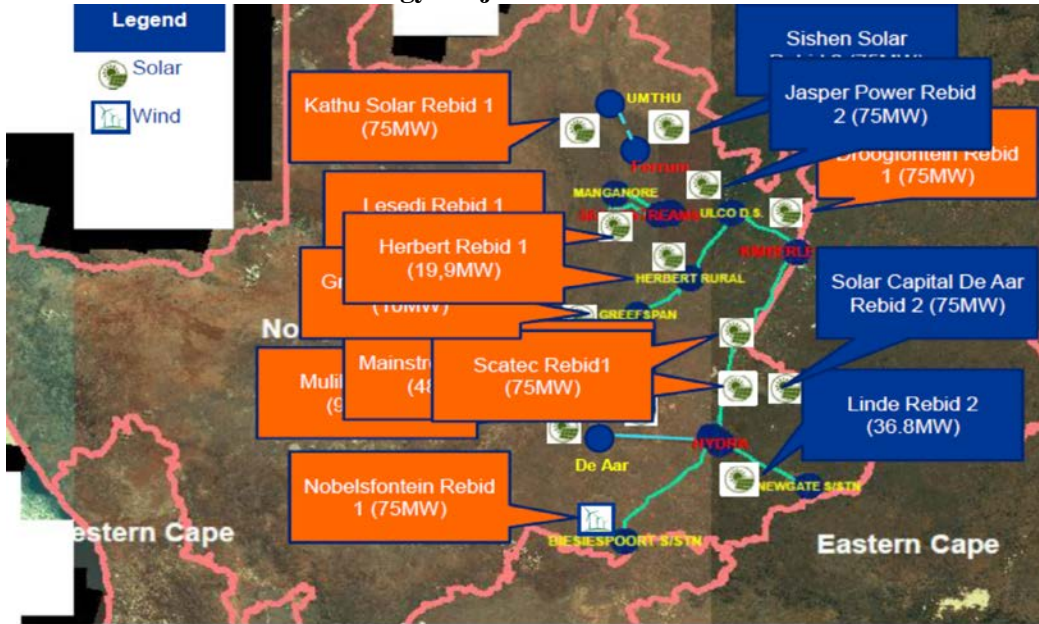
**PIXLEY PV SOLAR PREFERRED BIDS: 1ST WINDOW**

- The PV projects named,
- Mulilo Renewable Energy Solar PV De Aar (9.65 MW)
- Greefspan PV power plant (10 MW)
- Herbert PV power plant (19.9 MW),
- Mulilo Renewable Energy solar PV Prieska (19.93 MW),
- De Aar Solar PV (48.25 MW),
- Kalkbult project (72.5 MW),
- Solar Capital De Aar (75 MW).

**Pixley pv solar preferred bids: 2nd WINDOW**

- The PV projects named,
- Solar Capital De Aar 3, 75.0 mw
- Linde 36.8 mw
- Bird’s eye view of the District At the same time the Department of Energy (DoE) released the updated Request for Proposals (RFP), which re-issues the tender conditions for the third bidding round scheduled for 19 August 2013The De Aar farm will have over 1,000,000 solar panels. This is only the initial phase of one of the worlds largest solar farms that will total 4,000,000 panels upon completion. This 75MW farm alone will generate enough electricity to power approximately 14,000 South African homes every year.

**FIGURE 15: Solar energy Project**



## SCATEC SOLAR

Activities for the construction of the 75 MW Kalkbult Solar PV Plant in the Northern Cape Province in South Africa are progressing according to the ambitious plans established by the project which was authorized in the first phase of the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme. Civil works, cabling, mounting of substructures and modules, precise logistics and electrical works could not be possible without the full support of very professional partners and their employees, most of which have been recruited from the local community.

The project has high focus on health and safety as well as on the strict environmental requirements set forth by the South African government. The Commercial Operation Date is planned for January 1st 2014.

## SHALE GAS EXPLORATION (FRACKING)

### INTRODUCTION

Hydraulic fracturing, or fracking, is the controversial technology used for the extraction of unconventional gas, such as shale gas. Hydraulic fracturing, also known as “fracking,” is the process of injecting a mixture of water, chemicals, and sand underground to create fractures, through which natural gas can flow for collection. The technique involves a vertical well that is drilled to a depth of between 2000 m and 6000 m, after which the drilling bore turns to drill horizontally for a few thousand meters. A mixture of 99%-99.5% water and sand, along with 0.5% - 1% chemicals are pumped under high pressure into the well.

This process fractures the shale rock layer, releasing the gas trapped between rock particles. In support of Shell’s application for shale gas exploration licences across the Karoo Region, Shell has committed to identify, assess and manage the associated groundwater issues related to the Karoo Gas Exploration Project. This Stage 1 Project was undertaken by a consortium of hydrogeologists led by SRK Consulting South Africa and covers a desk study and workshop to identify and agree on key groundwater attributes and their ranking and weighting in terms of significance to Karoo Aquifers.

### Investigative Approach

This **Stage 1 Project** was motivated by:

- The need to obtain a full understanding of the hydrogeology of the exploration precincts and surrounds;
- The reliance of communities in the Karoo on groundwater for domestic, stock watering and irrigation use;
- The ecological sensitivity of the Karoo region;
- The need to minimise environmental impacts of exploration;
- The presence of major and sole source aquifers;
- The need to have a defensible strategy to inform selection of exploration drill sites;
- The intense public interest in shale gas exploration; and
- The need to establish an interactive database with baseline data.

To achieve these objectives, a multi-phased approach is planned, the first of which uses a consortium of local specialists, totalling over 250 years of joint experience and each individually with over 10 years of experience in Karoo groundwater resources management (see Table 1 below) to map the key groundwater attributes in the Karoo area.

This approach was followed so that the output could be technically defensible and sufficiently robust to withstand peer review and public scrutiny. SRK was chosen to lead this consortium because of their track record in managing similar technical teams

## **Consideration Zones**

Some of the criteria do not have fixed boundaries and may have zones of influence extending beyond their mapped positions (e.g. dolerite intrusions) or coordinates (e.g. boreholes). To accommodate such variation the concept of consideration zones was derived. These zones were agreed during the workshop and do not represent exclusion zones, but rather areas where groundwater is considered to be more significant. Therefore, more detailed assessment of these zones will be required should any operations be conducted in or near them.

**The following preliminary conclusions can be drawn at this interim stage in the project:**

- Ten key factors contribute to characterising groundwater attributes of Karoo Aquifers, the most important being depth to water level, groundwater quality, presence of dolerite intrusions and aquifer yield. These four factors together make up 60 per cent of the median weighting derived at the workshop;
- Aquifer yield, groundwater quality and recharge generally increase/improve from west to east and from south to north in the Eastern Precinct;
- The weighting of significant attributes and ground-truthing will be used in the next stage of the project to produce further groundwater maps to inform exploration activities;
- Consideration zones of varying widths have been assigned to features such as dykes and boreholes to reflect the potential importance of their zones of influence;
- The shallow (<300 m depth) aquifer is well understood and documented but some ground-truthing will be required, in the form of a series of borehole surveys, to fill in gaps and update the attributes maps;
- The deeper geological/hydrogeological model is less well understood and further work, such as land and airborne geophysics and exploration drilling, would be required to obtain a better understanding of this environment.

## **BENEFITS**

The key benefits of this Stage 1 Project are:

- Provides a comprehensive, versatile and interactive database;
- Builds on the EMP;
- Adds a meaningful new dimension to the literature available in the public domain on Karoo Aquifers, endorsed by a group of key hydrogeologists;
- Will assist in informing exploration activities;
- Provides evidence of Shell's commitment to an environmentally responsible approach to shale gas exploration;
- Provides guidance at a broad planning scale for the feasibility of groundwater exploitation (brackish/saline groundwater can be used by Shell, i.e. non-competing with local use).

## . SQUARE KILOMETRE ARRAY (SKA)

**FIGURE 16: SKA Telescope**



The Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Telescope is an international initiative by the International Square Kilometre Array Committee that sought to establish a fourth site that will be situated in the Southern Hemisphere.

SKA pushes technology and science boundaries. Flagship mega-projects attract young people into science, technology and engineering – and keep them there. MeerKAT is already developing a critical mass of young people with very high-level skills in next generation generic technologies – already playing a leading role in very high-powered SKA consortium. SKA will greatly strengthen that and will attract world's leading scientists and engineers to SA and to work with SA researchers, universities and companies. Over time, technology spin-offs – many examples

### **Local benefits**

- SKA infrastructure
- Creation of local jobs
- Increase in hospitality and tourism opportunities
- Entrepreneurship
- Business development

## **SOCIO- ECONOMIC BENEFITS**

- Infrastructure to a value of R185 million delivered by the Northern Cape and SKA SA over the period Nov 2007 to Aug 2009. All contracts specify 80% local labour and preference given to NC contractors
- 618 local jobs (50 female, 335 male, 232 youth, 1 disabled)
- Total contribution to jobs: R8,1 million
- Total contribution to BEE: R4,9 million
- Total local contribution: R13 million
- Local business and hospitality industry has experienced 30-50 % increase in turnover during 2008/09
- Property market increased (longer-term contractors purchasing houses and short-term contractors leasing houses)

## **MEERKAT RADIO TELESCOPE**

**FIGURE 17:Radio Telescope**



KAT 7 was the engineering prototype for the design of MeerKAT. MeerKAT dish design changed from 12m centre fed dish to Offset Gregorian dish. It consist of 64 dishes and will be incorporated into SKAP1 (250 dish array)

This phase of the project includes the design and delivery of the dish & its subsystems and the associated infrastructure.

### **Design philosophy**

Large portion of infrastructure will already be available for SKA Phase I (2013) - bulk infrastructure for MeerKAT has capacity to support SKA Phase I and on-site equipment and reticulation can be extended at a marginal cost.

### **Scope of Work for MeerKAT**

- Construction of 35km new internal road network on site (gravel road and farm roads)
- Establishment of two construction camps for contractors.
- All-weather landing strip on site. Electrical and fibre ducting reticulation from Site Complex to MeerKAT dishes
- Construction of the Karoo Array Processor building (RFI-shielded bunker)
- Power Facility including Rotary UPS, Switchgear and Transformers
- 64 Antenna Foundations
- KAT 7 and MeerKAT Local Area Network
- Building Management System
- Upgrade to Karoo substation and switchover of power line from 22kV to 33kV
- New workshops and offices at Klerefontein
- Trunked communication network

### **BENEFITS OF THE DISTRICT**

- Tourism increase expected (~500/yr to > 10,000/yr in 10 years) => large increase in jobs for hospitality workers, shop workers, service sector employees, tour guides. Entrepreneurial opportunities expected to increase steadily.
- Renewable energy opportunities possible: PV / solar thermal power
- EPWP – maintenance of provincial road to site
- Economic Development/EPWP collaboration for project to remove invasive trees on site – biofuel project?
- Water Affairs – Water Licenses
- Mineral Resources – Mineral permits / licenses
- Environmental Affairs – EIA approvals, Waste Management licenses for MeerKAT
- Local Government and local authorities – job creation; skills development training, rezoning
- Northern Cape Department of Roads – tarring provincial road to site and upgrading of detour road. Ongoing maintenance of gravel road (EPWP?)
- Water Affairs – Water Use licenses & detailed geo-hydrological studies
- Environmental Affairs – EIAs, waste management licenses
- Economic Development & Tourism – Visitor’s Centre, tourism strategy; EPWP bio-fuel project
- Mineral Resources – mineral licenses
- Local Government and local authorities – job creation; skills development training, rezoning, support to local authorities
- Local Government – assessment of existing bulk infrastructure in local towns (power, water, sewerage) – plans and funding needs to be put in place to upgrade bulk infrastructure to deal with influx of people
- Welfare – ongoing programmes on alcohol abuse; alcohol foetal syndrome; entrepreneurship, life skills in local community
- Eskom – construction of new 132kV power line to site – Eskom Brackenfell region currently working on this

### **REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLANS**

Development impact must be promoted on a regional level and not on a local level. Therefore, the regional development plan of the project must address cross-border development (interprovincial planning); linkages between town and country and linkages between different sectors (transport, tourism, agriculture, training. This should be led by the Northern Cape Government.



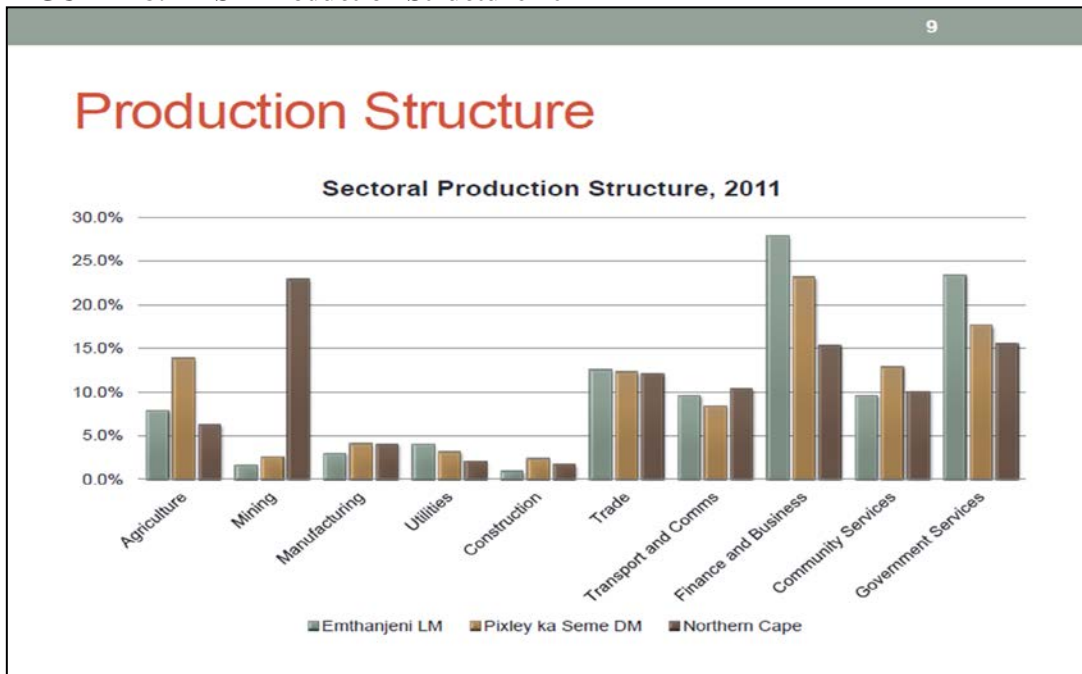
## CONCLUSION

There are a number of initiatives happening independently and new initiatives that need to be planned. There is a need to bring all initiatives together. A regional development plan is required to have an integrated planning approach for all sectors. There is a need for the Northern Cape Government to support various initiatives in order to create an enabling environment for MeerKAT and the SKA. Opportunity for private sector involvement through corporate social investment programmes to assist with social upliftment programmes in the area

## SECTOR PROFILE

The economy of the district is diversified with the largest GDP contributors being the financial and business services sector (22.5%) as well as the government services sector (12.9%). The district has a larger GDP contribution than the province in terms of the manufacturing, trade, financial and business services, transport and communication, construction as well as electricity and water sectors. Agriculture has a very small GDP contribution only 2.7%.

**FIGURE 18: PKSD Production Structure 2011**



**Table 25: PKSD Economic Sectors 2011**

Sector	Northern Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
Government Services	13.1%	12.9%
Community and Social Services	8.7%	5.6%
Finance and Business Services	12.8%	22.5%
Transport and Communication	10.7%	11.3%
Trade and Accommodation	12.9%	15.4%
Construction	1.4%	3.3%
Electricity and water	2.0%	2.3%
Manufacturing	3.3%	17.4%
Mining	28.4%	6.8%
Agriculture	6.7%	2.7%

Source: Quantec

The sector profile analysis identifies a number of challenges that include:

- Creation of a growing and sustainable economy.
- Creating access to quality work and poverty alleviation
- Building competitive clusters
- Skills development
- Creating an enabling environment for Enterprise development (focussing on manufacturing)
- Commitment of stakeholders
- Research and Development Institute.
- Attracting FDI

The opportunities identified are

- Maximising the beneficiation and value addition of the natural resource in mining and agriculture.
- Vast and under utilized areas of land.
- Existing infrastructure – De Aar railway: Transport network.
- Establishment of SMME's and BBBEE's.

### **Comparative and Competitive Advantages**

Pixley ka Seme should build its economy on its comparative advantages in niche areas with real potential. These need be developed into a competitive advantage through a skills mix that would ensure innovation. An example applicable to the Pixley ka Seme district is the abundance of the semi-precious stone tiger's eye in the district. The presence of the mineral provides a unique comparative advantage to the district and is available for the value-adding process but this has not occurred. To develop the competitive advantage globally with respect to tiger's eye requires interventions that would enable maximizing the resident potential regarding the building blocks for competitive advantage. An important intervention would be the establishment of a manufacturing cluster to facilitate and take forward the manufacturing opportunities identified in this strategy.

### **Human development index**

The human development index measures the average achievements in a country in three basic dimensions of human development viz. longevity, knowledge and a decent standard of living. It is a composite index that contains three variables: life expectancy, educational attainment (adult literacy and combined primary, secondary and tertiary enrolment) and real GDP per capita. (South Africa Human Development Report 2000). The closer the index gets to 1,0, the higher the level of "living condition".



The average HDI for the province is 0,52, with the Kimberley and the Namaqua magisterial districts having the highest at 0.63 and the Barkley West magisterial district having the lowest at 0,44.

The average HDI for the district is 0,49 with De Aar having the highest at 0,58 and Noupoort having the lowest 0,45. Despite the advances made regarding the delivery of basic services, the HDI has largely been stagnant.

**Table 26: Human Development indices for the magisterial districts in the Pixley ka Seme**

	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004
Carnarvon	0,47	0,48	0,49	0,49	0,49	0,49
Prieska	0,53	0,54	0,55	0,55	0,54	0,54
Britstown	0,49	0,50	0,51	0,51	0,50	0,50
Colesberg	0,48	0,48	0,50	0,50	0,49	0,48
De Aar	0,57	0,58	0,59	0,59	0,58	0,58
Hanover	0,45	0,45	0,47	0,47	0,46	0,46
Hopetown	0,49	0,50	0,51	0,51	0,50	0,50
Noupoort	0,44	0,45	0,47	0,46	0,46	0,45
Philipstown	0,48	0,49	0,50	0,50	0,49	0,49
Richmond	0,47	0,47	0,49	0,48	0,48	0,48
Hay	0,48	0,49	0,50	0,50	0,49	0,49
Victoria-West	0,50	0,51	0,53	0,52	0,52	0,52

**Pixley growth and Development Strategies**

**2.21 Occupational Classification**

The table below indicates that most people in the district work in elementary occupations followed by agriculture and craft related occupations. The existing status quo clearly indicates that there is shortage of professionals in the district.

**Table 27: Occupational Classification**

Occupation	No. of People	%
Senior Management	947	2.4
Professional	2 519	6.3
Technical	1 360	3.4
Clerks	2 135	5.3
Service Related	3 184	8
Agricultural Related Skilled	4 599	11.6
Crafts and Trade	3 604	9
Plant Machines	1 338	3.4
Elementary	20 124	50.6
Totals	<b>39 810</b>	<b>100</b>

*Source: PKS IDP 2012/13*

**2.22 Housing**

**2.22.1 Housing Accreditation**

Once again, we are really pleased to mention in this IDP that the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality has been accredited levels 1 and 2 to perform housing delivery functions under the municipal housing

accreditation programme. As this mandate and obligation was bestowed to us by the national government, the role of the district municipality will change dramatically. Where the role was limited to providing support to local municipalities and delivery of bulk services to our people, the district municipality as an organ of state will now be providing houses to the communities in its region.

- **Functions**

**The following functions will be performed by the District Municipality:**

- Provide services, i.e. water, sanitation, electricity, roads and storm water drainage;
- Identify and designate land for housing development in urban and rural areas;
- Promote the resolution of housing conflicts arising in the housing development process;
- Provide bulk engineering services;
- Plan and manage land use and development (amenities, project values and functionality);
- Prepare a housing policy for the district;
- Prepare local housing sector plans;
- Act as developers according to preferential procurement policy;
- Allocation of sites to beneficiaries; and
- Assist in the completion of subsidy application forms

To face up to this challenge, a major institutional change was needed. A housing unit that will facilitate this change was established in 2007. The unit is currently being populated to enhance the units capacity in providing housing services and address all housing problems some of which are presented in the following sections and in the consolidated housing plan. The unit is currently reviewing the integrated housing plan that was compiled in 2007/8 financial year which contains a housing delivery tool for the region.

### **2.22.2 Integrated Housing Plan.**

**The integrated housing plan identifies the following issues:**

- Very few people in the district (9% of the total population) can participate in bonded housing
- High demand of housing need
- Backlog in housing provision
- Low pace of housing delivery in the region
- A huge shortage of land/sites for housing
- Informal dwellings
- Infrastructure backlog which affect housing delivery

### **2.22.2 Housing Profile**

. All local municipalities are composed of various residential components varying from formal housing units to informal dwelling units as indicated in the table above. Within the District, 82, 8% of households live in formal housing, 10,8% in informal housing and only 2% in traditional houses. Households in the whole PKSD is about 49 193 in respect to the Census 2011, where the average Household Size is about 3.70%, female headed households is about 36.90%, formal dwellings at 86.30% and the housing owned is at 52.00%

**Table 28: Housing Type by Local Municipality**

MUNICIPALITIES	FORMAL (%)		INFORMAL		TRADITIONAL		NONE / HOMELESS		OTHER		TOTAL
	2001	2011	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	
Emthanjeni	90.9	95.4	806	9.4	68	0.8			78	1	8 497
Kareeberg	94.5	89.6	145	5.2	54	2	0	0	43	1.5	2 765
Thembelihle	77.2	77.5	379	13.4	24	0.8	1	0.03	22	0.8	2 835
Siyathemba	89.0	88.6	571	12.6	99	2.2	0	0	71	1.6	4 542
Renosterberg	91.1	94.7	105	4.4	122	5.1	0	0	170	7.2	2 375
Ubuntu	93.0	87.6	417	10	48	1.1	1	0.02	50	2	4 232
Siyancuma	74.4	73.0	872	12.4	150	2.1	0	0	1209	17.2	7 025
Umsobomvu	81.8	88.2	777	14.3	136	2.5	2	0.04	70	1.3	5 443
<b>District (Total)</b>	<b>84.7</b>	<b>86.3</b>	<b>4 072</b>	<b>10.8</b>	<b>701</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>0.01</b>	<b>1 713</b>	<b>4.5</b>	<b>37 714</b>

*Source: Statistics South Africa 2011*

### 2.22.3 Home ownership

Home ownership among poor households in Siyancuma is much low (39.6% vs. 62% non-poor households owning their homes in 2011 according to the Census. Thembelihle Municipality also shows a low rate of house ownership (51.4%) amongst the poor compared to the Pixley Ka Seme average of 52%.

**Table 29: House ownership per municipality by household income**

Municipality	Household ownership and HH income R0-18000 pa	Household ownership and HH income R18000 + pa
Emthanjeni	60.3%	76%
Kareeberg	51.7%	67%
Renosterberg	52.3%	65%
Siyancuma	39.6%	72%
Siyathemba	54.3%	68%
Thembelihle	51.4%	73%
Ubuntu	54.7%	62%
Umsobomvu	52.7%	75%
<b>Pixley Ka Seme Total</b>	<b>52.0%</b>	<b>72%</b>
Northern Cape Total	55.1%	68%

*Source: Statistics South Africa 2011 and Community survey 2007:2011& community survey 2007*

Home ownership is high in Emthanjeni and lowest in Siyancuma municipal area. The average dwelling ownership rate in the Pixley Ka Seme is 52.0% households owning their homes. According to community survey 2007, only 7.7% are owned but mortgaged and approximately 16% of the households either rent their accommodation or received some form of rent-free occupation.

**Table 30: Dwelling ownership**

Municipality	Own dwelling	Not own dwelling	Institution/house
Emthanjeni	60.3%	26%	0.4%
Kareeberg	51.7%	36%	0.4%
Renosterberg	52.3%	46%	0.2%
Siyancuma	39.6%	47%	0.3%
Siyathemba	54.3%	39%	0.4%
Thembelihle	51.4%	20%	0.4%
Ubuntu	54.7%	55%	0.6%
Umsobomvu	52.7%	24%	0.2%
<b>PIXLEY KA SEME</b>	<b>52.0%</b>	<b>37%</b>	<b>0.4%</b>

*Source: Statistics South Africa 2011 and Community survey 2007*

### 2.22.4 Housing backlogs

All local municipalities experienced a housing shortage. The existing housing backlogs in the region during 2013/2014 financial years are indicated in the table below.

**Table 31: Housing Backlog as at December 2011by Local Municipality**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Area</b>	<b>Houses</b>	<b>Total</b>
Emthanjeni	De Aar	61	
	Hanover	45	
	Britstown		
Kareeberg	Carnarvon	650	
	Van Wyksvlei	100	
	Vosburg	100	
			850
Thembelihle	Hopetown		
	Strydenburg		
Siyathemba	Zwelitsha		
	Rainbow		
	Vaalblok		
	Die gat		
Renosterberg	Plakkerskamp		
	Uitsig		
	Rivonia		
	Old Location		
	Sewendelaan		
	Riemvasmaak		
	Philipvale		
	Philipstown	66	
Ubuntu	Victoria - West		
	Richmond Farms		
	Hutchinson		
	Loxton		
Siyancuma	Old Dalton Plakkers		
	New Dalton Plakkers		
	Akkerlaan Plakkers		
	Midblock		
	Infills		
	Skerpioenlaan Plakkers		
	Phomolong Plakkers		
	Infills		
	New area around new school		
	New area around Reservoirs		
	New area around Bosman Canal		
	Bongani	80	

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Area</b>	<b>Houses</b>	<b>Total</b>
	Campbell		
	Close to school in Mathlomola		
	Between Mathlomola and Vaalblok		
	In Rainbow Valley		
	Schmidtsdrift		
Umsobomvu	Toilet City		
	Philipstown Road		
	Wimpy Plakkers		
	Operation Vula		
	Noupoort	56	
	Novelspond		
<b>District Total</b>			

Source: *Statistics South Africa: 2011*

## Land needed for new housing stock 2002-2015

- **Identified Issues**

The following issues were identified during the IDP representative forum meeting

- All local municipalities need additional sites for housing development
- Serviced residential sites are also needed for housing development
- New houses are needed to accommodate the present households who are living in informal dwellings and those that will be added to the present households
- Upgrade the existing housing units that are not in good conditions
- The District Municipality to fast track land availability and transfer of land for housing development.

All local municipalities need additional land to plan for those residing in informal dwelling units. The residential land needed in the whole district for the projected period is indicated in the table below:

*Table 32: Land needed for new housing stock by Local Municipality*

Municipality	Current Population 2011	Projected Population without migration 2015	Change	Per Capita Residential Land use (m2)	Additional Land Requirements	
					m2	ha
Emthanjeni	42356	44 116	4 961	133.3	660 301	66.1
Kareeberg	11673	12 927	1 454	133.3	193 818	19.4
Thembelihle	15701	14 940	1 680	133.3	223 944	22.4
Siyathemba	21591	21 804	2 452	133.3	326 852	32.7
Renosterberg	10978	10 625	1 195	133.3	159 294	15.9
Ubuntu	18601	22 209	2 497	133.3	332 850	33.3
Siyancuma	37076	38 323	4 305	133.3	573 857	57.4
Umsobomvu	28376	28 625	3 219	133.3	792 000	79.2
<b>District (Total)</b>	<b>186351</b>	<b>193 569</b>	<b>21 763</b>	<b>133.3</b>	<b>3 263 916</b>	<b>100</b>

Source: StatsSA 2011

- **Identified Issues**

The following issues were highlighted in the IDP of local municipalities regarding housing delivery:

- Lack of funding for housing development
- Access to land
- Construction of more RDP houses
- Provision of services to new residential sites
- Fast tracking land availability and transfer of land
- Slow delivery of housing development
- Lack of capacity at local municipal level
- Implementation of Ouboks 2220 housing units in Colesberg is slow due to e.g. financial constraints.
- All Local Municipalities experienced a housing shortage.
- Low pace of housing delivery .
- About 82.89% of households are formal brick structure of houses, which is higher than in the province (75.3%).
- Informal settlement dwellers represent 10.8% of the households.

## **2.23 Land Ownership**

The form of land ownership in South Africa has been classified in the White Paper on Land Policy into four categories:

- ❖ Public land
- ❖ State land
- ❖ Commonage land
- ❖ Private land

### **Public Land**

Public land includes land held by provincial and national governments as well as land owned by local authorities and land belonging to parastatals or other enterprises that are wholly owned by government.

### **State Land**

State land is land that is held by national and provincial governments but exclude local authority and parastatal land. It also excludes former South African Development Trust (SADT) land and land allocated to communities and individuals in the former homeland and coloured reserves.

The area that falls under this category is currently estimated at 14 million hectares which is about 12 % of the total land area of South Africa. Up until now about a quarter of this land is used for state and domestic purposes. Some of the lands are also used for parks, conservation, forestry and transport.

### **Commonage Land**

Commonage land is public land which is owned by the municipality or local authority and to which all the residents of a town have rights. On the account on how commonages are acquired and used by the community, the Department of Land Affairs identified them as a key element of land reform in South Africa primarily because they are public land which does not need to be acquired. However there are quite a number of problems regarding the manner in which Municipal Commonage are granted and used by the community. It has been noted in the White Paper that as municipalities depend on the revenue generated by leasing the commonage, a practise has now been developed whereby the land is auctioned and leased to the highest bidder at market rates for private use. This in essence implies that the use of commonage for charitable purposes is being usurped and the poor residents will not be able to obtain any access to the commonage as the practice clearly excludes them.

### **Private Land**

Private land is land that is neither public nor commonage. It is a piece of privately owned land created from racially based land policies in the past era. Very unfortunately a significant proportion of South Africa's land that falls under this category of land ownership is in the hands of the white population. The main constraints of this kind of land ownership is that it strongly reflects the political and economic conditions of the past era which is one of the main causes of insecurity, landlessness and poverty amongst black people and also a cause of inefficient land administration and land use in South Africa.

Because of the above mentioned development scenario, the fundamental objective of the national land policy that was developed by the Department of Land Affairs is to deal with among others, the inequitable distribution of land ownership in South Africa as a whole. Within the constitutional principles and legal framework that are enshrined in the Land Policy, the implementation of land reform programmes has been construed by most interested parties as a just policy or programme that is meant to build reconciliation, stability, economic growth and development of household welfare in a sustainable basis.

In the Pixley District the current land ownership is the same as those discussed above. The bulk (or almost all) of agriculturally active land is owned by white population. The national and provincial



governments as well as the local authorities own just a handful of land, most of which are designated for and are being put to some particular public uses. A ground survey revealed that most of the public/ state and municipal commonage lands that exist in the district are derelict land and therefore not suitable for either livestock or crop farming. The survey on the other hand also revealed that quite a lot of private land is either not well utilized or being left idle for a long period of time. This is really a great waste of resources which needs to be rectified urgently.

It is important to note here, that if issues like these local authorities must now consider seriously and try to resolve through application of appropriate land reform programmes when IDP is being implemented. This is to ensure for instance, that issues like landlessness which is one of the main causes of poverty in the district as indicated earlier is well addressed.

### **Land and Land Reform**

Most of the local IDP's identified the following issues regarding land and land reform:

- The need for more commonage
- Councils need to review their leasehold agreements
- Make more land available to emerging farmers
- Community project for food security is also on the increase and more land is needed for this purpose
- Lack of proper management of commonage
- Lack of grazing land for emerging farmers
- Lack of full ownership of properties

From the above it is hoped that municipalities will then be able to do the following during the implementation of their IDP's:

- Compilation of a land audit.
- Identify all obstacles that inhibit a smooth land reform process.
- Implement a land reform programme that shall meet the needs and/ or expectations of all citizens of the district.

### **Land Audit**

As there is a need to make more land available for all kinds of economic activities, the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality in collaboration with the Department of Land Reform and Rural Development has compiled a land audit for urban areas in the district. The outcome of the land audit is envisaged to enable the district and local municipalities to make a meaningful contribution to the development of the region by both giving the previously disadvantaged households the opportunity to engage in productive land use and by increasing employment opportunities through encouraging greater investment.

#### **• Deliverables**

#### **Deliverables of the project includes:**

- Identified provincially, nationally and local government owned land
- Identified parastatal owned land
- Identified privately owned land
- Land use zoning in urban areas
- Identified land acquisition opportunities

## 2.24 Health & hygiene

According to health statistics for the period 2000 to 2002 the following incidence rates is relevant to children under 5 years old.

**Table 33: Incidence rates of children under 5 years old**

Indicator	Pixley	NC
	2002	2002
Curative case load	40.9	43.9
Diarrhoea incidence	16.0	11.3
Lower respiratory infection incidence	24.7	17.1
Not gaining weight	5.5	4.7
Severe malnutrition	2.2	1.6
Weighing coverage (annualised)	100.9	73.5
Immunisation coverage under 1 year (Annualised)	84.7	83.7

*Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2011/16*

Malnutrition in the Northern Cape is of particular concern. The 1999 National Food Consumption survey put the incidence of stunting amongst Northern Cape children at 25% and this socio-economic analysis revealed that the Northern Cape and Free State had the greatest percentage of children with a protein intake less than half of the RDA. The Northern Cape also ranked among the lowest for mean carbohydrate intake, mean sugar intake and mean fat intake. Men and women in the Northern Cape are more likely to be underweight than their South African counterparts (12.3% for women and 22.7% for men). In terms of underweight for age, Pixley ka Seme appears to be better off than other districts of the Northern Cape.

A study (South Africa demographic and health survey) indicated that the children in Northern Cape are more likely than children from other provinces to receive all the basic immunisations. The immunisation coverage of the Pixley at 85% compares to the Northern Cape average (64%).

### HIV/AIDS and TB

The prevalence of TB, which is appreciably higher in the Northern Cape (360 per 100 000) than the national average (254 per 100 000), is expected to rise with the increase in HIV/AIDS prevalence. The cure rate in Pixley ka Seme of new TB cases is 62%.

The antenatal survey undertaken by the Department of Health shows an increase of HIV+ pregnant women in the Pixley ka Seme area, 5.7% that is slightly higher than the trend in the province, which showed a 4.65% increase.

**Table 34 : HIV/AIDS Infected population**

Year	Northern Cape	Pixley ka Seme DM
1995	8504	932
1998	26915	3023
2003	61106	7326
2008	75748	9127

*Source: PKS Socio-economic profile, 2008*

The Pixley ka Seme DM has a lower percentage HIV/AIDS infected population than in the province and in the country from 1995 to 2008. The rate of infections is however increasing with an average

annual HIV/AIDS infection growth rate in the district of 2%. This is much lower than the average annual HIV/AIDS infection growth rate in the province (4.1%) and the rest of the country (5%). The current (2008) total HIV/AIDS infected population in the region amounts 9,127.

In 2000 the average number of visits per person to Pixley clinics was 2.83, which is in line with the target set in the White Paper for 2000/2001. The target for 2007/2008 is 3.5 consultations per person yearly.

Hypertension and diabetes mellitus are the 2 most prevalent chronic diseases in Pixley ka Seme based on number of clinic visits.

### **Identified issues on HIV/AIDS**

The following issues were identified in local IDPs regarding the current status of HIV/AIDS in the district:

- Lack of sport and recreational centres
- Not well informed about HIV/AIDS
- Vulnerability
- Abuse and rape
- Department of Health to have more aftercare facilities in the region for patients
- Provide more support services to patients and terminally ill.
- High levels of domestic violence
- Unemployment under the youth
- Functional District Aids Council
- All relevant role-players to intensify their HIV/AIDS awareness programmes
- Increase of HIV infections amongst the youth

### **Health Facilities**

The sectoral approach that was adopted to analyse the present health facilities of the district revealed that National Government has adopted a primary health care strategy that includes making such service available within walking distance. The strategy also includes improvement in sanitation and drinking water supply, etc. Thus, the health care system that presently exist in the district is consists of:

- Provincial hospitals
- Provincial clinics
- Municipal health centres or clinics

The current statistical information on health care facilities shows that there are 33 health establishments in the district, of which 9 are fully fledged hospitals. They offer curative and preventative services and also antenatal and post-natal services. The information from various local IDP's indicated that the centres are very busy and that the quality of services is determined by the subsidy received annually from the province as well as the availability of medication. The current number of hospitals is insufficient to deal effectively with the primary health needs of the district. Two (2) or three (3) more hospitals are considered necessary to eradicate the backlog. With regard to clinics, the hospital authorities have indicated the existing facilities are adequate and there are plans to provide more clinics should they be required. The table and the map below shows the number of established health centres in the district.

**Apart from the established health centres listed below there are a few surgeries that also provide health care services in the district. Most of them are situated in De Aar. The information from local IDP's indicated that:**

- Many mobile clinics that usually operated in rural areas have been terminated.
- Access to health facilities for the farming communities is a major problem as they have to travel long distances for their primary health needs.

**Table 35: Distribution of health care facilities**

Municipality	Location	Health facility
Emthanjeni	Britstown	Britstown Clinic
		Britstown Mobile
	De Aar	De Aar CHC
		De Aar Clinic
		De Aar Hospital
		Montana Clinic
		Nonzwakazi Clinic
		Hanover
Kareeberg	Carnarvon	Carnarvon Clinic
	Swartkop	Swartkop Clinic
	Van Wyksvlei	Van Wyksvlei Clinic
		Van Wyksvlei Mobile
	Vosburg	Vosburg CHC
		Carnarvon Hospital
Renosterberg	Gariep	Keurtjiekloof Satellite clinic
	Petrusville	Petrusville Clinic
	Phillipstown	Phillipstown Clinic
Siyancuma	Bongani	Bongani Clinic
	Breipaal	Breipaal Clinic
	Campbell	Campbell Clinic
	Douglas	Douglas Clinic
		Douglas Hospital
		Douglas Mobile 1
		Douglas Mobile 2
	Griekwastad	Griekwastad CHC
		Griekwastad Mobile
		Kimberley
Plooyburg		Plooyburg Satellite clinic
	Schmidtsdrift	Schmidtsdrift Satellite clinic
Siyathemba	Marydale	Marydale Clinic
	Niekerkshoop	Niekerkshoop Clinic
	Prieska	Prieska Clinic
		Prieska Hospital
		Prieska Mobile
Thembelihle	Hopetown	Hopetown Clinic
		Hopetown Hospital
		Hopetown Mobile
	Orania	Orania Clinic
		Orania Hospital
	Strydenburg	Strydenburg Clinic
	Ubuntu	Loxton
Richmond		Richmond Clinic
		Richmond Hospital
Victoria West		Victoria West Clinic
		Victoria West Hospital

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Location</b>	<b>Health facility</b>
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	Colesberg Clinic
		Colesberg Hospital
	Kuyasa	Kuyasa Clinic
	Lowryville	Lowryville Clinic
	Norvalspont	Norvalspont Clinic
	Noupoort	Noupoort Clinic
		Noupoort Hospital

*Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2011/16*

### **Identified issues on health facilities**

**The following issues were identified in the IDP representative forum meeting:**

- Insufficient health facilities
- Public transport services for patients
- Availability of medical staff
- Aftercare facilities and support services to patients
- Rendering of 24 hour health services and emergency services to patients
- Hospice for terminally ill and street children
- Functional District Aids Council

## **2.25**

### **Safety and Security**

Even though crime in the region is very low if compared with other areas in South Africa, some issues were raised regarding safety and securities by Local municipalities and members of the IDP representative forum.

### **Identified issues**

**The issues that were identified by Local Municipalities and members of the IDP representative forum regarding safety and securities are as follows:**

- Police are not visible
- Police stations are not accessible to many people
- Shortage of police resources
- Not enough police stations
- Shortage of human resource in courts
- High levels of domestic violence and rape
- High level of unemployment
- Youth delinquency due to lack of recreation activities
- High levels of domestic violence
- Substance and alcohol abuse
- Theft and illegal activities
- Low crime rate, but high levels of drug and alcohol abuse with related family abuse occur in the region.

**Table 36: population by municipality living below the minimum living levels in the district.**

Local Municipality	Population	Population below MLL	% below MLL
Emthanjeni	35 438	18,418	51.97
Kareeberg	9 356	5,433	58.07
Renosterberg	9 091	5,616	61.77
Siyancuma	35 894	22,559	62.85
Siyathemba	17 497	9,374	53.58
Thembelihle	13,716	3,843	28.02
Ubuntu	16,480	10,787	65.46
Umsobomvu	23,747	20,400	85.91
<b>Total</b>	<b>164,412</b>	<b>98,064</b>	<b>59.65</b>

An average of 60% of the population in the district lives below the minimum living level (MLL). The highest percentage is found in the Umsobomvu municipal area, at 85 %, and the lowest at 28% in the Thembelihle municipal area. This represents 17,3% of the provincial population living below the MLL. The average monthly (individual) income for the district is approximately R740 which is less than the stipend received as a grant from social services departments.

### Indigence and household income

Household income is an important statistic, not only for the purposes of the indigent's policy, but it indicates the large number of families who depend on the equitable share.

Although Pixley ka Seme has an unemployment rate of only 28.3%(2011 census), household income levels are low. 64% of households have an income of R1 000 or less per month compared to the Northern Cape average of 54% of households below this level.

**Table 37: Household income per month and unemployment in 2007 census**

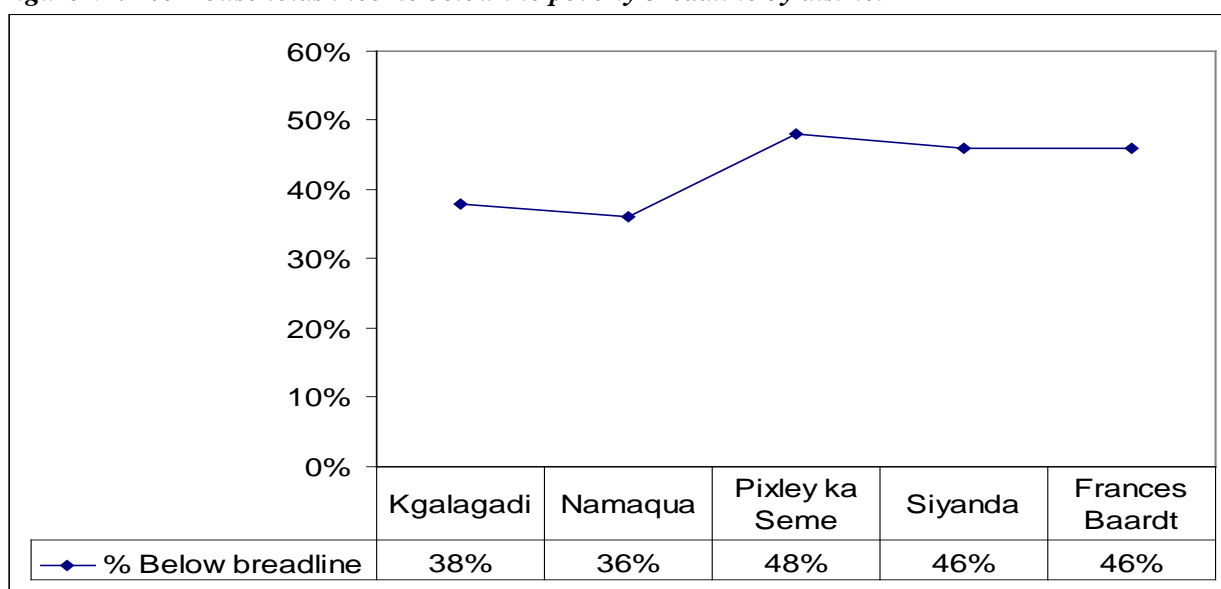
Municipality	R500 and below	R501-1000	R1001-1500	Above R1500
Emthanjeni	37%	17%	13%	34%
Kareeberg	45%	22%	11%	22%
NCDM 07	39%	27%	12%	22%
Renosterberg	49%	20%	10%	21%
Siyancuma	50%	19%	11%	20%
Siyathemba	40%	23%	13%	25%
Thembelihle	41%	22%	12%	25%
Ubuntu	44%	22%	12%	22%
Umsobomvu	53%	18%	11%	18%
<b>PIXLEY</b>	<b>44%</b>	<b>20%</b>	<b>12%</b>	<b>24%</b>
<b>Northern Cape</b>	<b>36%</b>	<b>18%</b>	<b>13%</b>	<b>34%</b>

Source: PkS IDP 2012/13

The chart indicates that Emthanjeni followed by Siyathemba had the largest percentage of households with household income of *more than* R1 000 in 2002. Umsobomvu, Siyancuma and Renosterberg appear to be the worst off. The decline of the railway industry has affected the region negatively.

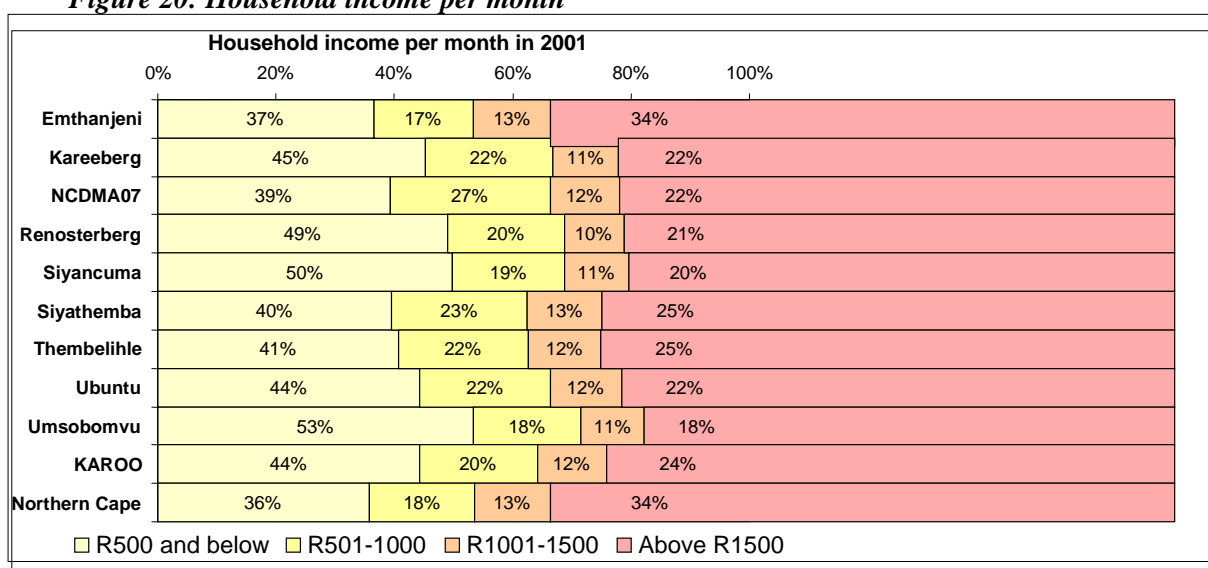
The figure below shows the percentage of household income below the poverty breadline of R800 in the province. The highest being Pixley ka Seme at 48% and the lowest being Namaqua at 36%.

Figure 19: % Households income below the poverty breadline by district



At present the national subsistence norm of R1 100 per household per month is used to define indigence. In the Pixley different Municipalities however apply different ranges of incomes as their cut-off limit for indigence. Most municipalities use the median of 2 old age pensions per household as the cut-off point to prevent the aged from being excluded as indigents. The indigence policy is funded from the equitable share.

Figure 20: Household income per month



Source: PKS IDP 2012/13

Household income, which was recorded by the Census in 1996, has been eroded by inflation. From income data obtained in the 1996 Census approximately 54 % of the people would qualify as indigent in Pixley ka Seme if the present (2007) national indigence level of R1 100 is deflated conservatively back to 2001 levels. An average inflation rate of 8 % was used in the calculation.

Ubuntu is the only municipality that has different cut off household income levels in the various towns of the municipality. Some municipalities also apply a stepped cut off level, which determines how much of a subsidy the household receives such as Siyancuma and Siyathemba.

**Table 37: Number of indigent households registered**

Town	Households 2001	Cut off household income pm register as indigent HH	Theoretical % of indigent HHs based on 1996 census	Theoretical number of indigent HHs based on 1996 census	Number of indigent HHs registered May 2002	% Registered
Emthanjeni excluding farms	7 532	<=R1100	45%	3 389	2 500	33%
Kareeberg excluding farms	1 863	<=R1240	58%	1 081	1 166	63%
Renosterberg excl farms	1 611	<=R1200	60%	967	800	50%
Siyancuma excl farms	4 860	<=R1200	61%	2 965	2 400	49%
Siyathemba excl farms	3 118	<R1500	60%	1 871	1 211	39%
Thembelihle excl farms	2 010	<=R1100	49%	985	750	37%
Ubuntu excl farms	2 636	Varies per town	51%	1 333	890	34%
Umsobomvu excl farms	4 477	<=850	54%	2 418	1 371	31%
Total Pixley (excluding farms and DMA)	28 107			15 007	11 088	39%

*Source: PkS IDP 2012/13*

**The above table indicates that only Kareeberg has more registered indigent households than that determined by the 1996 Census. This implies that:**

- Most of the municipalities have yet to register all possible indigent families; or
- That the economic situation in that municipality has improved since 1996; or
- That households did not report households income accurately in the 1996 census.

The equitable share has not been applied to the rural people living on farms. The indigent households declared in 2002 thus do not include households living on farms.

Most of the municipalities show smaller percentages of households that are declared indigent compared to the 1996 data. The process of registration is however still ongoing and some municipalities attribute the tardiness in registration to a lack of awareness of the qualification criteria and that the indigents have to re-register every year.



## Free Basic Electricity (FBE)

According to the table below, within the district, 63% of the total indigent households on average are provided with FBE. The local municipalities of Emthanjeni, Kareeberg and Ubuntu are providing this service to all of the total households. Renosterberg and Siyancuma have the lowest provision of FBE at 16% and 22% respectively.

**Table 38: Number of households provided with Free Basic Electricity (FBE)**

Municipality	Total HHs	Total indigent HHs	Beneficiaries				%
			Muni	Eskom	Non-gnd	Total	
Emthanjeni	8824	4587	4702	577		5279	115
Kareeberg	2398	1114	853	350		1203	108
Renosterberg	2532	1589		250		250	16
Siyancuma	9538	4757	700		337	1037	22
Siyathemba	4189	2122	700	300		1000	47
Thembelihle	3604	1591	200	386		586	37
Ubuntu	4176	1880	1464	1005	132	2601	138
Umsobomvu	6009	3981	1330	296		1626	41
Total	41270	21621	9949	3164	469	13582	63

*Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2007*

## Free Basic Water (FBW)

The table below shows that the average provision of FBW in the region to the total number of households is 70%. The average provision of FBW to the poor households in the district is 90%. Siyathemba and Thembelihle local municipalities have the lowest provision of this service at 24% to the total households.

**Table 39: Provision of Free Basic Water (FBW)**

Municipality	Households		Total Served			
	Total HHs	Total indigent HHs	Total HHs	%	Total indigent HHs	%
Emthanjeni	8824	4587	8793	100	4570	17
Kareeberg	2398	1114	1686	70	1114	100
Siyancuma	9538	4757	6377	67	4645	98
Siyathemba	4189	2122	996	24	949	45
Thembelihle	3604	1591	866	24	866	54
Ubuntu	4176	1880	2080	50	1819	97
Renosterberg	2532	1589	2378	94	1552	98
Umsobomvu	6009	3981	5606	93	3981	100
Total	41270	21621	28782	70	19496	90

*Source: PKS Socio-economic profile 2007*

## Identified issues

- Lack of implementation and verification of indigent registers and policies.
- Indigent and credit control policies are in place, but not necessarily being implemented.

## 2.30 Institutional & management

### 2.30.1 Indigents policy

All the local municipalities in Pixley ka Seme have indigents policies, which are applied. The national subsistence norm of R1 100 per household is used to define indigence. However, municipalities in the Pixley have applied a range of cut off incomes to qualify as 'indigent'. These range from R1 100 to R1 500 per month. Most of the municipalities use the median of two old age pensions per household as the cut-off point to prevent the aged from being excluded as indigents.

*Table 40 : Indigent policies*

Municipality	Indigents - Approved policy and subsidy applied
Emthanjeni	Yes
Kareeberg	Yes
Renosterberg	Yes
Siyancuma	Yes
Siyathemba	Yes
Thembelihle	Yes
Ubuntu	Yes
Umsobomvu	Yes
DMA07	No

*Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2011/16*

Indigent households apply to be registered at the municipal offices in person. This is an on-going process and indigents must reapply either on a bi-annual basis.

The process is ongoing and some of municipalities attribute the tardiness in registration to lack of awareness of qualification criteria and that indigents need to re-register regularly.

#### **Verification of household income and indigent status is done in several ways for example:**

- Councillors and ward committees verify information
- Visits are undertaken to the indigent's property to assess compliance to the criteria

As far as can be established from the available information, the equitable share has been applied to any rural people or persons living on farms, and all municipalities do have indigent policies that take households living in rural and farming areas into account.

Municipality	Qualifying criteria and Extent of subsidy	Application process & Number of HH registered	Process and verification	Validity period	Exclusions
Emthanjeni	R0-1100 HH income pm 100% subsidy to Max R95 on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water</li> <li>• Sewerage</li> <li>• Refuse</li> </ul>	HH must apply with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proof of income</li> <li>• Affidavit</li> </ul>	R10 per month must be paid and account is presented to pay point together with excess over R95	1 year, then reapply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More than 1 property owned</li> <li>• Names are supplied to the National Credit Bureau</li> </ul>
Kareeberg	R0-1240 HH income pm Carnarvon R120 pa rates & taxes R135.58 pm without electricity R211.38 with electricity Van Wyksvlei R76.98 R85 pa rates & taxes Vosburg R 90 rates & taxes R104.82 without electricity R184.08 with electricity All electricity is for 100 units	HH must apply 61% of households are registered as indigents.	Account is credited monthly. Arrear remains on account unless settled.	1 year	No exclusions or restrictions.
Renosterberg	R0-1200 HH income pm 100% subsidy to Max R86 on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water, Sewerage, and</li> <li>• Refuse</li> </ul>	HH must apply with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proof of income</li> <li>• Affidavit</li> </ul>	Account is credited monthly. Arrear remains on account unless settled.	1 year	None

Siyancuma	<R800 =100% subsidy to Max R86 <R1200 = 50% to Max R43	HH must apply with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proof of income</li> <li>• Affidavit</li> </ul>	Account must be presented at the pay point where difference between amount on account and subsidy	6 months then reapply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More than 1 property owned</li> <li>• Names are supplied to the National Credit Bureau</li> </ul>
Siyathemba	<R800=100% subsidy to Max R95 R801-1200 = 50% subsidy to Max R47.50 R1201-1500=25% subsidy to Max R23.75 Only applied to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water</li> <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Refuse</li> </ul> Not for rates and taxes.	HH must apply with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proof of income</li> <li>• Affidavit</li> </ul> Councillors verify information Committee approves the applications	Must present account for payment	Reviewed every 3 months Confirmed every 6 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More than 1 property owned</li> </ul>
Thembelihle	<R1100	HH must apply. Ward co-ordinators to assist households	Account credited monthly	6 months, then reapply	None
Ubuntu	Richmond = <R800 Victoria West = <R1200 Loxton = <R1100	HH must apply	Account credited monthly	6 months, then reapply	None
Umsobomvu		HH must apply with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proof of income</li> <li>• Affidavit</li> </ul> A HH survey is also undertaken to determine who will qualify	Municipality will pay the subsidy to the max amounts into the account of the HH. Excess must be paid by HH.	6 months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More than 1 property owned</li> <li>• Names are supplied to the National Credit Bureau</li> </ul>

Source:PKS IDP 2011/16

## 2.31 Physical Infrastructure

### 2.31.1 Water supply

#### The policy

**Basic water supply, also referred to as the RDP standard, is defined in the White Paper Water Supply and Sanitation, 1994, as:**

- The consumption of 25 litres per capita per day
- Access to water should be within 200 meters of each household
- Minimum flow at source of 10 litres per minute
- Water available on a regular daily basis
- 98% assurance of the supply
- System must be effectively operated and maintained
- Water must be safe to drink

#### Level of service

According to 2011 statistics the number of households with piped water inside their dwellings increased from 32.8% in 2001 to 47.0% in 2011 and only about 22.3% had access to one outside the house but on their sites. In the farms/ rural areas some households rely on natural water sources and boreholes as an alternative source. The boreholes are not sustainable and an alternative source will have to be found to supply water to these households.

**Table41: Source of Water per Local Municipality**

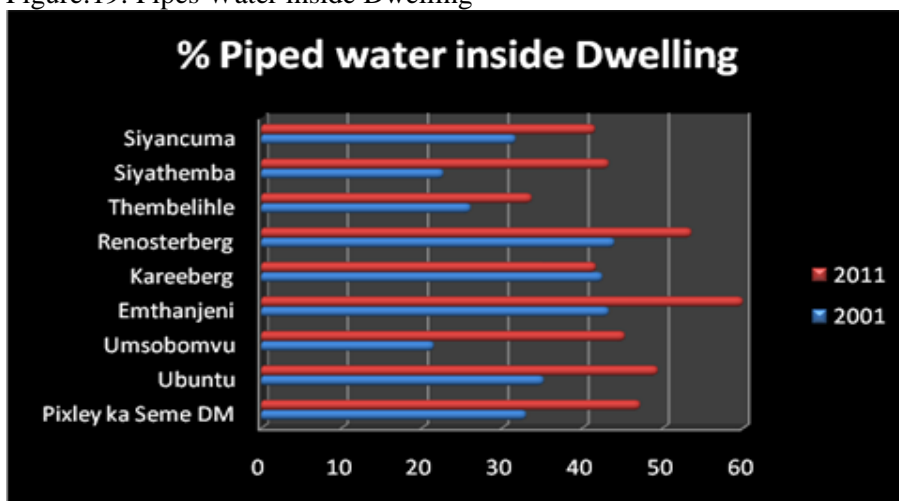
	Regional/local water scheme (operated by municipality or other water services provider)	Borehole	Spring	Rain water tank	Dam/pool/stagnant water	River/stream	Water vendor	Water tanker	Other	Grand Total
<b>Ubuntu</b>	3477	1215	36	24	210	6	3	117	30	5118
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	6546	831	12	12	147	39	33	153	57	7830
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	9183	1068	15	21	33	3	33	51	36	10443
<b>Kareeberg</b>	2298	774	3	18	24	-	9	81	12	3219
<b>Renosterberg</b>	2394	450	6	3	69	48	-	15	9	2994
<b>Thembelihle</b>	3117	831	3	6	21	114	3	42	3	4140
<b>Siyathembu</b>	4539	762	-	3	66	336	6	75	30	5817
<b>Siyancuma</b>	6348	1677	72	18	135	780	48	408	93	9579
<b>Grand Total</b>	37902	7608	147	105	705	1326	135	942	270	49140

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

Significant progress has been made regarding the provision of water but backlogs still exist. 95% of the households in the district are provided with free basic water (FBW) which is above the provincial average of 87, 7%. Only 3% of households had NO access to piped water 46% had piped water inside dwelling by

2011.Piped Water inside Dwelling is about 47.00%.The table below indicates the provisioning of FBW for all municipalities in the district:

Figure:19: Pipes Water inside Dwelling



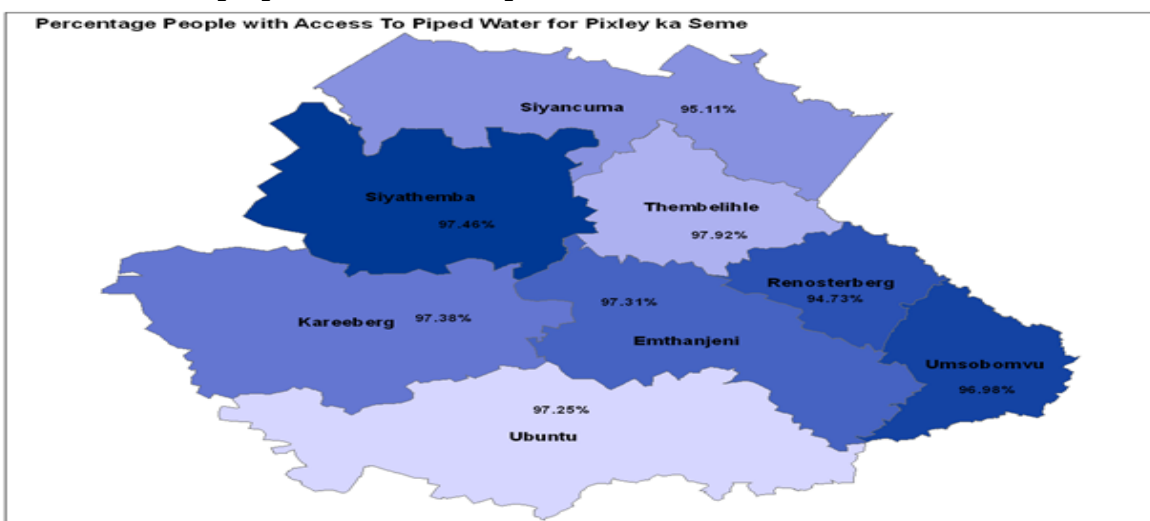
Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

Table 42: Access to water by households

	Piped (tap) water inside dwelling/institution	Piped (tap) water inside yard	Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200m from dwelling/institution	Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 200m and 500m from dwelling/institution	Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 500m and 1000m (1km) from dwelling/institution	Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 1000m (1km) from dwelling/institution	No access to piped (tap) water	Grand Total
<b>Ubuntu</b>	2526	2217	282	36	9	3	48	5121
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	3531	3702	381	108	6	6	93	7827
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	6249	3741	243	108	21	6	78	10446
<b>Kareeberg</b>	1338	1521	225	93	9	3	33	3222
<b>Renosterberg</b>	1599	1233	81	51	6	6	21	2997
<b>Thembelihle</b>	1389	1815	471	291	63	99	15	4143
<b>Siyathemba</b>	2508	2958	264	21	3	3	60	5817
<b>Siyancuma</b>	3957	3354	1227	483	213	18	327	9579
<b>Grand Total</b>	23097	20541	3174	1191	330	144	675	49152

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**FIGURE 20: % of people with Access to Pipe Water**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

Even though many urban residents in the region have access to water and improved sanitation system, some local municipalities are still having water and sanitation backlogs. Siyancuma local municipality has the highest backlog. The table below gives a reflection of the current situation in the region as at March 2011

**Table 43: Sanitation Backlogs March 2011**

Municipality	Water	
	Formal	Informal
Emthanjeni	2	0
Ubuntu	0	0
Umsobomvu	2	0
Renosterberg	3	0
Kareeberg	0	0
Siyathemba	31	0
Siyancuma	66	667
Thembelihle	0	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>104</b>	<b>667</b>

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**Critical problems regarding water supply:**

- Bulk water supply is expensive
- Bulk water supply is not sufficient, alternative source needs to be identified
- Additional water supply source required in some municipalities
- Upgrading of purification plants in all municipalities

## **Drinking Water Quality**

- The following information provides a summary of water quality in the Pixley ka Seme District between July 2012 and February 2013
- According to the information potable water in many municipal areas does not meet the South African Standards for drinking water.
  
- The following information provides an overview of water quality in local municipalities within the district. The report is generated automatically on a monthly basis and is based on data loaded onto (BDS) Blue Drop System.
- Pixley ka Seme District Municipality is making use of the BDS, which is a tool introduced by the Department of Water Affairs to monitor the status of drinking water in South Africa.
- The quality of water is measured against the South African Standards (SANS 241:2006), the standard specifies the quality of acceptable drinking water in terms of biological, physical and chemical in areas of concern.



### 2.31.1 Water and Sanitation Backlogs

Even though many urban residents in the region have access to water and improved sanitation system, some local municipalities are still having water and sanitation backlogs. Siyancuma local municipality has the highest backlog. The table below gives a reflection of the current situation in the region as at December 2013

**Table 44: Backlogs: Water and Sanitation 2013**

**The backlogs indicates everything below Basic standards**

MUNICIPALITY	WATER (HH) FORMAL	BUCKETS (HH) FORMAL	WATER INFORMAL	BUCKETS INFORMAL
EMTHANJENI	2	67	106	106
KAREEBERG	0	0	126	126
RENOSTERBERG	13	63	3	330
SIYANCUMA	66	137	667	1507
SIYATHEMBA	31	230	120	129
THEMBELIHLE	0	0	0	10
UBUNTU	0	381	0	0
UMSOBOMVU	2	6	2	205
PIXLEY TOTAL	114	884	1027	2413

Source: PKS Dept. of Infrastructure, Development and Housing: 2013

#### **Backlogs : Water and Sanitation**

- **CHALLENGES**
- LM's are having challenges with the eradication of the buckets.
- Dry sanitation was installed as a basic service but the communities are unhappy and resorts back to the buckets.
- Dry sanitation systems are problematic, it fills up quickly and is costly for the LM's to maintain.
- MIG only funds the basic services

#### **Progress on free basic water delivery**

As noted earlier, the introduction of free basic water for all residents has created a practical difficulty. Estimates for the Northern Cape proved that such a policy is almost impossible, because too much income is lost if the first 6 kilolitres of water is free to all, and the next category over 6 kiloliters must recover the lost income. This results in the next categories of step tariffs being unaffordably high. Should consumers resist high increases, water utilisation rates may drop which in turn results in the budgeted income targets not being reached.

It thus implies that the only manner in which 6 kiloliters of water can be provided free is by utilising the equitable share and only applying it to indigent residents. It should also be borne in mind that 6 kilolitres

is based on 8 persons per household, which is a higher than the average number of persons per household in the Northern Cape. It is also important for municipalities to pay attention to those households who do not yet have a basic supply. Implementation of programmes/ projects should be intensified to ensure that those households who do not yet have infrastructure to receive basic water are a priority.

### 2.31.2 Sanitation

#### The policy

According to the White Paper on Basic Household Sanitation, 2013, basic sanitation is defined as follows: “The minimum acceptable basic level of sanitation is:

- Appropriate health and hygiene awareness and behaviour;
- A system for disposing of human excreta, household waste water and refuse, which is acceptable and affordable to the users, safe, hygienic and easily accessible and which does not have an unacceptable impact on the environment; and
- A toilet facility for each household.

The Constitution defines basic sanitation as an on-site ventilated dry sanitation system, which is then referred to as the RDP standard against which levels of service are measured.

In the past, sanitation has been seen as a technical issue of toilet building, providing sewers, maintenance etc, whilst other aspects required by the White Paper have been ignored.

- **Identified issues**

The following with regard to sanitation were identified:

- Purification works in many local municipalities are too small and pumps need upgrading.
- Sewage pumps also need to be upgraded.
- Some oxidation dams are too small and need extensions.

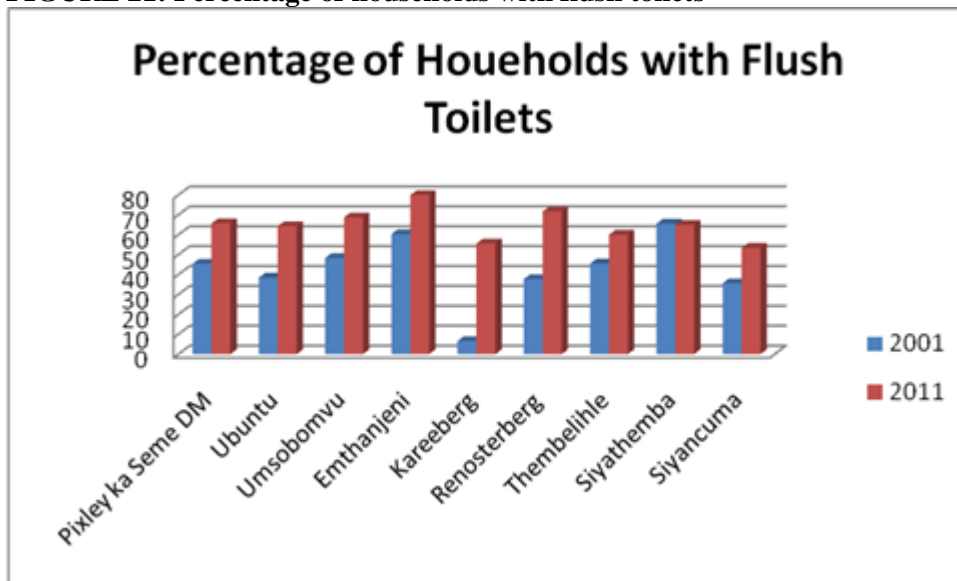
#### Level of service

**Table 45: Sanitation per Local Municipality**

	Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	Flush toilet (with septic tank)	Chemical toilet	Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	Pit toilet without ventilation	Bucket toilet
<b>Ubuntu</b>	3300	513	33	180	111	402
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	5388	414	222	852	75	117
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	8319	576	24	336	141	627
<b>Kareeberg</b>	1794	414	6	453	141	96
<b>Renosterberg</b>	2145	342	3	189	51	57
<b>Thembelihle</b>	2484	225	18	456	483	9
<b>Siyathemba</b>	3786	369	6	681	297	213
<b>Siyancuma</b>	5115	651	24	777	618	1152
<b>Total</b>	32331	3504	336	3924	1917	2673

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**FIGURE 21: Percentage of households with flush toilets**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

The table and the Map above shows that, Pixley Ka Seme has Flush Toilet Connected to Sewerage at 65.70% households, Emthanjeni being the highest with 85.06% and Thembelihle being the east with 64.41%. However it must be mentioned that a project is currently in progress through funds from the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality to replace buckets with the UDS system. The final 68 toilets have been finalised during this current financial year in Campbell. Full water borne sanitation is currently being constructed in Schmidtsdrift and the sanitation system will be completed with the completion of the house structures.

The current information on level of services indicates that there were 2413 households (57.0%) in Pixley that have sanitation facilities that were below RDP standards. This is worse than the overall Northern Cape situation. Because of the serious water shortages, most of the bucket toilets are being replaced with dry sanitation systems.

Sanitation level of supply to residential sites and non-residential sites has been extracted from the DWA database. Sanitation level of supply to residential occupied sites is detailed in the table. There are an estimated 4% of households with sanitation facilities below RDP standards. Bucket sanitation which has not been phased out in many towns mainly accounts for this situation.

The information in the table above indicates the following:

- Current water backlog figures are 114 and 1027 for formal and informal site respectively.
- Sanitation backlog figures are 884 and 2413 for formal and informal sites respectively.

All local municipalities are currently implementing sanitation projects to address the sanitation backlog.

The sanitation programme in the Northern Cape was initiated in 1996. During October 1996, Mvula Trust submitted a business plan for the implementation of a sanitation programme in the Northern Cape. This plan's focus was on creating awareness amongst communities about the importance of health and hygiene and the role that appropriate sanitation plays. The aim was to change the focus from a toilet-building programme to household demand programme where health and hygiene awareness was the key concern.

A sanitation programme which started in 1997/98 by DWA was primarily meant to address the sanitation backlog who at this stage was the only department addressing this need. Since then the Dept of Housing and Local Government has implemented a bucket eradication programme. DWA and Dept of Housing had reached an agreement that where Dept of Housing constructs toilets, DWA will undertake the awareness programme. This awareness entails health and hygiene issues and includes operation and maintenance of the toilet and the implication that the choice of toilet type has for the household.

### 2.31.5 Electricity

Recent information indicates that much of the district households 83% households have access to electricity for lighting (85.1%) against 75.1% in 2001. As much as the existing situation is encouraging, it is however very important to note that some households (17%) are still using candles and paraffin as alternative power sources for meeting their power needs.

#### ELECTICITY

The table below gives a comparative indication of the access to the source of energy in the district as captured during the 2011 censuses.

The proportion of households using electricity for lighting has increased from 57% in 1996 to 84% in 2011. South Africa aims to ensure that by 2030 at least 90% of people have access to grid electricity. Increase in both demand and tariffs may slow down this last effort.

Households using electricity as a source of energy for cooking increased from 47,5% in 1993 to 73,9% in Census 2011.

**Table 46: Energy for heating per Local Municipality**

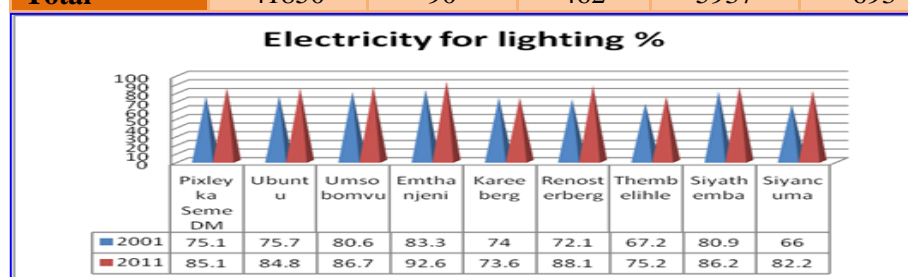
	Electricity	Gas	Paraffin	Wood	Coal	Animal dung	Solar
Ubuntu	3180	111	219	1356	81	3	18
Umsobomvu	2709	216	2721	1182	297	12	15
Emthanjeni	6921	258	1026	1131	402	36	42
Kareeberg	1617	141	63	1062	114	3	24
Renosterberg	1998	45	183	531	6	-	9
Thembelihle	1818	120	96	1362	9	-	24
Siyathemba	3057	69	51	2298	18	-	18
Siyancuma	5112	126	57	3480	93	3	21
Total	26412	1086	4416	12402	1020	57	171

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

Although relatively expensive, paraffin and gas are used on a limited scale for cooking and heating. Animal dung also features on a limited scale as energy/fuel source for cooking and heating in some rural areas.

**Table 47: Energy for lighting per Local Municipality**

	Electricity	Gas	Paraffin	Candles (not a valid option)	Solar
<b>Ubuntu</b>	4350	18	33	561	138
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	6801	15	135	855	15
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	9684	18	54	609	63
<b>Kareeberg</b>	2370	9	39	564	231
<b>Renosterberg</b>	2637	6	24	297	24
<b>Thembelihle</b>	3111	9	99	861	45
<b>Siyathemba</b>	5025	9	42	639	102
<b>Siyancuma</b>	7872	6	36	1551	75
<b>Total</b>	41850	90	462	5937	693



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011 Census

The combination of low rainfall, relatively high population densities and the fact that most of the indigenous vegetation in the area is slow growing, have already resulted in over-utilization of this renewable natural resource in certain places. Of major concern in this respect is wood harvesting and usage in the rural areas.

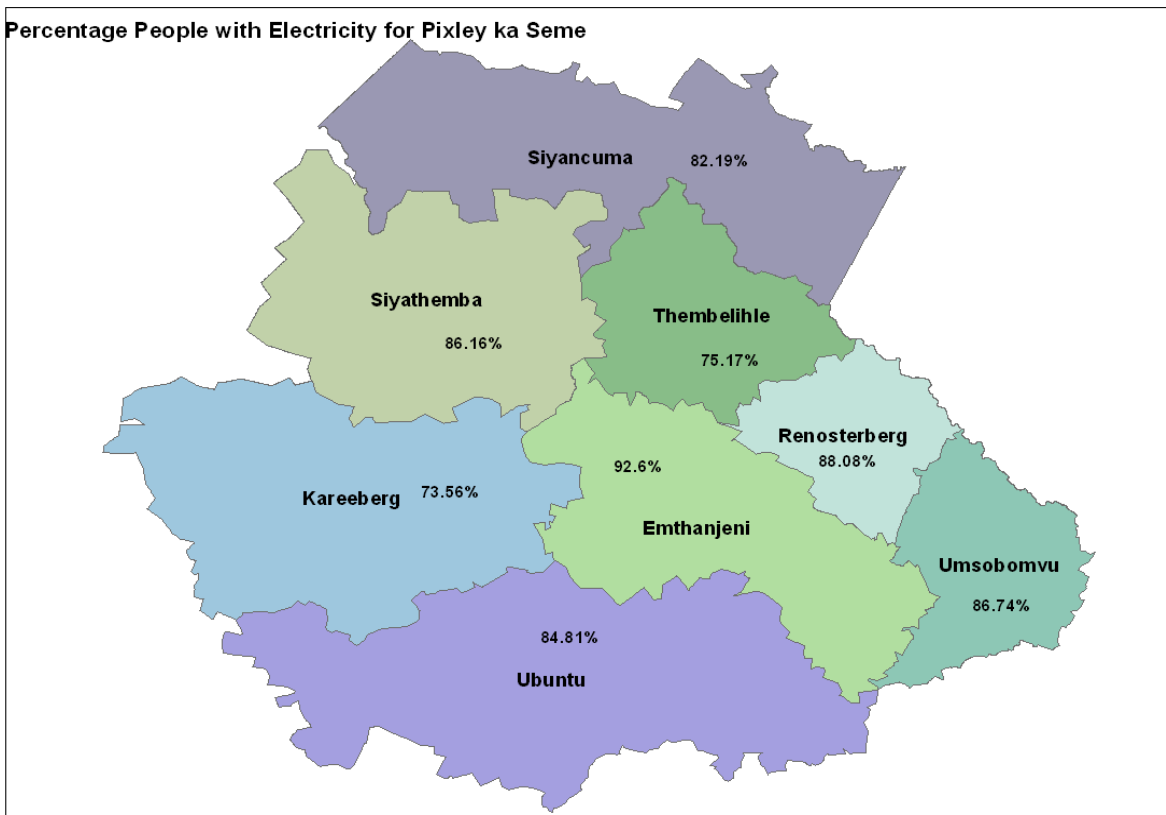
**Table 48: Energy for lighting per Local Municipality**

	Electricity	Gas	Paraffin	Wood	Coal	Animal dung	Solar
<b>Ubuntu</b>	3927	228	171	744	24	3	18
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	6174	348	828	393	42	21	12
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	9105	420	240	603	27	18	9
<b>Kareeberg</b>	2103	300	63	696	21	-	24
<b>Renosterberg</b>	2469	102	132	261	6	-	9
<b>Thembelihle</b>	2613	684	375	435	3	-	9
<b>Siyathemba</b>	4788	255	51	699	6	3	15
<b>Siyancuma</b>	7182	471	207	1671	15	-	9
<b>Total</b>	38361	2808	2067	5502	144	45	105

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011 Census

There has been an increase in the use of electricity as an energy source and a decrease in the use of paraffin, gas and candles as a source of energy/lighting. Siyancuma, Emthanjeni and Ubuntu have the highest number of backlogs, representing approximately 59,5% of the backlogs in the district.

**FIGURE 22: Percentage people with electricity**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**Table 49 : Access to source of energy**

MUNICIPALITIES	Electricity for lighting %		ELECTRICITY OTHER		GAS		PARAFFIN		CANDLES		OTHER		UNSPECIFIED		TOTAL	
	2001.	2011	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%	NO.	%		
Emthanjeni	83.3	92.6	95	1.1	13	0.1	241	2.8	1	846	21.6	0	0	25	0.3	8 508
Kareeberg	74.0	73.6	170	6.2	4	0.1	119	0.04	773	28.2	1	0.03	18	0.6	2 738	
Thembelihle	67.2	75.2	48	1.7	6	0.2	375	13.2	593	20.9	0	0	10	0.3	2 837	
Siyathemba	80.9	86.2	13	2.4	2	0.04	115	2.5	788	17.3	1	0.02	29	0.6	4 542	
Renosterberg	72.1	88.1	90	3.8	1	0.04	326	13.7	439	18.5	0	0	8	0.3	2 370	
Ubuntu	75.7	84.8	149	3.5	9	0.2	362	8.5	1	036	24.5	0	0	20	0.5	4 232
Siyancuma	66.0	82.2	97	1.4	18	0.2	318	4.5	261	37.3	3	0.04	63	0.9	7 013	
Umsobomvu	80.5	86.7	616	11.3	71	1.3	876	16.1	387	7.1	2	0.03	21	0.4	5 450	
District (Total)	<b>75.1</b>	<b>85.1</b>	<b>847</b>	<b>2.2</b>	<b>124</b>	<b>0.3</b>	<b>3 772</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>6 129</b>	<b>16.3</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>0.01</b>	<b>204</b>	<b>0.54</b>	<b>37 690</b>	

*Sources: Statistics South Africa 2011 and PkS IDP 2011/16*

## **Identified issues**

The following issues regarding electricity were identified:

- ◆ The implementation of free basic electricity is a problem;
- ◆ Eskom is the service provider to mainly the rural area and previous disadvantaged areas;
- ◆ Many sites that were earmarked for housing development do not have access to electricity.

## **2.32 Refuse removal**

From planning and environmental point of view, solid waste is supposed to be collected two days per week in residential areas while those from industrial and commercial areas should be collected on a daily basis. The table below indicates that of the district total households (49 193) majority of them (72.6%), have some form of formal refuse removal which is regularly collected on a weekly basis. At local or town level, however, the table also indicates that in some municipalities, e.g. Ubuntu, Kareeberg and Siyancuma municipalities many households still dump refuse in their own dumping ground. It is important to note that the use of this form of removal represents a great

### **2.32.1 Municipal Health Services**

The municipal health services unit is entrusted in terms of the National health Act of 2003, with the following functions: water quality monitoring; food control; waste management; health surveillance of premises; surveillance and prevention of communicable diseases; vector control; environmental pollution control and disposal of the dead

Against this background, this is one of the functions of the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality in terms of the Act.

#### **Water Quality Monitoring**

A drinking water quality monitoring programme or plan is in place to ensure compliance with the South African National Standards (SANS 241:2011) and ensure that water is safe for human consumption. To achieve this, the unit and some municipal officials take samples for analysis from all sampling sites in the district. Waste water is also monitored or managed by the unit to ensure that waste water discharge complies with legislation and set standards.

The results of the analysis from the laboratory are captured on a national internet based system for publication. The information from the Department of water affairs that is responsible for the publication shows that the level of compliance has improved since the unit was established.

#### **Food Control**

Food premises are regularly inspected to ensure that food sold to the public is fit for human consumption and complies with relevant legislation. The food premises include supermarkets, the general dealers and butcheries. It also includes food caterers and some informal food-handlers. Monitoring of informal street trading still poses a challenge

Dairy farms and milking parlours are also inspected and milk samples taken. Results of milk samples show a gradual improvement in compliance with legislation.



## **Waste Management**

Management of waste is monitored, although collection and disposal thereof is still a challenge in all the urban areas. Health and hygiene awareness campaigns are sometimes conducted to ensure that waste management is undertaken effectively by local municipalities.

## **Health Surveillance of premises**

Regular inspections of premises are carried out to prevent and abate conditions which are likely to constitute a danger to health.

## **Surveillance and prevention of communicable diseases.**

The unit emarkles on health and hygiene campains aimed at the prevention of environmentally induced diseases and related communicable diseases.

## **Vector Control**

Vector control of public health interest including the control of rodents, insects and desease-carriers or pests is also undrtaken by the unit.

## **Environmental Pollution control**

This deals with the identification of polluting agents and their sources i.e air, land and water.

Prevention measures are taken to ensure that the general environmental is free from health risks. Most of the activities overlap with the water quality monitoring and waste management activities. The department of Environmental Affairs is assisting the district municipality with the compilation of air quality management plan that will be used for dealing with all the aspects of environmental control.

## **Disposal of the dead**

The funeral palours are regularly inspected to ensure that premises comply with the requirements regarding handling of corpses.

The table below shows a summary of achievements during the 2012/13 financial year.

**Table 50: Municipal health services**

<b>Functionsa</b>	<b>Achievements</b>
Water quality monitoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 632 water samples taken and analyzed according to SANS 241 of 2011</li><li>• 42 failures on E.coli</li></ul>
Disposal of the dead	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 5 body exhumation</li><li>• 2 certificate of competence issued to funeral undertakers</li><li>• 24 Funeral undertakerrrs inspected</li></ul>
Survailence of premises	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 66 non food premises inspected(schools, day care centers, etc)</li><li>• 11 health and hygiene promotion given to school learners</li><li>• 8 food safety training conducted to food handlers for school feeding schemes</li></ul>

Surverillances and prevention of communicable deases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All 37 notified TB and MDR TB cases were investigated</li> <li>• 23 smallpox cases reported and success fully controlled. Health and hygiene given to the learners and suspected cases.</li> <li>• 3 animal bite casesinvestigated</li> </ul>
Chemical safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8 hazardous substance licenses issued.</li> </ul>
Environmental Health Complains	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 15 complains received and investigated regarding animal keeping and illegal slaughtering of livestock</li> </ul>
Waste management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 144 Waste water samples analyzed and compiled</li> <li>• 4 clean up campaigns to promote clean environment conducted</li> <li>• 32 inspection of landfill site and 99% are non complaint only the landfill site in Petrusville compiled.</li> </ul>

**Source: Shared Services Dept: 2013**

#### **Problems Encountered by Local Municipalities**

- Most water treatment works around the district are old which also affects the quality of drinking water.
- Some Local Municipalities do not have water treatment works and are making use of borehole water, which becomes problematic during rainy season, because the water which is seeping through affects the quality of drinking water in boreholes.
- Most of the municipalities do not have the necessary resources and funding to maintain the necessary standard required by the SANS 241:2006.
- Unskilled personnel working at the water treatment works.

**Recommendations**

- Relevant training should be given according to the relevant needs of the personnel working at treatment plants.
- District municipality is assisting local municipalities by taking control samples every month, in monitoring the quality of drinking water.
- During water quality failures in local municipality's, letters are sent by EHP's (Environmental Health Practitioners) in determining the cause of the failure and what control measures were taken to rectify the problem.
- All local municipalities are encouraged to make use of the Environmental Health Services, when they need assistance.

risk to public health, besides the unaesthetic impact it produces to the physical environment. The district and the local municipalities have compiled their integrated waste management plans that are currently being used for the waste management in the region. That of the district municipality is attached in volume 2 of this IDP.

### Identified issues

The following issues were identified by local municipalities:

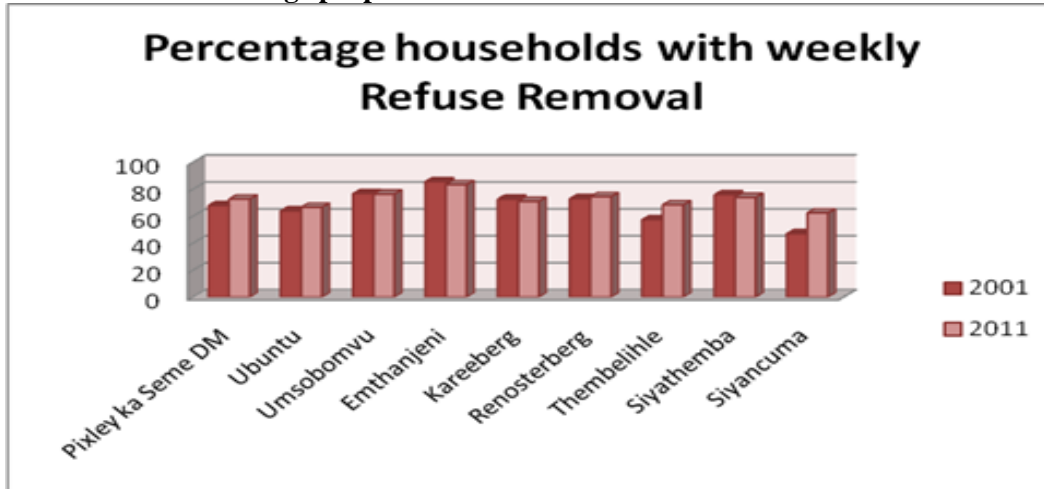
- ◆ High cost of waste removal.
- ◆ Most of the waste disposal sites do not comply with legal requirements.
- ◆ There is a greater need for vehicles and equipment.
- ◆ Current disposal sites need to be upgraded.

**Table 51: Refuse removal according to Census 2011**

	Removed by local authority/private company at least once a week	Removed by local authority/private company less often	Communal refuse dump	Own refuse dump	No rubbish disposal	Other	Grand Total
<b>Ubuntu</b>	3417	39	108	1191	309	60	5124
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	5982	273	174	1245	132	24	7830
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	8709	216	90	1038	141	249	10443
<b>Kareeberg</b>	2283	15	15	762	111	33	3219
<b>Renosterberg</b>	2226	48	48	582	81	9	2994
<b>Thembelihle</b>	2832	33	189	564	483	39	4140
<b>Siyathemba</b>	4305	60	144	1062	234	15	5820
<b>Siyancuma</b>	5964	111	111	2568	741	84	9579
<b>Grand Total</b>	35718	795	879	9012	2232	513	49149

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**FIGURE 23: Percentage people with refuse removed**



Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

The district has a backlog of 11 279 households. The local municipalities with the most backlogs (households that rely on their own refuse dumps or do no rubbish disposals at all) are Renosterberg, Thembelihle and Kareeberg. In Siyancuma, 3 299 out of 9 506 have refuse removal backlogs (the highest backlogs in all the local municipalities). In Ubuntu, 1 416 out of 4 161 have backlogs and in Thembelihle 1 216 out of 3 592 households have refuse removal backlogs.

## 2.33 Telephones

Access to communication has improved in recent years with the installation of cellphone networks. However, access to these services in poorer communities and farm areas remains a problem.

On the whole the district is well served by a network of automatic and manual telephone exchanges. The main towns have exchanges linked to the smaller sub-centres with local manual exchanges. Local IDP's indicated that most of these exchanges, especially those in the farms are outdated and are in need of upgrading. Telkom is presently installing an electronic telecommunication system which will serve over a large area in the district. The new network is scheduled for completion very soon depending on the availability of funds.

### 2.3.1 Telephone Access

According to the table below most households in the district, approximately 66.2% do not have telephones at their homes although many of them have expressed need for the service. The existing situation results in many households still depending on public phones and other means of telecommunication. The public telephones according to Telkom authorities are vandalised frequently. The situation calls for a need to protect these facilities as they will be of help to the residents who depend on them.

It is perhaps interesting to note, as the table indicates, that only in Emthanjeni Municipal Area that a substantial number 2 875 (33.7%) of the households have telephones at their homes.

**Table 52: Household access to Telephone**

CELL PHONE ACCESS								
	Ubuntu	Umsobomvu	Emthanjeni	Kareeberg	Renosterberg	Thembelihle	Siyathemba	Siyancuma
<b>Yes</b>	3651	5775	8103	2211	2169	2991	4239	7296
<b>No</b>	1479	2064	2352	1011	825	1152	1593	2280
TELEPHONE ACCES								
<b>Yes</b>	708	849	1434	504	453	585	708	1026
<b>No</b>	4422	6993	9024	2718	2541	3555	5124	8550

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011 Census

## 2.34 Postal Services

There are 8 fully fledged post offices and about 5 retail postal agents that are serving the whole of Pixley district including the farms. All the post offices are located in the main towns. According to the Head of De Aar Post Office all the post offices are in good conditions and the security in them is being stepped up. The information also shows that the towns are better served with postal facilities than the rural areas which experience periodic delays in mail delivery, due to the absence of proper facilities to convey such mail.

The findings from De Aar Post Office revealed that postal services in towns are also ploughed by many problems. Some residential areas in towns where the houses are not numbered and where the streets do not have names experience delays and non-deliverance of mail in some cases.

## 2.35 Transportation

The people in the towns use micro-busses, private cars as well as walking to go to their places of employment. As far as public taxis are concerned they operate mostly during morning hours when the workers are going to work and in the afternoon when they are going back from work to their respective homes. On Saturdays the taxis operate from morning to 13h00 when businesses are open. There are no taxis on Sundays.

Presently there is only one mini-bus that operates between Prieska and De Aar railway station twice a week. The route between De Aar and Phillipstown is also served by a mini-bus which operates on a daily basis.

As a result of there being no adequate public transport, most of the people who want to undertake long distance trips rely on railway passenger services which operate between Johannesburg and Cape Town. The use of bicycles is also very popular but users express that there is no planning for cyclists as there are no fully developed tracks in the whole region. As a result of this scenario cyclists are always in conflict either vehicular traffic or pedestrians.

As mentioned earlier, the vicinity of the townships to the places of employment which is concentrated in the Central Business District (CBD) of all the towns, also encourage people to walk to their respective work places. In the event of the existing situation a full development of pedestrian walkways and crossing points will be helpful in the elimination of pedestrian and vehicular conflicts in towns, especially in areas where lack of such facilities can be a source of danger to pedestrians.

The table below shows that the main mode of transport in the province and in the Pixley ka Seme region (37.3%/61377) is on foot as the majority of the population does not have access to modern transportation.

Only 6.9% (11289) of the population have access to privately owned vehicle and 2.6% (4237) make use of public transport, in the form of a bus, taxi or train. The use of taxi's/minibuses is notably lower than in the province.

**Table 53: Mode of Transport, 2007**

Mode of Transport	Northern Cape Province	Pixley ka Seme DM
On foot	31.9%	37.3%
By car as a driver	4.4%	3.5%
By bus	2.9%	1.3%
By minibus/taxi	3.3%	1.2%
By bicycle	0.8%	0.7%
By motorcycle	0.2%	0.2%
By train	0.1%	0.1%
By car as a passenger	4.2%	3.4%
Other	0.8%	0.3%

**Source: PKS Socio- Economic Profile, 2008**

The lack of public transport throughout the district calls for a need to compile Integrated Transport Plans by the district and local municipalities that will be used by all stakeholders for promoting public transport in the region.

### 2.35.1 Airstrips

The table below indicates that there are fourteen airstrips serving the district. As noted in some local IDP's all the airstrips have dirt runways except the one that is situated at the military base in De Aar which has a concrete runway. A ground survey, however, revealed that most of them seem not to have been in use for some time as no maintenance is done on the runways. The improvement of the land strips could be favourable for the purposes of more effective exploitation of the district tourism potential.

**Table 54: Airstrips by Local Municipality**

Municipality	Area	Airstrips
Emthanjeni	De Aar	2
	Hanover	1
	Britstown	1
Kareeberg	Carnavon	1
	Van Wyksvlei	-
	Vosburg	-
Thembelihle	Hopetown	1
	Strydenburg	-
Siyathemba	Prieska	1
	Marydale	-
	Niekerkshoop	1
Renosterberg	Petrusville	1
	Vanderkloof	-
	Phillipstown	-
Ubuntu	Victoria – West	1
	Richmond Farms	1
	Hutchinson	-
	Merriman	-
	Loxton	1
Siyancuma	Douglas	1
	Campbell	-
	Griekwastad	-
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	1
	Noupoort	-
	Norvalspont	-
<b>District Total</b>		<b>14</b>

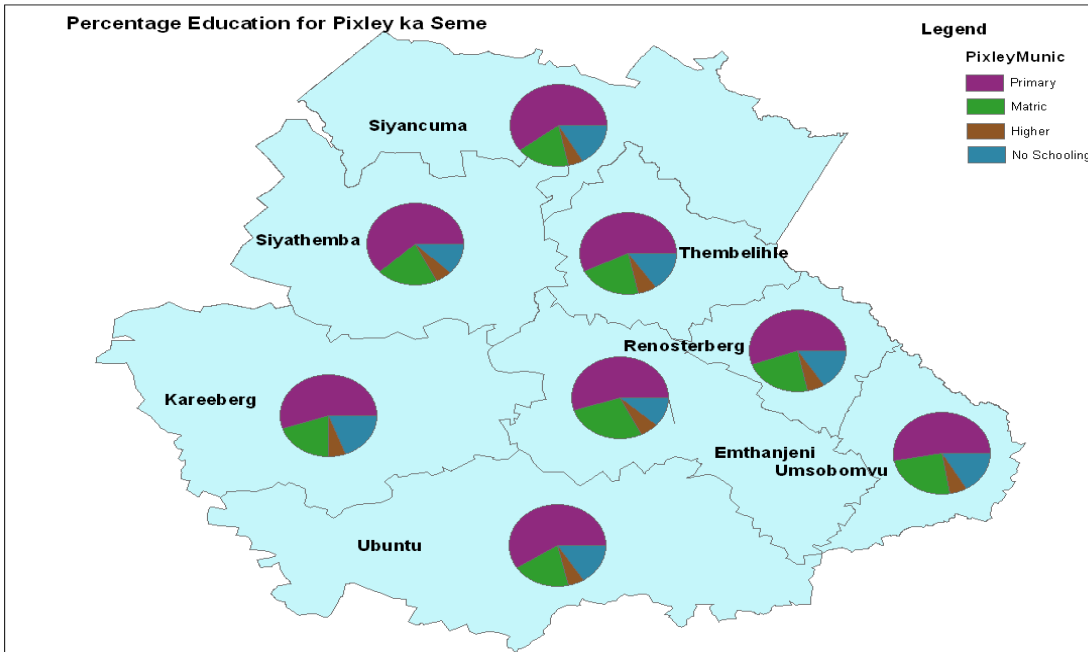
Source: Pixley ka Seme IDP 2011/16

### 2.36 Education

The table below shows the education system in South Africa and the level of education by population of the district. The table shows that a significant proportion (11%) of the population has no qualification and 52.% had only primary and secondary level of qualifications of the total population 16% are matriculants while only 3 % have a degree and or tertiary qualifications. The existing situation can only be explained by a substantial number of previously disadvantaged population groups who did not have equal access to education in the past era.



**FIGURE: 24 :Percentage education**



Source: Statssa 2001 and 2011

Over the last 15 years the rates of no-schooling have been halved across the country. The percentage of persons 20 years and older who have no schooling decreased from 19,1% in 1996 to 8,7% in 2011. This almost halved since 2001 when 19% aged 20+ had no schooling Northern Cape, went from around 22% to around 11%. Whereas in PKS Education (aged 20 +) No Schooling is 14.60%, Higher Education is 6.10% and Matric 20.50% The literacy efforts for adults and the increasing influx of 20 years olds with proper levels of education are expected to drive these proportions further down in the years to come.

According to the Municipal Profiles of 2002, the primary school population represented 46.3 % of the total population of the district. There were 49 primary schools and 18 secondary schools and combined schools in the district. While the actual number of schools is generally satisfactory according to standard, an acute shortage of schools is experienced in the remote areas of the district. In many cases only one school is serving a wide region in the rural areas. Inadequate schools in rural areas involved long walking distances by children to reach the schools.

As far as provisions of facilities and / or services are concerned, many local IDP's have noted that most schools in the regions are characterised by lack of essential services such as water, electricity and sanitation.

De Aar Campus which used to be a satellite of Northern Cape College in Kimberley is the only tertiary institution in the district. The institution offers courses like Marketing Management, Hospitality Services, Public Relations, ICDL, etc. It has 375 students in De Aar and 50 in Colesberg. The existing actual number of tertiary institutions is not considered sufficient for long term education needs of the district.

### Crèches

Presently there are 20 crèches in the district and they are situated in the main towns such as De Aar, Victoria-West, Hopetown, etc. The crèches are established and run by the Department of Education. The high number of established crèches is an indication of how the Department of Education is committed to meeting the educational needs of young children in the district.

## **Identified issues**

The following issues were identified during the IDP Representative Forum Meeting:

- Shortage of institutions for higher learning.
- Lack of transport for farm schools .
- Illiteracy.
- Good secondary pass rate.
- Brain drain from the region.

**Table 55: Highest educational level by local municipality**

	No schooling	Some primary education	some secondary education	some education Matric	some education higher	Total
<b>NC071: Ubuntu</b>	13	43	27	14	3	100
<b>NC072: Umsobomvu</b>	12	38	29	18	3	100
<b>NC073: Emthanjeni</b>	8	38	31	19	3	100
<b>NC074: Kareeberg</b>	13	39	30	14	3	100
<b>NC075: Renosterberg</b>	12	41	27	17	3	100
<b>NC076: Thembelihle</b>	12	42	28	15	3	100
<b>NC077: Siyathemba</b>	9	43	31	14	3	100
<b>NC078: Siyancuma</b>	13	43	29	13	3	100
<b>DC7: Pixley ka Seme</b>	11	41	29	16	3	100

Source: StatsSA 2011

**Table: Highest education level by municipality**

	No schooling	Some primary education	some secondary education	some Matric education	some higher education
<b>NC071: Ubuntu</b>	2074	6931	4379	2303	444
<b>NC072: Umsobomvu</b>	2961	9545	7169	4387	738
<b>NC073: Emthanjeni</b>	3099	14209	11519	6924	1166
<b>NC074: Kareeberg</b>	1365	3989	3098	1464	266
<b>NC075: Renosterberg</b>	1144	4019	2626	1678	280
<b>NC076: Thembelihle</b>	1585	5747	3859	2066	474
<b>NC077: Siyathemba</b>	1789	8178	5896	2649	493
<b>NC078: Siyancuma</b>	4050	13897	9228	4199	852
<b>DC7: Pixley ka Seme</b>	18065	66516	47773	25670	4714

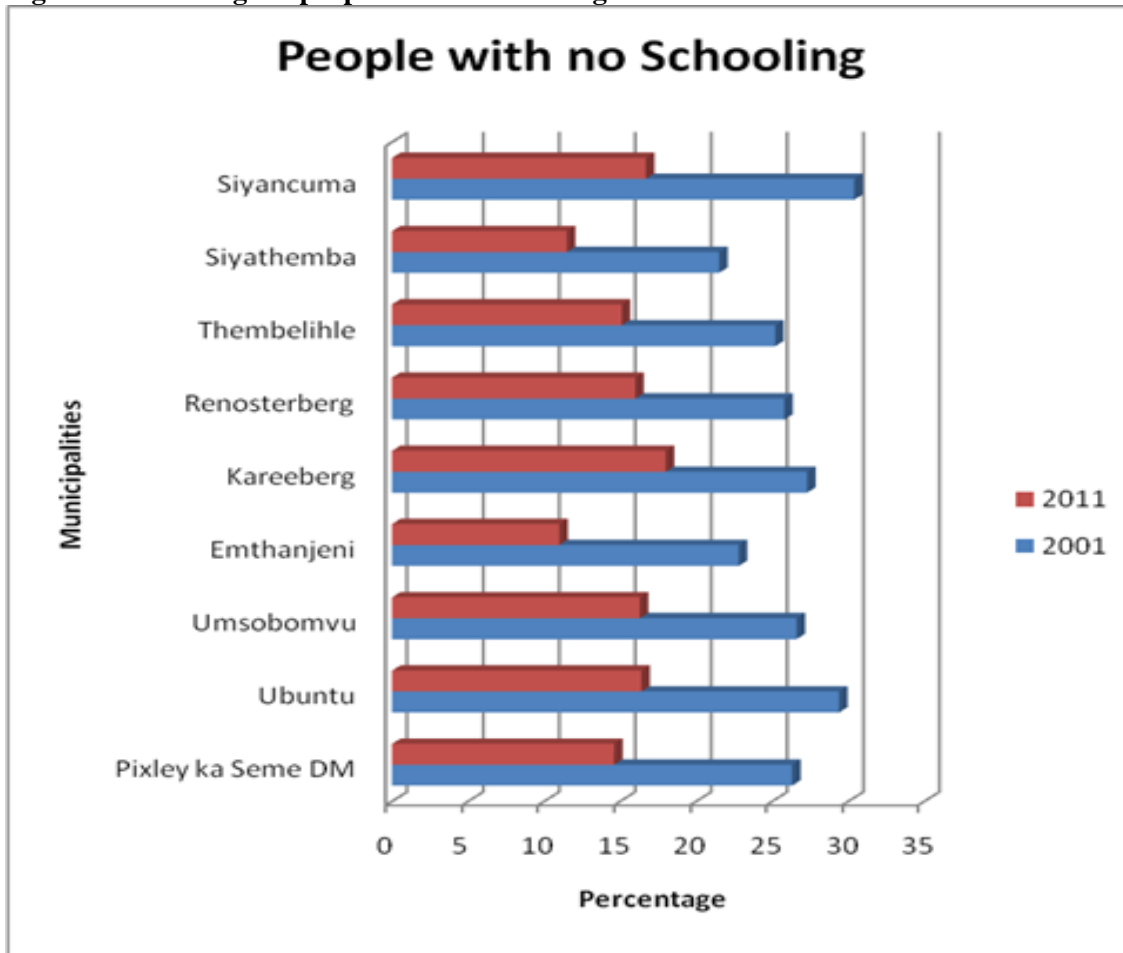
Source: StatsSA 2011

**Table 56: Level of Education per Local Municipality**

	NC071: Ubuntu	NC072: Umsobomvu	NC073: Emthangeni	NC074: Kareeberg	NC075: Renosterberg	NC076: Thembelihle	NC077: Siyathemba	NC078: Siyancuma	Grand Total
<b>Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5</b>	2100	4050	6396	1314	1506	1926	2433	3861	23586
<b>NTC I / N1 / NIC / V Level 2</b>	6	18	42	3	6	3	9	18	105
<b>NTC II / N2 / NIC / V Level 3</b>	6	15	33	6	15	9	12	12	108
<b>NTC III / N3 / NIC / V Level 4</b>	9	15	54	9	12	9	9	30	147
<b>N4 / NTC 4</b>	6	15	39	9	12	27	18	21	147
<b>N5 / NTC 5</b>	12	12	36	6	6	6	9	36	123
<b>N6 / NTC 6</b>	12	9	51	12	9	21	18	30	162
<b>Certificate with less than Grade 12 / Std 10</b>	3	24	30	6	9	12	6	21	111
<b>Diploma with less than Grade 12 / Std 10</b>	15	24	51	18	15	15	12	24	174
<b>Certificate with Grade 12 / Std 10</b>	66	87	141	36	69	54	84	138	675
<b>Diploma with Grade 12 / Std 10</b>	138	243	381	114	102	90	135	195	1398
<b>Higher Diploma</b>	210	297	363	93	78	153	195	315	1704
<b>Post Higher Diploma Masters; Doctoral Diploma</b>	18	36	30	15	12	27	24	30	192
<b>Bachelors Degree</b>	75	177	261	51	63	114	90	165	996
<b>Bachelors Degree and Post graduate Diploma</b>	42	66	84	18	27	45	27	60	369
<b>Honours degree</b>	30	48	99	15	30	42	48	99	411
<b>Higher Degree Masters / PhD</b>	24	27	69	18	6	18	27	33	222
<b>Grand Total</b>	2772	5163	8160	1743	1977	2571	3156	5088	30630

Source: Statistics South Africa 2011

**Figure25: Percentage of people with no schooling**



**Source : Statistics South Africa 2011**

### **2.37 Stormwater drainage**

Stormwater drains channel waters from the settlement area to the catchments thus removing water away from roads. They should be designed along roads and should form a hierarchy.

Information gathered from the local IDP's indicates that the stormwater drains in most towns are not fully developed and most roads are without drainage systems or where they exist they are filled with sand or rubbish. This situation poses a traffic hazard through eroded and flooded roads.

In Ubuntu Municipal Area, e.g., the information from the IDP regarding roads and drainage are as follows:

- ⇒ The roads in all towns are gravel roads of a low standard with many potholes
- ⇒ They become inaccessible during the rainy season.
- ⇒ The lack of decent drainage system results in the flooding of properties during the rainy season.

This situation is also prevalent in most towns within the district as shown on the photos below:



Concrete widening on curve



Potholes and general condition



Old patch areas and existing canals



General Cracking of street surface



Surface failure / rotten concrete canals



Storm water problems





Storm water inlet problems



Storm water drainage problem



Poor condition of Main street



Surface failures at traffic circle exit



Surface failure around traffic circle



Poor condition of surface around circle





Seal cracks around circle



Surface failure and storm water drainage



Cracking of surface



Poor drainage results in ponding of water



Cracks and drainage problems



Failure on road where ponding occurs



## 2.38 Roads

As has been motioned earlier road coverage in the region is good and major improvements in terms of maintenance have occurred. However, the information that was obtained from the Dept of Public Works (De Aar regional office ) and from the local IDP's indicate that apart from the main roads that are in good conditions the roads that are serving the rural areas remain of very poor quality. Thus accessibility into the rural areas is still difficult as a consequence of which efficient transport and communication in the region has been impeded. It was also noted from the information that poor conditions of these roads impact on effective service delivery in the rural areas.

### 2.38.1 Road Priorities

According to the infrastructure development implementation plan of the Department of Public Works, the depart is to regravel and upgrade all road networks in the district. The roads to be regravelled and upgraded are shown in the road priority list in the annexure.

The following photos show some of the roads in the region and common problems that are caused by a thin gravel wearing course.

### 2.38.2 Blading Maintenance

According to the National Department of Transport guidelines, gravel roads should be maintained according to certain standards and blading frequencies. The Department is now undertaking this function to ensure that roads are being maintained in the district.

### 2.38.3 Routine Maintenance

Regular routine maintenance of roads within the district is also being undertaken by the Depart of Public Works is also undertaking since July 2011.

### 2.38.4 Road Maintenance

As from July 2011 the Department of Public Works is responsible for the maintenance of gravel/dirt roads in the region. The total length of these roads is shown in the table below:

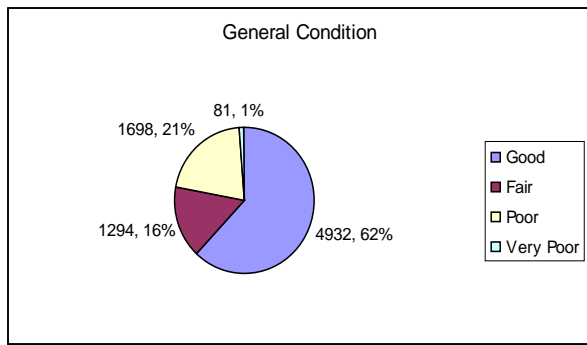
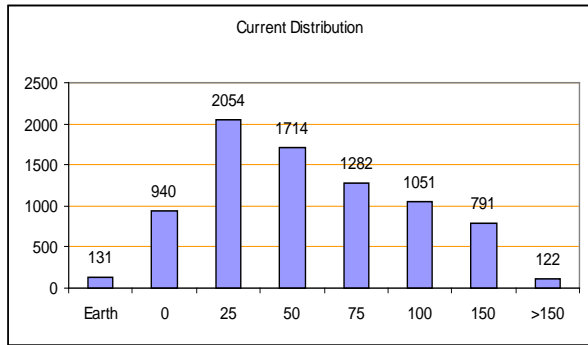
**Table 57: Road Maintenance**

Pixley Ka Seme District			
Road Type	Length	Average daily traffic	
		All	Heavy
Gravel Divisional	5,694	20	2
Gravel Main	2,594	45	5
Gravel Trunk	113	36	4
Total	8,401	27	3
Minor Roads	24,000	5	1

*Source*PKS IDP 2011/16

The information from the gravel road management system report indicates that about 1,072km of the major network in the district are without any gravel and thus can be defined as dirt/earth roads, and the average condition of the gravel road network can be rated as fair with 22% of the roads in a poor to very poor category. Therefore regular upgrading or maintenance of these roads is required in order to keep them in a good condition.

**Figure 26: current distribution/ general conditions**



Potholes developed on Main Road MR Hopetown – Douglas

Drainage problems as road is below natural ground – MR 803 Carnarvon – Prieska

Rocks visible due to lack of gravel Wearing gravel wearing coarse Divisional Road 3123 Heuningskloof

Regraveling done labour intensively near Salt Lake on MR 803



## 2.39 Resources

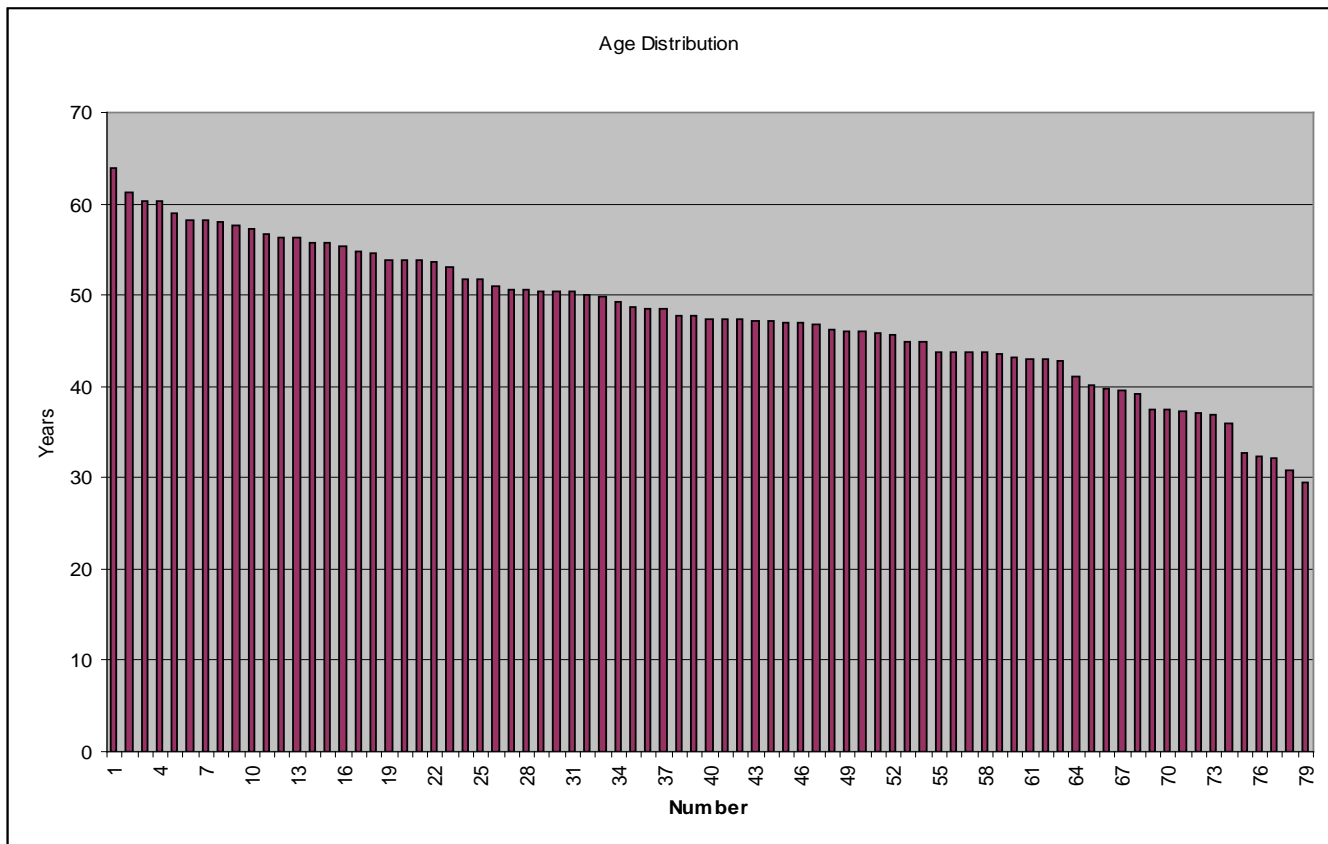
### 2.39.1 Plant Condition

Most of the plant that are used currently by the regional office of the Public Works department for road maintenance and upgrading were purchased during the apartheid government. This implies that on average the plants are 25 years old. It was noted in the discussion that we had with the department that the availability of the plant is  $\pm 45\%$ , thus had a negative impact on service delivery. In normal conditions a grader will be able to blade about 1000km of roads per year but with a 45% availability it is only possible to blade 450km which means that some of the roads could not be bladed on time. Construction plant is also a major problem and has to be replaced if major or heavy maintenance, e.g. regravelling and road rehabilitation is to be done in the district. There was a strong conviction from these problems that if a labour intensive method is used to do the work without the plant that is in a good condition it would be impossible to effectively maintain the roads.

### 2.39.2 Personnel

The personnel component of the Public Works regional office in De Aar that were absorbed for PKS District Municipality also remains a problem regarding service delivery in the region. As was noted from the information that was provided by the office during the IDP review, in 1999 before amalgamation the Bo-Karoo Divisional Council had 135 staff members that were working in the formal Technical Services of District Municipality and almost a third of the workers will retire over the next ten years leaving the Department with capacity problems as far as road upgrading is concerned.

**Figure 27: Age distribution**



Source: PKSDM IDP 2011/16

## **2.40 Community Facilities**

### **2.40.1 Libraries**

The table below shows that presently there are some sizable number of libraries in the district which are owned and run by local municipalities. The only toy library in the district as a whole is situated in Nonzwakazi and it is run by the Department of Education. According to the information we received from the local municipalities, most of the libraries especially those that are located in the historically disadvantaged communities or townships have limited resources.

### **2.40.2 Community Halls**

All the main towns and some previously disadvantaged towns have community halls. The existing community halls are used for various activities such as musical shows, meetings, conferences, churches, funerals, etc.

#### **Identified issues**

**The identified issues regarding roads, streets and stormwater are as follows:**

- Most of the road network in the rural areas is dirt roads. Poor maintenance of them impact on the accessibility of the district.
- Stormwater systems are not in place in most areas.
- Poor maintenance of the dirt roads also impact on effective service delivery in the rural areas.
- Some street network is in poor condition due to lack of capacity and resources by District and Local Municipalities.

### **2.40.3 Recreational Facilities**

**As noted in some of the local IDP's, the situation with regard to this facility is as follows:**

- Main towns in the district enjoy a high level of provision of recreational facilities. The facilities provided by local municipalities in some of these areas include rugby pitches, swimming pools, tennis, squash courts, etc. As far as the maintenance of these facilities is concerned, our ground survey revealed that they are regularly maintained by local municipalities.
- Only in the main towns that parks are fairly distributed and regularly maintained.
- In the townships recreational facilities such as soccer pitches, swimming pools, etc. are also provided but most of them are presently in terms of standards not well developed. A ground survey shows that the soccer pitches are just open areas with no infrastructure of any sort. Furthermore, the survey also revealed that in some townships there are no sporting facilities and residents have to go somewhere else for sports.
- Parks in the townships are mostly overgrown and unkempt. This situation makes the existing parks attractive dumping sites and lead to unsafe and polluted areas within the townships.

### **2.40.4 Religion Facilities**

Church goers in the district are well catered for with many churches of various denominations well distributed in towns. Some of these churches, however, are well developed while others are very old, not well developed and needed rehabilitation.

#### **2.40.5 Cemetery**

The available records on this facility show that all the towns are well served with cemeteries, some of which are very old and full. Various smaller cemeteries also exist in the farms. It is only in Umsobomvu municipal area that the existing cemeteries seem to be inadequate as was noted in their IDP.

Therefore the municipality will either improve or extend the existing ones or identify new sites for cemeteries.

It is important to not, however, that some of the cemeteries in the region are presently in a poor state as they are not regularly maintained. Furthermore, there are also cases where grave property like flower vases were stolen. In the event of this situation screening of these cemeteries from the public is recommended in order to protect the homes of the deceased.

**Table 58: Community Facilities by Local Municipalities**

Municipality	Area	Crèches	Primary Schools	Secondary Schools	Combined Schools	Tertiary Institutions	Libraries	Community Halls	Recreation
<b>Emthanjeni</b>	De Aar	4	7	4	-	1	3	3	Yes
	Hanover	2	1	1	-	-	1	2	
	Britstown	2	1	1	-	-	1	3	
<b>Kareeberg</b>	Carnavon	-	1	1	1	-	2	-	Yes
	Van Wyksvlei	-	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
	Vosburg	1	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
<b>Thembelihle</b>	Hopetown	1	2		1	-	1	2	No
	Strydenburg	1	1	1	-	-	2	1	No
<b>Siyathemba</b>	Prieska	-	4	2	-		2	3	Yes
	Marydale	1	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
	Niekerkshoop	-	1	-	-		1	1	Yes
<b>Renosterberg</b>	Petrusville	1	2	1	-	-	1	2	No
	Phillipstown	1	2	1	-	-	1	2	No
	Vanderkloof	1	1	-	-	-	1	1	No
<b>Ubuntu</b>	Victoria-West farms	3	10	2		-	2	3	Yes
	Richmond	2	2	1		-	1	3	Yes
	Hutchinson	-	1			-	-	1	-
	Merriman	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Loxton	1	1	-	-	-	1	1	Yes
<b>Siyancuma</b>	Douglas								
	Campbell								
	Griekwastad								
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	Colesberg	1	5	2	-	-	1	3	Yes
	Noupoort	1	3	1	-	1	1	2	Yes
	Norvalspont	0	1	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
<b>District (Total)</b>		<b>23</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>37</b>	

Source: Local municipalities 2012

## **2.41 Summary of identified problems/issues**

The main challenges for the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality as identified in this IDP relate to socio-economic, infrastructure, spatial and housing issues as well as the issues around social facilities and services. The key issues most likely to have a fundamental effect on the long-term economic viability of the district are:

- Optimising on the opportunities presented by the region's geo-political location between Cape Town, Bloemfontein, Johannesburg and Pretoria, which are among the most important cities in South Africa.
- Optimising on the opportunities presented by the N1, N12, N9 and N10 corridors, which already transport many tourists, goods and services throughout the year through the region.
- The potential opportunities of the proposed renewable energy hub in the region.
- The backlog in the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, electricity and housing, especially the rural areas and in the informal settlement.
- Limited availability of bulk water in the district.
- Scarcity of water for agricultural, industrial, commercial and housing development programmes and its impact on regional development.
- The HIV/AIDS pandemic and its impact on regional demographics.
- Management of investor risk, and where necessary, direct intervention in order to attract international capital.
- The maintenance and preservation of pristine environment.
- Land release to facilitate development is of particular concern, particularly with land monopolists by the advantaged farming communities.
- Spatial inequalities.
- High levels of unemployment and poverty.

The developmental challenges can be classified as follows:

### **Physical**

- Dust pollution does occur in the region as a result of sparse vegetation and low variable rainfall.

### **Demographics**

- Declining population in some municipal areas, namely, Thembelihle, Ubuntu and Umsobomvu.
- There is a reasonably low population growth rate in the district. The average growth rate between 2001 and 2011 is 1.12 % (SSA 2011)
- The younger age group which is the future labour force of the district is demanding services such as education, shelter, recreational facilities and employment.
- Thefts and other illegal activities are a result of many problems e.g. unemployment that are dictated by unpleasant economic conditions of the district.
- A review of the existing level of education by population indicates a clear shortage of skilled manpower in the district.
- The majority of the households in the district who live below the Minimum Living Level (MLL) of Poverty Datum Line (PDL) are really faced with financial hardships.

### **Social and community facilities**

- Inadequate schools especially in the farms results in many young people having to travel long distances to areas where the schools exist.
- The existing post-secondary tertiary institution in De Aar is inadequate.
- Some of the health centres in the region are ill-equipped and under-staffed.
- Insufficient health centres
- Aftercare facilities and support services to patients

- Hospice
- Public transport services for patients
- General lack of Public transport
- Functional District Aids Council
- Recreational facilities in the townships do not have basic services and infrastructure.
- The findings also revealed that recreational facilities in the historically disadvantaged communities or neighbourhoods are poorly developed.
- The slow rate of implementation of housing projects by local municipalities has left them with a considerable backlog of housing problems.
- Lack of privacy and overcrowding in homes are a result of housing backlog.
- The high and rising number of informal dwelling units in the district is also a result of housing backlog
- A substantial number of the existing plots and/or houses needed to be serviced with basic services e.g. water.
- The social dimension of all local municipalities is characterized by high and rising levels of poverty (43.5%) which is caused by:
  - o Landlessness;
  - o Unemployment;
  - o Vulnerability (i.e. deprivation, insecurity, defencelessness and exposure to risk);
  - o Lack of control over any resources;
  - o Limited or no access at all to basic services e.g. water and shelter and
  - o Lack of income opportunities
- Some cemeteries are presently in a poor state.
- The ground surveys also revealed that quite a number of graves in some cemeteries have been vandalized.
- The existing number of libraries is inadequate and many of those that are presently operating are not very resourceful.
- Refuse removal services do not exist in areas such as Victoria-West, Richmond and Loxton.

### **Infrastructure and public utilities**

- Some households still rely on boreholes and natural sources as an alternative source of water to meet their water needs.
- Many water and sewerage reticulation facilities needed upgrading.
- Levels of sanitation are still below RDP standards
  - o Less than half of the total households in the district had access to flush toilets.
- More regular solid waste collection is required in all the municipal areas.
- The dumping of refuse by some households in their own dumping grounds presents a great risk to public health.
- Electricity supply within the district is not a major problem. However some few households (26.3%) are still using candles and paraffin as an alternative sources of power for meeting their power needs.
- The report of survey has also shows that there is need to urgently upgrade some of the existing electricity distribution networks as they are in a poor condition.
- Street lighting is problematic in most of the municipal areas.
- Communication systems are well distributed in most of the municipal areas, however some of the systems especially those in the rural areas are in need of upgrading.
- Most of the residents who do not have telephones at their homes depend on public telephones which are being vandalized.
- Lack of storm-water drains especially in the historically disadvantaged townships is really a serious problem.
- Storm-water drains in most of the towns are not fully developed.
- Gravel and some tarred roads in the townships are in a poor condition and need to be upgraded.



- Inadequate public transportation system calls for a need to have an integrated regional transport plan.
- Pedestrian walkways are inadequate in all the municipal areas.
- No cycle tracks in all the towns.

### **Socio-economic conditions**

- Unemployment is rife in all the local municipalities. According to Statistics SA the current unemployment rate in the region is 28.3%, excluding youth unemployment rate which was 44.1% in 2011
- The level of income is far below the Minimum Living Level (MLL) or Poverty Datum Line (PDL) for majority of the people hence there is a high number of people who are not able to pay for their municipal services.
- The rapid growth of informal settlements in many municipal areas is a result of many social and economic problems such as landlessness and housing backlog.
- Increase of HIV infections amongst the youth
- Alcohol and substance abuse
- High Fetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) is a serious problem, especially in De Aar
- Street children
- Communities need more police stations
- Intensification of HIV/AIDS programmes in the region
- Rise in teenage pregnancies
- Current land ownership and land development patterns strongly reflect the political and economic conditions of the past era. Racially based land policies were a cause of insecurity, landlessness and poverty amongst black population and a cause of inefficient land administration and land use. Therefore land reform programmes that are to be implemented within the IDP framework must deal with the inequitable distribution of land that is still being experienced in the district.
- Limited or no land available to stimulate small and medium sized economic activities in the region.
- Very little of the land is owned by provincial and national governments, local authorities and parastatal organizations.
- Almost all the visible active/arable lands within the district are owned by the white population. This situation clearly indicates that there is a need for Local and District municipalities to be more proactive in the implementation of land reform programmes as outlined in the White Paper on Land Policy so as to open up land which is needed for stimulating the kind of economic growth that will ensure a better life for all. Furthermore, it is perhaps important for all local municipalities to also appraise all land reform programmes that are currently being implemented to see if they are in line with the objectives of the national land reform policy.

### **Safety and security**

- Increase in rape and domestic violence
- Shortage of police resources (vehicles and manpower)
- Inadequate police stations (poor access due to long distance from the township)
- Low crime rate, but high levels of drug and alcohol abuse with related family abuse occur in the region.
- Youth delinquency is a problem due to the lack of recreation activities in the region.
- Police Visibility

#### **Other Problems**

Other problems/issues that were also identified by municipalities are shown in the table below.

**Table 59: Issues identified in Local IDP'S**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Physical</b>	<b>Demographics</b>	<b>Social</b>	<b>Infrastructure</b>	<b>Economic</b>
<b>Emthanjeni</b> De Aar Britstown Hanover			❖ Water quality is hard and presents problems for bathing, washing and electric appliances.		
<b>Kareeberg</b> Carnavon Van Wyksvlei Vosburg			❖ No community hall ❖ No crèches or day care centres ❖ No crèches or day care centres.		
<b>Thembelihle</b> Hopetown Strydenburg			❖ Shortage of service sites ❖ Increased fight against HIV/AIDS, crime and unwanted pregnancies	❖ Maintenance problems	❖ Stimulation of the informal sector
<b>Siyathemba</b> Prieska  Niekerkshoop  Marydale			❖ No crèches or day care centres ❖ No one-stop centre ❖ No tourist information centre ❖ Inadequate guest houses and coffee shops ❖ No drive-in cinema ❖ No crèches or day care centres ❖ No sports facilities ❖ Fighting HIV/AIDS is a serious problem No sports and recreational facilities		❖ Need resources required for the extension of vegetables project
<b>Renosterberg</b> Petrusville			❖ Postal collection and delivery is inadequate		

Phillipstown Vanderkloof			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Postal collection and delivery is inadequate</li> <li>❖ Fire vehicle and equipment is not in a good state and it needs overhaul and upgrading.</li> <li>❖ Fire hydrants are required in Keurtjiekloof and Waterkant.</li> <li>❖</li> </ul>		
<b>Siyancuma</b> Douglas Campbell Griekwastad			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Weak conservation of property</li> <li>❖ Nepotism</li> <li>❖ HIV/AIDS</li> <li>❖ Crime</li> </ul>		
<b>Umsobomvu</b> Colesberg Noupoort  Norvalspont			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ No clinics</li> <li>❖ No libraries</li> <li>❖ No crèches</li> <li>❖ No secondary schools</li> <li>❖ No libraries</li> <li>❖ No community halls</li> </ul>		

Source: Loca; IDPs 2012/13

### 2.41.1 In-dept analysis of the district needs

The following gives an overview of the district needs that were identified in the local IDPs and the core issues that were identified and analysed in more dept during the review process:

**Table 60: Sanitation Provision**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Eradication of bucket system on formal sites;</li> <li>▪ Upgrading of waste water treatment plant;</li> <li>▪ Upgrading the network capacity;</li> <li>▪ Capacity building for maintenance;</li> <li>▪ Awareness campaigns and sanitation;</li> <li>▪ Recycling of waste water.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Lack of proper sustainable sanitation systems;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Communities do not want to accept alternative systems to water borne sanitation due to a lack of knowledge on other sanitation systems;</li> </ul>

**Table 61: Bulk water supply**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪</li> <li>▪ Water bulk supply</li> <li>▪ Water purification</li> <li>▪ Feasibility of bulk water supply from Orange river.</li> <li>▪ Water quality control</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Insufficient bulk water supply for residential, industrial, agricultural and municipal use.</li> <li>▪ Poor quality of water</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Continuous in the demand of potable water</li> <li>▪ Lack of proper planning of water supply by local municipalities</li> <li>▪ Scarcity of water in the region</li> <li>▪ Lack of sustainable water supply source to many areas within the district</li> <li>▪ High demand for water and lack of water supply impacts on the quality of water</li> <li>▪ The poor quality of some water sources adds to quality of poor potable water</li> <li>▪ Some purification plants are in bad conditions.</li> </ul>

**Table62: Local Economic Development (LED), Tourism and Poverty Alleviation**

DISTRICT NEEDS	ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED	CONTRIBUTING FACTORS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Implementation of DGDS;</li> <li>◆ SMME promotion;</li> <li>◆ Attraction and retention of investors in the region;</li> <li>◆ Development of development corridors;</li> <li>◆ Value-adding to raw materials;</li> <li>◆ Agricultural products;</li> <li>◆ Mining;</li> <li>◆ Upgrading infrastructure (Railway lines);</li> <li>◆ Establishment of and support to emerging farmers;</li> <li>◆ Tourism development;               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Gariep dam</li> <li>➤ Vanderkloof dam</li> <li>➤ One stop filling stations, truck stops, etc.</li> <li>➤ Arts and crafts mancets</li> <li>➤ Explore agri-tourism</li> <li>➤ Guest houses and accommodation</li> <li>➤ Nature reserves, game farms and historical sites</li> <li>➤ Capacity building programmes for HDI's in tourism industry;</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Development of tourism routes identified in SDF.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Limited economic growth;</li> <li>▪ Diversification of agricultural sector;</li> <li>▪ High level of poverty and unemployment.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Limited value-adding to the district products due to lack of manufacturing industries;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Lack of investments in the region;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Few emerging farmers that can contribute to economic growth;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Lack of SMME promotion and development;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Ageing infrastructure in urban areas that can discourage investment;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>The full potential of tourism sector that has been fully exploited also contribute to low economic growth;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Lack of good security;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Lack of access to basic services;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>High level of unemployment due to few job opportunities;</b></li> <li>▪ <b>Disinvestment in the region.</b></li> </ul>

**Table 63: Housing**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Compile District Municipality housing plan and/or strategy;</li> <li>◆ Fast tracking implementation of Ouboks housing project (2 220 housing units) in Colesberg;</li> <li>◆ Facilitate land availability for new housing development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Slow delivery of housing in the region;</li> <li>◆ Development of informal settlement.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Limited surveyed and serviced land due to a lack of funding;</li> <li>◆ Lack of co-ordination of housing delivery;</li> <li>◆ Lack of capacity at district and local levels to plan for future housing development;</li> <li>◆ Insufficient funds for housing delivery.</li> </ul>

**Table 64: Roads, Streets, and Storm Water Management**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Maintenance and upgrading of access roads to economic and social facilities and linkage roads in the region;</li> <li>▪ Storm water management system throughout the region;</li> <li>▪ Upgrading and maintenance of streets.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Poor maintenance of roads.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Ageing or old equipment to maintain roads;</li> <li>▪ Insufficient funds and shortage of skilled Labourers;</li> <li>▪ Little or no planning for future development to secure funding for new developments.</li> </ul>

**Table 65: Health and HIV/AIDS**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Functional District Aids Council;</li> <li>◆ District Health facility;</li> <li>◆ Hospice for terminally ill, street children and disabled;</li> <li>◆ 24 hour clinics;</li> <li>◆ Voluntary testing and counseling centres;</li> <li>◆ Mobile clinics.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Partnership against HIV/AIDS;</li> <li>◆ Inadequate health facilities.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ No proper health infrastructure;</li> <li>◆ No functional District AIDS Council;</li> <li>◆ Lack of access to 24 hour health facilities;</li> <li>◆ Lack of access to mobile clinics;</li> <li>◆ Lack of trained medical professionals.</li> </ul>

**Table 66: Electricity**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Implementation of free basic electricity;</li> <li>◆ Access to electricity or alternative source of energy for all;</li> <li>◆ Undertake a desktop survey on alternative source of energy;</li> <li>◆ Upgrading and maintenance of electricity network;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Lack of access to electricity to all.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Poor maintenance and upgrading of electrical network;</li> <li>◆ Slow implementation of free basic electricity;</li> <li>◆ Very few new households connectios.</li> </ul>

**Table 67: Education, Youth and Development**

<b>District Needs</b>	<b>Issues To Be Addressed</b>	<b>Contributing Factors</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Higher learning institutions;</li> <li>◆ Youth skills development programmes;</li> <li>◆ Life skills and ICT development centres;</li> <li>◆ Equipment of the multi-purpose centre in De Aar;</li> <li>◆ Day care centre.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Limited or no access to higher learner institutions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Lack of IT skills in the region;</li> <li>◆ Poor qualification and skills of the community limit their entry to institutions of higher learning;</li> <li>◆ Very few training facilities exist in the region;</li> <li>◆ Lack of funds to learners;</li> <li>◆ Very few day care centres exist in the region.</li> </ul>

**Table 68: Land and Land Reform**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Access to farm land for emerging farmers;</li> <li>◆ Land availability for residential development and transfer of ownership;</li> <li>◆ District Land Committee;</li> <li>◆ Serviced land to be made available for development;</li> <li>◆ Compilation of a land audit.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Insufficient land available for development</li> <li>◆ Land for development is not properly serviced</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Lack of proper planning;</li> <li>◆ Lack of a land audit;</li> <li>◆ Lack of proper land use management at local municipal level;</li> <li>◆ Lack of funding at local level to install infrastructure to areas made available for development.</li> </ul>

**Table 69: Crime, Security and Disaster Management**



<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Address family and child abuse;</li> <li>◆ Establish and promote victim support centre;</li> <li>◆ Forming crime prevention partnerships with all relevant stakeholders;</li> <li>◆ Effective CPF's;</li> <li>◆ Review the existing disaster management plan;</li> <li>◆ Appointment of more staff in Disaster management Unit;</li> <li>◆ Building capacity of disaster management officers.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ High level of family and child abuse;</li> <li>◆ High level of alcohol abuse.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Domestic violence;</li> <li>◆ Women and child abuse;</li> <li>◆ Lack of funding to develop institutional capacity of the disaster management unit;</li> <li>◆ Lack of equipment for disaster management.</li> </ul>

**Table 70: Sport and Recreation**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Upgrading of sport facilities;</li> <li>◆ Promotion of sport activities;</li> <li>◆ Upgrading of parks;</li> <li>◆ Functional district sport council.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Poor sport and recreational facilities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Lack of upgrading of sport facilities in the region</li> </ul>

**Table 71: Environmental and Waste Management**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Implementation of the Integrated Environmental Management Programme;</li> <li>◆ Address roaming of livestock in urban areas;</li> <li>◆ Appointment of Environmental Health Officers;</li> <li>◆ Monitoring and co-ordination of waste sites;</li> <li>◆ Building capacity of Environmental Health Practitioners.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Poor management of both urban and rural environments;</li> <li>◆ Poor management of waste in urban areas.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ The lack of capacity and financial resources;</li> <li>◆ Lack of equipment due to lack of funding;</li> <li>◆ Lack of capacity of District Municipality to effectively undertake this function;</li> <li>◆ Lack of policies and by-laws</li> </ul>

**Table 72: Cemeteries**

<b>DISTRICT NEEDS</b>	<b>ISSUES TO BE ADDRESSED</b>	<b>CONTRIBUTING FACTORS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Assist local municipalities with maintenance and upgrading of cemeteries;</li> <li>◆ Facilitate release of land for new extensions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Upgrading of cemeteries;</li> <li>◆ Extension of cemeteries.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◆ Possible effects of HIV/AIDS</li> </ul>

## 2.42 Municipality-wide prioritised needs

The analysis of the local IDP's revealed that there are a wide range of prioritised needs in each municipal area. The needs that were identified and prioritised by municipalities in collaboration with their representative forums are as follows.

**Table 73: Prioritised needs by local municipalities**

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
Siyathemba Prieska	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Stormwater drainage</li> <li>• One Stop centre</li> <li>• Legal advice centre</li> <li>• Tourist centre (information office)</li> <li>• Technical school</li> <li>• Drive in cinema</li> <li>• Alpha library</li> <li>• Upgrading of present infrastructure</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dry and packaging of fruit and vegetables</li> <li>• Dry cleaners</li> <li>• Metro branch</li> <li>• Leather tannery</li> <li>• Guest houses and coffee shops</li> <li>• Recreational facilities</li> <li>• Upgrading of clinic</li> <li>• Transhex mine LED</li> <li>• Power outlet for after hours sales of electricity</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Access to government services</li> <li>• Stormwater drainage</li> <li>• Health services</li> <li>• HIV/ AIDS</li> <li>• One Stop service centre</li> <li>• Maintenance of present services within the municipal area</li> <li>• Land</li> <li>• Economic development</li> <li>• Sports and recreational facilities</li> <li>• Illiteracy</li> <li>• High mast lighting</li> <li>• Public transport to service municipal area.</li> </ul>
<b>Siyancuma</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ward One</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Health</li> <li>• Employment</li> <li>• Housing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Agricultural facilities</li> <li>• Sports</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Water and sanitation</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ward Two</li>   <li>• Ward Three</li>   <li>• Ward Four</li>   <li>• Ward Five</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Health</li> <li>• Roads</li> <li>• Water</li> <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Houses</li>   <li>• Job creation</li> <li>• Health services</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Skills development centre (14-35 youth)</li>   <li>• Employment</li> <li>• HIV/IADS</li>   <li>• Employment</li> <li>• Dusty roads</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Basic services</li> <li>• Education</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>facilities and recreational centre</li> <li>• Projects and job creation</li> <li>• Schools and crèches</li>   <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Roads</li> <li>• Day care centre</li> <li>• Sports facilities</li> <li>• Information centre and library</li>   <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Recreation centre</li> <li>• Removing of cattle in the area</li> <li>• HIV/ AIDS</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Health</li> <li>• Roads</li> <li>• Sports and creational facilities</li> <li>• Agricultural facilities</li> <li>• Water and sanitation</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• LED</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Water and sanitation</li> <li>• Roads</li> <li>• Day care centres</li> <li>• LED</li> <li>• Information centre and library</li> <li>• Sport facilities</li> <li>• Employment and poverty alliviation</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Education and youth development</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
<b>Thembelihle</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of the N12 as a transport facility</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The widening of bridges over the road</li> <li>Upgrading of roads</li> <li>Entrance into towns</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fencing of the road reserves</li> <li>Reduction of speed through the build-up areas.</li> <li>Improved road sign</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Improvement of urban roads and stormwater</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of stormwater and roads in all urban areas, with special reference to the lower income areas, provision of new roads to future development areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of the main entrance road to Deetlefsville in Strydenburg</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provision of facilities within the rural areas for the inhabitants</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Link roads]</li> <li>Sewer and water facilities</li> <li>Electricity</li> <li>Housing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schools</li> <li>Health services</li> <li>Safety and security</li> <li>Sport facilities</li> <li>Community hall</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Institutional building</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Structuring human resources</li> <li>A well organised and effective administrative system</li> <li>An effective financial system which include the budget</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinated services delivery to communities</li> <li>Functional infrastructure</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
				e.g. buildings and equipment
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Community development</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poverty relief and job creation</li> <li>Capacity building</li> <li>Empowerment</li> <li>Sport and recreational facilities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Community halls</li> <li>Cemeteries</li> <li>Health and emergency services</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provision of improved sewer facilities.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provision of proper internal sewer in the existing informal areas</li> <li>Phasing out of bucket and tank system</li> <li>Upgrading of the main sewer purification plants</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Installation of re-use of purified water</li> <li>Sanitation for the small holdings to be developed in Hopetown</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading and provision of proper electrical facilities</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of the Strydenburg and Hopetown distribution system</li> <li>Supply of equipment to do maintenance with.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Internal electrification of informal erven and small holdings to be developed.</li> <li>Installation of pre-paid meters</li> <li>Provision of area lights</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading, provision and</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of the water quality</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading of</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
	maintenance of water facilities		and short term bulk resources for Strydenburg <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Storage and bulk water supply to Hopetown and Strydenburg</li> <li>• Supply all informal erven with metered water</li> </ul>	the bulk water supply system and purification thereof. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of water to small holdings to be developed.</li> <li>• Provision of water to the municipal grazing camps.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgraded refuse removal system</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of a new dumping site at improved refuse removal in Hopetov and Strydenburg</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper fire brigade system</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of fire brigade system</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgraded health services</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of local municipalities</li> <li>• Upgrading of the ambulance services</li> <li>• Paramedics to be available for accidents on the N12</li> <li>• Upgrading of mobile clinic services.</li> <li>• Public to be made health aware.</li> <li>• Increased birth control</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clinics to cater for a wide spectrum of services</li> <li>• Health facilities for the disabled</li> <li>• Better trained personnel.</li> <li>• Centre to care for</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
				<p>AIDS people (Hospice).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Need for direction signs to the clinics.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improved social life and condition.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Care for the orphans</li> <li>• Care for the street children</li> <li>• Improved security services</li> <li>• Social distrust amongst the communities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Address abuse of women</li> <li>• A better disciplined youth</li> <li>• Alcohol and drug abuse.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sports facilities</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of sport facilities for the disabled and a multi-purpose sport centre</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improved environmental appearance of the town.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor state of residential parks.</li> <li>• Dirty environment, etc.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor maintenance on parks.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Formalization of informal settlement in Hopetown</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More formal houses and erven</li> <li>• Provide self help erven.</li> <li>• Develop small holdings</li> <li>• Church sites and business erven.</li> <li>• More RDP houses.</li> <li>• Upgrading of two room houses in Deetlefsville</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Town houses in lower income areas</li> <li>• Housing for farm workers</li> <li>• Improved professional</li> </ul>



Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs	
				<p>planning policies for the future.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of single rooms in Steynville</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improved educational facilities</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of ABET education</li> <li>• Provision of hostel in Hopetown</li> <li>• School facilities in town and farms</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of day care centres.</li> <li>• Provide library facilities</li> </ul>
<b>Ubuntu</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improved institutional facilities</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More central municipal offices</li> <li>• Improved municipal facilities to provide a better service</li> <li>• Improved telephone services to the rural area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of more post boxes.</li> <li>• One-Stop centre</li> <li>• Professional future planning to be implemented</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Infrastructure and housing</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of basic services like: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Water</li> <li>○ Sanitation</li> <li>○ Transport</li> <li>○ Electricity</li> <li>○ Telecommunication</li> <li>○ Housing</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spatial development and land reform</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More land for use by the emerging farmers</li> <li>• Optimal use of the commonage</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Environment</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compilation and implementation comprehensive environmental management plan to protect the region and to ensure sustainable development</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Economic sector</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Development of agricultural sector</li> <li>• Development of tourism sector</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Training and capacity building of every farmer.</li> <li>• Maintenance of existing infrastructure</li> <li>• Compilation of an Integrated Development Plan</li> <li>• Cooperation between emerging and commercial farmers</li> <li>• Compilation of the Apollo Project.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poverty relief and empowerment</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provision of basic services like sanitation and domestic water</li> <li>• Job creation</li> </ul>
<p><b>Umsobomvu</b></p> <p><i>WARD 1</i></p> <p><i>Norvalspont</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Servicing of 105 sites and Building of houses</li> <li>• Upgrading of the current sewerage system</li> <li>• Building of a Library</li> <li>• Fencing of dumping sites</li> <li>• Parks for children to play</li> <li>• Upgrading of the road from Colesberg to Norvalspont</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LED, tourism and poverty alleviation</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Bulk water</li> <li>• Roads, streets and storm water management</li> <li>• Health and HIV/AIDS</li> <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Education and youth development</li> <li>• Land and land reform</li> <li>• Crime and security</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
<p><b>WARD 2</b> <b>Noupoort</b></p> <p><b>WARD 3</b> <b>Colesberg</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrading of sport complex</li> <li>• School for children with disability</li> <li>• Permanently employment of people.</li> <li>• Opening of an office by Social Development</li> <li>• Building of houses</li> <li>• Street lights</li> <li>• Removal of Asbestos School in Noupoort</li> <li>• Paving of Streets</li> <li>• Departmental of labour and Home Affairs satellite offices</li> <li>• Police station in Kwazamxolo and EurekaVille</li> <li>• Library in Kwazamxolo</li> <li>• Erection of signs at dumping sites</li> <li>• Renovation of dilapidating RDP Houses</li> <li>• Public toilets at town</li> <li>• Electrification of houses in Ou Boks</li> <li>• Vendor in Ouboks</li> <li>• Building of an Institution of higher learning as</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disaster management</li> <li>• Sport and recreation</li> <li>• Environment and waste management</li> <li>• Cemeteries</li> <li>• Institutional development</li> <li>• Governance</li> <li>• Social upliftment</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
	<p>promised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Street lights in all dark areas of this ward</li> <li>• Police station (mobile)</li> <li>• Paving of roads</li> <li>• Erection of new grave sites</li> <li>• Proper maintenance of road to the cemeteries</li> <li>• Building of clinic; Library;Day Care Centre;Primary school at Ou boks</li> <li>• Fly over at R58 to Novalspont</li> <li>• Geysers for all houses</li> <li>• Parks for children in Bongweni and Ouboks</li> <li>• Building of a crossing bridge to the clinic in Kuyasa (Bongweni)</li> <li>• Eradication of Bucket System</li> <li>• Khayelitsha water challenges to be address</li> <li>• VIP toilets be eradicated for water born system</li>   <li>• Cleaning and maintenance of heritage sites</li> </ul>	



Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
	projects <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Opening of a gymnasium</li> <li>• Building of skills development Centre for youth</li> <li>• Truck stop for trucks be build</li> <li>• Access points for disabled people at all Government Departments especially at Municipality</li> <li>• Building of an institutions of higher learning in Colesberg.</li> </ul>	
<b>Kareeberg</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Carnavon</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Parks</li> <li>• Youth Centre</li> <li>• Taxi Rank</li> <li>• Ablution Facilities</li> <li>• Municipality Regulations in terms of taxi's</li> <li>• Mark streets</li> <li>• Sports ground</li> <li>• Cemetery</li> <li>• Community Hall</li> <li>• Prepaid electricity</li> <li>• Fire extinguish-Facilities-Fire brigade-trucks</li> <li>• Paved streets of Bonteheuwel</li> <li>• Upgrading of Eskom-</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water</li> <li>• Sewer system</li> <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Solid waste removal</li> <li>• Educational</li> <li>• Land for farming</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Roads and stormwater</li> <li>• Cemetery</li> <li>• Fire station and equipment</li> <li>• Recreation</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
	<p>Transformers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water leakages(B/h15)</li> <li>• Early childhood development (Crèche)</li> <li>• Business Centrum: Training &amp; Premises</li> <li>• Maintenance of Prov. road through town</li> <li>• SKA :Development &amp;</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> <li>• Land availability</li> <li>• Sustainable job opportunities</li> <li>• Associated doctors</li> <li>• Service of health inspectors</li> <li>• Waste Recycling project and illegal dumping</li> <li>• Stray dogs</li> <li>• Discretion Of job applications</li> <li>• Foot passage-B/H/Riverside</li> <li>• Pub toilets</li> <li>• Clinic: in Town Area</li> <li>• Wood &amp;Paraffin: De Buldt, Housing-Interims</li> <li>• Projects Managers</li> <li>• Schietfontein –Roads</li> <li>• Rotation of Sub –contractors opportunities</li> <li>• Speed hums-Williston&amp; Victoria-Wes</li> <li>• Transport: Deceased persons</li> </ul>	

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vosburg</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ambulance</li> <li>• Transport for schools</li> <li>• Rehabilitations Centre</li> <li>• Training for counselors</li> <li>• Removal of garden weeds</li>   <li>• Roads-Road of farms</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Serviced sites</li> <li>• Land bill</li> <li>• Speed hums</li> <li>• Fines</li> <li>• Dumping sites/Landfills</li> <li>• Traffic Officers</li> <li>• Job creation</li> <li>• Water reticulation</li> <li>• Ground dam</li> <li>• Electricity selling points (vendor systems)</li> <li>• Swimming pool</li> <li>• Transformers</li> <li>• Youth Centre</li> <li>• Community development workers</li> <li>• Meetings</li> <li>• Socio-economic transformation</li> <li>• Oxidation pounds-Security officers</li> <li>• Organizational structure</li> </ul>	



Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Christmas decorations</li> <li>• Cemetery</li> <li>• Dept. Education Additional grade</li> <li>• Satellite offices</li> <li>• Fire brigade</li> <li>• Name changing of streets</li> <li>• Portable toilets</li> <li>• Additional Electricity Access points</li> <li>• Water trucks</li> <li>• Paving of streets</li> <li>• Agriculture( youth)</li> <li>• Upgrading of grass and sports facilities</li> <li>• Drivers licenses</li> <li>• Lightning</li> <li>• Training of electricians</li> <li>• Feedback on requests</li> <li>• General workers (street)</li> <li>• Brick producing projects</li> <li>• Extinguishers</li> <li>• Disaster management</li> <li>• Maintenances of national roads</li> <li>• Credit control</li>   <li>• Housing</li> </ul>	

Municipality	Needs	Prioritised Needs
<b>Van Wyksvlei</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Empty Serviced Sites/erven</li> <li>• Business sites/erven</li> <li>• Tarring roads-Carnarvon via Vanwyksvlei to Copperton</li> <li>• Bulk water-Copperton</li> <li>• Commonage land</li> <li>• Sanitation Facilities</li> <li>• Youth Centre</li> <li>• Cemetery/Graveyard, Extensions sand Sanitation</li> <li>• Upgrading of sports Facilities</li> <li>• Solar geyser project</li> <li>• Parks</li> <li>• Fire brigade</li> <li>• Upgrading of streets</li> <li>• Public ablution Facilities</li> <li>• Railway services</li> <li>• Ambulance services</li> <li>• JoJo water tanks for new housing projects</li> <li>• Environmental Health Officer</li> <li>• Vanwyksvlei youth unemployment</li> <li>• Social worker</li> <li>• Protectors</li> <li>• Storm water</li> <li>• Sustainable job creation</li> </ul>	

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Services</li> <li>• Administrative facilities</li> <li>• Tarring of the road between Vosburg and Britstown and Vosburg and Carnavon</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Electricity</li> <li>• Land for farming-</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Solid waste disposal</li> <li>• Roads, stormwater and transport</li> </ul>
<p><b><i>Emthanjeni Ward 1</i></b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lighting behind Louisville</li> <li>• Tarring of roads Louisville</li> <li>• Poor lighting in Sunrise</li> <li>• Meter readers not performing</li> <li>• Upgrade park-Louisville</li> <li>• Refuse containers required</li> <li>• Agricultural land required</li> <li>• Upgrade of Merino Sports grounds</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unemployment in Sunrise</li> <li>• Area dirty-refuse</li> <li>• Network coverage poor in Montana</li> <li>• Storm water problems</li> <li>• Town image to be improved</li> <li>• Police visibility</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Development</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> <li>• Electricity improvements</li> <li>• Youth Development</li> <li>• Availability of agricultural land</li> <li>• Infrastructure development (roads)</li> <li>• Communication network</li> <li>• Municipal Branding</li> <li>• Environmental issues</li> <li>• Sports and recreation</li> <li>• International Relations</li> <li>• Informal Sector</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
		required-mobile units <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Request watering of trees</li> <li>• Incomplete cemetery</li> <li>• Poor condition of house in Kareeville</li> <li>• Replacement of streetlights in Louisville</li> <li>• Investigate the influx of foreigners</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Safety and Security</li> </ul>
<b>Ward2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Unemployment</li> <li>• Removal of asbestos roofs-investigation</li> <li>• Upgrading of roads</li> <li>• Problem with RDP house being converted to shops by foreigners</li> <li>• No tariff increase requested</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improve operation of ward committees</li> <li>• Refurbishment of houses</li> <li>• Drainage problems</li> <li>• Poor service delivery</li> <li>• Health inspector to visit businesses</li> <li>• Local contractors to</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Development</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Basic service delivery</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> <li>• Youth Development</li> <li>• Environmental Health</li> <li>• Storm water drainage</li> <li>• International Relations</li> <li>• Informal Sector</li> <li>• Financial Management</li> <li>• Good Governance</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
		be uses for construction	
<b>Ward 3</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Developemnt</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Skills Development</li> <li>• Improve infrastructure</li> <li>• Improve electricity supply and roads</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> <li>• SMME developement</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disaster management</li> <li>• Arts and Culture</li> <li>• Youth development</li> <li>• Reduce HIV/AIDS</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic development</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Imprve infrastructure</li> <li>• Skills Developemnt</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> <li>• SMME Development</li> <li>• Youth Development</li> <li>• Tourism Developemnt</li> <li>• Reduce HIV/AIDS</li> </ul>
<b>Ward 4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None removal of refuse in Malay camp</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Recreation facilities</li> <li>• Selling of houses in Barcelona the renting in Malay camp</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Youth development</li> <li>• Proper management of toilet paper project</li> <li>• Improve electricity supply and roads</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Development</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Job opportunities</li> <li>• Youth Development</li> <li>• Sports and recreation</li> <li>• Basic Service delivery</li> <li>• Municipal Branding</li> </ul>
<b>Ward 5</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transfer of Ttransnet to properties not in use</li> <li>• RDP Housing</li> <li>• Unemployment</li> <li>• Improve infrastructure</li> <li>• Removal of Transnet dilapidated houses</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Misuse of municipal vehicles</li> <li>• Health inspector to visit businesses</li> <li>• Upgrade of towns image</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Development</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Improve infrastucture</li> <li>• Unemployment</li> <li>• SMEE Development</li> <li>• Youth Developmentt</li> <li>• Inter governmental relations</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Street name painting</li> <li>• Toilets behing De Aar West Swimming pool</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Curb illegal removal of trees</li> <li>• Youth developent</li> <li>• New cemetery required</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Environmental Health</li> </ul>
<b>Ward 6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greening of community</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Resealing of roads</li> <li>• Fixing road in front of bank(Darling Street)</li> <li>• Fencing N1 area to curb illegal littering</li> <li>• Usage of local contractors and labourers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refuse bin at park</li> <li>• Paving of Kwezi to town pathways</li> <li>• Youth development</li> <li>• Upgrading of commonage land</li> <li>• Revitalization of CBD</li> <li>• Installation of road signs (e.g. stop)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Development</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> <li>• Improve infrastructure</li> <li>• Availability of agriculture land</li> <li>• Youth Development</li> <li>• Community Services</li> <li>• Basic Services</li> <li>• Traffic Management</li> </ul>
<b>Ward 7</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water leakege at Riemvasmaak</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Unemployment</li> <li>• Slow removal of buckets</li> <li>• Improve Road infrastucture</li> <li>• Constuction of shopping complex</li> <li>• Poor supply of electricity from vendors</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upgrade of community halls</li> <li>• Payment for servises linked to job creation</li> <li>• Removal of garden refuse not done</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Economic Development</li> <li>• Housing</li> <li>• Provision of infrastructure</li> <li>• Unemployment</li> <li>• SMME development</li> <li>• Traffic management</li> <li>• Youth developemnt</li> <li>• Electricity supply</li> </ul>

Municipality	Needs		Prioritised Needs
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VIP toilets are problematic</li> <li>• Cemetery rates are expensive look at new cemetery</li> </ul>	<p>equitably</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removal of threatening trees assesnsial</li> <li>• Sewage water running in streets</li> <li>• Investors should be lured to invest along the N12</li> <li>• Improve swimming pool and clearing the area</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Financial management</li> <li>• Basic Services Delivery</li> <li>• Sanitation</li> </ul>

### 2.42.1 Summary of prioritized needs

The inputs from IDP forum meetings can be seen as a vital public participation mechanism that will ensure that community needs are prioritized and included in the IDP. The major areas identified by the communities were the following:

Housing, infrastructure development, youth development, SMME development, recreational facilities, education, employment creation, service delivery and storm water drainage. Out of this, key performance areas must be formalized to ensure that municipalities deliver on their mandates. Priorities must be translated into objectives. Once the municipalities know where they want to go and what needs to be achieved to realize the vision it must then develop strategies.

### 2.43 Potentials

Whilst the problems noted above exist there are some potentials which, if properly exploited, will assist in the development of the district. The following are the potentials that have been identified in this plan.

- **Physical**

- The existence of the Orange River and the three dams which are situated on the borders can provide the district with a potential for recreational facilities.
- The waterbodies can be developed to be park/ recreation areas and will thus enhance the environmental condition of these areas.
- Geo-political location between some economic powerhouses of South Africa, that is, Western Cape, Free State and Gauteng Provinces and its excellent transport infrastructure.
- The perennial Orange and Vaal rivers that run through the district have potential for producing hydro electricity and growing of numerous agricultural products such as maize, grapes, soya beans, wheat, etc.

- **Demographic**

- The younger age group can be an opportunity in the development process of the district as it will provide labour reserve for various economic activities.

- **Social**

- The basic infrastructure and land for recreational facilities is already in existence and only upgrading is required in many instances.
- Some of the existing schools can be upgraded to become secondary/ high schools

- **Infrastructure**

- Water supply within most of the towns is not a major problem, and any future plan to increase water supply for domestic, commercial and industrial uses can easily be accommodated with the system.
- Electricity supply and telecommunication infrastructure for development are available and will stimulate economic growth if fully developed.
- Although De Aar railway station is a minor one on the national railway network, its input in regional development is essential because it is used, as indicated earlier, for a large amount of freight traffic between e.g. Cape Town and Johannesburg. For this particular reason the potential of the station will stimulate economic growth in the region if the station is fully rehabilitated.



- **Economic**

- 
- Job creation opportunities exist given the existence of the N1 and N12 routes if the combinations of capital and labour intensive investments are used for rehabilitating the roads.
- Apart from the vast arable land for livestock farming there are few natural resources which might have potential as a base for regional development. One of these could be utilisation of various fascinating tourist attractions that exist throughout the district.
- Mining – Diamonds, tiger’s eye and uranium.
- Potential to capitalise on targeted spill over from the major development initiatives planned for the district such as Gariiep local economic development. SKA/KAT and renewal energy project/programme.
- Relatively unspoilt natural environment which is one of the district’s major assets, that is, game reserves, heritage sites and battle fields and other natural farming.
- A semi-arid climate positions is as an all year round tourism destination.

#### **2.44 Comparative and competitive advantages**

**The identified comparative and competitive advantages of the district are:**

- Existence of Orange and Vaal rivers;
- Abundance of semi-precious stone tigger’s eye;
- Diamonds, uranium and gas deposits;
- Good physical infrastructure;
- Geo-politication position of the region;
- Vast arable land;
- Vanderkloof and Gariiep dams;
- Agro-processing industry;
- Tourism attractions; and
- Railway hub in De Aar.

#### **2.45 Conclusion**

The analysis phase of this plan has outlined how the present state of affairs of the district is. These developmental issues that range from population, physical, land uses, social, infrastructure to economic issues will help in the formulation of goals, development objectives, strategies and projects which will guide the social, economic and spatial developments in the district.

## CHAPTER 3: DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES

### 3. Development strategies

In terms of IDP guide pack 3; this is a phase in the IDP process where a municipality will have to arrive at the critical decisions on its destination and on the most appropriate ways to arrive there. It is the phase in which the basic decisions on the future direction of the municipality have to be made.

The Municipal Systems Act says that this is the phase where the municipality is supposed to determine:

- A vision for the long-term development;
- The Council's development priorities and objectives; and
- The Council's development strategies for each priority issue.

**Against this background the District Municipality has developed its vision, development priorities, objectives and strategies with specific outcomes and outputs for the 2014/15 financial year. They are informed by the development goals/agendas of these policy documents:**

- Constitution
- Constitutional mandates
- National Development Plan
- Millenium development goals;
- National Spatial Development Perspective;
- Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy;
- Local Government Turn-Around Strategy;
- Strategic Plan of the District Municipality;
- Five year Local Government Strategic Agenda;
- Key Performance Areas of the municipality.
- District Growth and Development Strategy
- Solar/Wind Energy projects
- Infrastructure Development Plan
- State of the National Address
- State of the Province Address

**Table 74: Policy documents**

<b>Policy/Document</b>	<b>Development goals / Agendas</b>
<b>Constitution</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provision of basic services</li> <li>▪ Creation of jobs</li> <li>▪ Promoting democracy and accountability</li> <li>▪ Eradication of poverty</li> </ul>
<b>Millenium development goals</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Eradication extreme hunger and poverty</li> <li>▪ Achieve universal primary education</li> <li>▪ Promote gender equality and empower women</li> <li>▪ Reduce child mortality</li> <li>▪ Improve maternal health</li> <li>▪ Combat HIV/AIDS and other deseases</li> <li>▪ Ensure environmental sustainability</li> <li>▪ Develop a global partnership for development</li> </ul>
<b>National Spatial Development Perspective</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Rapid economic growth that is sustainable and inclusive is a prerequisite for the achievement of other policy objectives, amongst which poverty alleviation is key;</li> <li>▪ The constitutional obligation to provide basic service to all citizens wherever they reside;</li> <li>▪ Government spending on fixed investment should be focused on localities of economic growth and/or economic potential in order to gear up private sector investment, stimulate sustainable economic activities and create long term employment opportunities;</li> <li>▪ Effort to address social inequalities should focus on people not places; and</li> <li>▪ In order to overcome the spatial distortions of apartheid future settlement and economic development opportunities should be channelled to activity corridors and nodes that are adjacent to or link the main growth centres. Infrastructure investment should primarily support localities that will become major growth nodes.</li> </ul>
<b>Northern Cape Provincial Growth and Development Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ To maintain an average annual economic growth rate of between 4% and 6%;</li> <li>▪ To halve the unemployment rate bt 2014;</li> <li>▪ To reduce the number of households living in poverty by 5% per annum;</li> <li>▪ To improve the literacy rate by 50% by 2014;</li> <li>▪ To reduce infant mortality by two thirds by 2014;</li> <li>▪ To reduce maternal mortality by two thirds by 2014;</li> <li>▪ To provide shelter for all by 2014;</li> <li>▪ To provide clean water to all by 2009;</li> <li>▪ To provide access to adequate sanitation to all by 2009;</li> <li>▪ To reduce crime by 10% by 2014;</li> <li>▪ To stabilize the prevalence rate of HIV and AIDS an begin the reverse by 2014;</li> <li>▪ To redistribute 30% of productive agricultural land to PDI's by 2015;</li> <li>▪ To conserve and protect 6,5% of our valuable biodiversity by 2014; and</li> <li>▪ To provide adequate infrastructure for economic growth and development by 2014.</li> </ul>
<b>District Growth and Development Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ To achieve an average annual economic growth rate of between 2% - 4%.</li> <li>▪ To reduce poverty by 50% by 2014.</li> <li>▪ To eradicate the bucket system by 2010.</li> <li>▪ To reduce crime by 10% by 2010</li> <li>▪ To decrease the illiteracy rate by half by 2014.</li> <li>▪ To reduce umemployment by 50% by 2014.</li> <li>▪ To reduce the prevalence rate of HIV/AIDS by 2014.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ To provide housing for all by 2014.</li> </ul>
<b>Local Government Turn-Around Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Meeting the basic needs of communities</li> <li>▪ Build clean, responsive and accountable local government</li> <li>▪ Improve functionality, performance and professionalism in municipalities</li> <li>▪ Improve National and Provincial Policy, support and oversight to local government.</li> </ul>
<b>Strategic plan of the District municipality</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Provision of basic services.</li> <li>▪ Municipal Transformation and Organizational Development.</li> <li>▪ Local Economic Development</li> <li>▪ Municipal Financial Viability and Transformation</li> <li>▪ Governance and Public Participation</li> </ul>
<b>Five year Local Government Strategic Agenda</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development</li> <li>▪ Basic Service Delivery</li> <li>▪ Local Economic Development</li> <li>▪ Municipal Financial Viability and Management</li> <li>▪ Good Governance and Public Participation</li> </ul>
<b>Performance Areas of the District Municipality</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Basic Service Delivery</li> <li>▪ Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development</li> <li>▪ Local Economic Development</li> <li>▪ Financial Viability and Management</li> <li>▪ Good Governance and Public Participation</li> </ul>
<b>State of the Nation Address</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Building South Africa</li> <li>▪ Job Creation</li> <li>▪ Expand infrastructure</li> <li>▪ Basic service delivery</li> <li>▪ Fighting crime</li> <li>▪ Women empowerment</li> <li>▪ Urban and rural development</li> <li>▪ Health care</li> </ul>
<b>State of the Province Address</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Creation of decent work and sustainable livelihoods</li> <li>▪ Education</li> <li>▪ Health</li> <li>▪ Crime and rural development</li> </ul>
<b>Solar/Wind Energy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Promoting green economy to mitigate the impacts of climate change on the environment</li> </ul>
<b>Infrastructure development plan</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Used for upgrading of existing infrastructure (e.g. Roads, Water and sewer) and for developing new ones as outlined in the SDF</li> </ul>
<b>NDP</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Creating jobs (11 mil jobs by 2030)</li> <li>▪ Fight corruption</li> <li>▪ Expand infrastructure</li> <li>▪ Urban and rural development</li> <li>▪ Provide quality health care</li> <li>▪ Transformation and unity</li> <li>▪ Education and training</li> <li>▪ Build a capable state</li> </ul>

### **3.1 Development Priorities**

- Water and sanitation
- Bulk water supply
- LED, tourism and poverty alleviation
- Housing
- Roads, streets and storm water management
- Health and HIV/Aids
- Electricity
- Education and Youth Development
- Land and land reform
- Crime and security, including disaster management
- Sport and recreation
- Environmental and waste management
- Rural development
- Municipal support community participation transport
- Cemeteries

#### **Realization of the development priorities**

**Inorder to realize these development priorities the following will be undertaken by council:**

- Addressing poverty through community upliftment and empowerment of both urban and rural areas.
- Diversification of the economic base and development of the tourism sector.
- Maintenance of main transport routes to ensure regional accessibility.
- Maintenance and upgrading of development standards in the urban and rural areas.
- Addressing service backlogs and the provision of basic services.
- The need for a hierarchy of settlements to assist in the focused of distribution of investment in infrastructure a community services.
- Increasing population densities in the urban settlements and rural nodes.
- Protection of cultural and environmental sensitive areas and creating an awareness of environmental issues.
- Pressure on social and community services resulting from backlogs in urban and rural areas which specifically affect vulnerable groups – women, children and the elderly.
- Welfare services to provide support in the AIDS epidemic.
- Provision of and implementation of social and welfare facilities and programmes in rural areas in nodal poin which are accessible to the larger concentrations for rural people.
- Optimising the tourism potential of the district to the benefit of urban and rural communities.
- Land reform and tenure options to be considered.
- Creating and maintaining institutional capacity to ensure effective and efficient service delivery.
- Local economic development to stimulate SMMEs contributing to the economic wealth of the region.

### **3.1.2 Development objectives and strategies**

#### **Objective: Spatial development**

To improve spatial structure and definition of urban functions within the jurisdiction of local municipalities and to improve access to opportunities in the urban areas as well as rural areas.

#### **Strategies**

**The following strategies and interventions are proposed in support of this objective:**

- Development of the hierarchy of nodes as proposed in the spatial development framework.
- Promoting investment along identified development corridors (N1, N10, N12 and Orange river corridor).
- Develop rural service centres in the proposed district nodes.
- Assist local municipalities in formalising emerging informal settlements in urban areas through housing development programmes/projects.
- Provision and upgrading of basic infrastructure to address backlogs, eg, housing.
- Develop a uniform land use management system.
- Support land reform projects and security of tenure.
- Promote a variety of housing typologies and densities to provide for all demand categories.

### **3.1.2 Poverty alleviation and gender equality**

**Objective:** To take the necessary steps to ensure the poverty alleviation, empowerment of women and socio-economic upliftment of urban and rural areas.

#### **Strategies**

- Formulate a social master plan and strategy
- Enable the socio-economic empowerment of communities in urban and rural areas.
- Provide accessible social facilities and markets.
- Support and provide structures to survival economy (e.g. intensive irrigation farming).
- Implement HIV/AIDS campaigns.

### **3.1.3 Local Economic Development (LED)**

**Objective:** To stimulate local economic development to reverse the current trends of decline and lack in diversity of the economy.

#### **Strategies**

- Economic empowerment of the population
- Stimulate the development of tourism
- Introducing incentives that attract investment
- Initiate economic development projects, eg, the Renewable energy.
- Establishing and promoting PPPs'
- Establishing cooperatives to maximise economic opportunities in the agricultural sector.
- Ensuring regular maintenance and upgrading of existing infrastructure.
- Upgrading of the existing railway stations and networks.

### **3.1.4 Environmental management**

**Objective:** To encourage the development of strategic tools to guide decision-making for environmental management and sustainable development.

#### **Strategies**

- Implementation of the integrated environmental management programme.
- Promote environmental awareness.
- Preserving and protecting the natural environment and applying conservation management.

### **3.1.5 Institutional development**

**Objective:** To promote institutional structures which are fully representative, participative and empowered to champion social and economic change through transparent and co-operative governance.

#### **Strategies**

- Capacitation and empowerment
- Enhance institutional capacity
- Ensure community participation and involvement.

### **3.1.6 Sanitation**

**Objectives: To provide acceptable sanitation for all**

#### **Strategies:**

To replace the existing bucket system with alternative and acceptable sanitation system on formal settlements.  
To replace the bucket system at all schools to ensure that they have access to improved sanitation system.

### **3.1.7 Bulk Water Supply**

**Objectives: To provide sufficient water in order to increase access to water supply in the region.**

#### **Strategies**

Solicit funds from financial institutions and sector departments for the implementation of the proposed Pixley ka Seme bulk water supply project.

Encourage the participation of private sector in the implementation of the proposed bulk water supply project.

### **3.1.7 Housing**

**Objective: To provide housing for all by 2016**

#### **Strategies:**

- Implementation of all housing projects in the region, including the 2 220 housing units in Colesberg.
- Building affordable housing units to increase access to housing in the region.
- Review of the current housing plan.
- Assist local municipalities with the formalization of informal settlements in all the urban areas.

**Table 75: SUMMARY OF DISTRICT PRIORITIES**

<b>Building institution</b>	<b>Economic development</b>	<b>Infrastructure</b>	<b>Social development</b>
<b>Capacity building</b>	<b>Tourism development</b>	<b>Assist local municipalities to address infrastructure backlogs</b>	<b>Land reform to address need for land distribution</b>
<b>Communications between stakeholders</b>	<b>Support agriculture development and emerging farmers</b>	<b>Compile outstanding district sector plans, eg, water, transport, air quality management plans.</b>	<b>Safety, security and crime</b>
<b>Marketing the district</b>	<b>Local economic development and SMMEs</b>		<b>Health services</b>
<b>Disaster management</b>	<b>Renewable energy</b>		<b>Facilities for sport, elderly and orphans</b>
<b>Building partnership with all stakeholders in community development</b>			

### **3.2 Key Performance Areas (KPA's)**

Key Performance Areas of the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality as identified in its 2013/14 strategic plan are as follows:

#### **Basic Service Delivery**

- To Plan, provide infrastructure and Services
- To Manage the Planning and Development Function of the District Municipality according to the IDP taking into cognisance the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- The Management of the Provincial Department of Transport Roads Function

#### **Municipal Transformation and Organisation Development**

- To establish a new organisational structure
- Implement a performance management system
- To adhere to the Municipality's employment equity plan
- To develop the Municipality's human resources
- To integrate and develop by-laws, policies and procedures
- To have a strategic Planning session
- Human Resource Management
- To improve the moral and team spirit
- Effective and efficient Disaster Management Unit
- Housing



### **Local Economic Development**

- Contribute to the effort of the relevant Line Departments to improve the safety and security of communities
- Contribute to the effort of the relevant Line Departments to reduce the spread and impact of HIV/ Aids in the municipal Area
- To promote local economic development in the Municipal area
- To create job opportunities
- To promote tourism in the District
- The promotion of the Provincial Tourism Master Plan
- Effective and efficient Environmental Health Unit

### **Municipal Financial Viability and Transformation**

- Recover the Budgeted Income
- Reduction of Debt
- To manage expenditure and income in accordance with the approved budget and MFMA

### **Good Governance and Public Participation**

- To promote a culture of open communication with all internal and external stakeholders
- To promote active community participation
- Programme of information sharing
- District IGR

### **3.3 Our Strategic Plan For 2013/14 Financial Year**

Informed by the key performance areas and the prevailing developmental challenges in the region, the Council has compiled its 2012/13 strategic plan. The plan identified a number of strategies on how the key performance areas will be executed. The strategies are shown below.

#### **From vision to effective action**

PkS DM hereby declares that we are on our pathway to our future, where we acknowledge that the character of our future will be determined by how well we execute our strategy. This informed by our **vision**; decided by our **mission**; and based on our **values**; and so we **manage & monitor** our progress – and through these tools our very being will so be tested

**Vision:** What we see as the future we will achieve by pursuing what we exist for

- **Mission:** What we exist for
- **Values:** Who we are
- **Strategy:** The above result in a clear plan of activities to be pursued to achieve the vision
- **Management & Monitoring Tool:** To measure and manage progress on these activities

**Therefore PKS DM will be providing a service to our communities and clients guided by the following:**

### 3.3.1 Vision

**“Pixley Ka Seme DM, PIONEERS of DEVELOPMENT, a HOME and FUTURE for all!!!”**

### 3.3.2 Mission

**The Pixley Ka Seme DM will achieve its vision *by*:**

- Using the integrated development planning process to create a home for all in our towns, villages and rural areas;
- Promoting economic growth that is shared across and within communities;
- Providing political and administrative leadership in the development planning process
- Ensuring that we get the sustainable delivery of basic services right;
- Mainstream integrated planning in the operations of our municipalities;
- Focusing on integrated planning as a means of building stronger communities and building bridges between communities;

### 3.4 Values

**PixleykaSeme is committed to promoting a set of values consistent with human qualities and professional excellence, aimed at serving the community and global society. These values are:**

- **Integrity;** Our organisation will be viewed by those, both within and without, as honest and upstanding
- **Excellence;** We are never satisfied with yesterday’s way of doing things and are always looking for new ways to do our work better, faster, smarter and we do it best always
- **Inspiring;** We will always seek to create an environment where others may learn, grow and be fulfilled and reach their full potential
- **Caring;**We will always be sincere and be truthful to ourselves and our clients. We will live for each other as a team.
- **Respect;** We will show respect, trust and loyalty to our colleagues and clients by dealing with them in an open and honest manner
- **Resourceful;** We shall use all our resources to demonstrate our capabilities and service excellence in order to stay relevant in our market place
- **Total Quality Management;** Everything we do will be to the best quality, we will put in place all systems aimed ensuring that
- **Commitment to the spirit of the African Renaissance;** Everything we that we will be done with the understanding that it for the good of just our South African Community but for the renewal of Africa at large.
- **Quality transformational leadership:** We will be exemplary at all times and strive to be good ambassadors of the organisation

### **3.5 Developmental SWOT Analysis**

During the IDP review process the following strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats were identified for the district in terms of its current development status and future potential. This is necessary as it informs the development strategies which will be adopted by the Council for the region. The following observations were made:

#### **Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats (SWOT) Analysis**

**Following the scan of our environment, we honed in on the environment and declare the following to be our SWOT Analysis:**

##### **3.5.1 Strengths**

- No disclaimer for past 10 years
- No financial misconduct for past 10 years
- 100% grants expenditure
- Adoption of IDP's timeously
- Municipalities have now credible IDP's
- Strong inter-sphere coordination
- Maximum participation of stakeholders in IDP process and/or municipal affairs.
- PMS and other systems in place and operational in most municipalities.
- Unity in the council and administration
- Policies are in place
- Project implementation ability
- Strong Political Leadership
- Relatively large financial reserves
- Economic development SKA
- Infrastructure development
- Skills development
- To be a central point coordinating development in the District
- An opportunity to attract investment in the District
- An opportunity to revise the powers and function of district municipality
- Increase the income of the municipality by performing the legislative functions of district municipality

##### **3.5.2 Weaknesses**

- Existing contractual agreements in light of the limited funds
- (Inability to sit) Audit Committee Meetings
- Not being able to be part of continuous training and conferences
- Expiring of Contract of One Auditor - October 2011
- Situation of Learners – Contracts ending October 2011
- Service Level Agreements with Local Municipalities ending
- Inability to render service within approved budget
- Training for Audit Committee members
- Shortage of Funds to address training needs of institution
- Need more vehicles in order to deliver services
- Upgrading/renovation of Disaster management Centre
- Increase the capacity of the housing inspectorate
- Poor organization management skills in local municipalities
- Lack of appropriate skills to formulate projects, cost of projects and prepare business plans
- Under staffing of some of the departments
- The vastness of the region makes service provision very costly.

- Mostly rural district
- Recreational facilities in the townships do not have basic services and infrastructure.
- A substantial number of the existing plots and/or houses needed to be serviced with basic services e.g. water.
- Refuse removal services do not exist in certain areas.
- Some households still rely on boreholes and natural sources as an alternative source of water to meet their water needs.
- Many water and sewerage reticulation facilities needed upgrading
- **3.5.3 Opportunities**
- Promotion of integrate planning and development
- Good relations with other political offices (MEC, Ministers etc.)
- Strong District Municipality that supports local municipalities
- Improved communication with the communities
- **3.5.4 Threats**
- Inability of the DM to meet SCM requirements
- Lack of Payment of subscriptions from municipalities
- Lack of support at local municipalities for services rendered by the DM
- Diminishing grants that inhibit service delivery
- Lack of Payment of subscriptions from municipalities
- Lack of support at local municipalities for services rendered by the DM
- Appointment of people with no relevant skills and experience compromises the integrity and professional capacity of the DM

### 3.6 Strategies as per key performance area for 2014/15

**Table 76: The following were identified as our Key Strategic Issues:**

Issue	Implication if not addressed or harnessed	Strategy
Promote integrated planning and development	Fragmented service delivery	Create a central forum for planners (IDP, LED etc.) in the district. This forum needs to explore issues beyond the normal basket of service of water and electricity.
	Competition for resources	Influence the municipal budgeting process to include planning related business
	Limited budget to implement plans	Use the institutional grants such FMG and MSIG to deal with planning related priorities as per the outcomes of the forum above.
Good relations with other political offices (MEC, Ministers etc.)	The programmes of the district municipality will lack the necessary support from both national and provincial government	Develop a programme of engagement between the mayor and the political leadership at both national and province
	There might be misalignment with regards to policy	Engage actively in the PIGF and other fora designed for improving relations
	The service delivery line might be retarded and the district might be in reactive mode towards programmes	Izimbizo issues shared with the political leadership at other spheres of government

Issue	Implication if not addressed or harnessed	Strategy
Strong District Municipality that supports local municipalities	The district municipality might become irrelevant	Commission a detailed study of the role of the district municipality and how they can remain relevant
	Local municipality might not be able to deliver services to communities	Develop a serious programme of strengthening municipality and how they can utilise the district to improve service delivery
	The overconcentration of capacity at district to add little value to local municipalities	The study on the role of the district should guide the process of how district resources can be best utilised for the benefit of locals
Improved communication with the communities	Communities will remain uninformed about local government in general	Strengthen the capacity of local municipalities to communicate with their stakeholders
	There will be disgruntled communities	Have over and above the normal Council meets the people, programmes that will aim to include communities in the affairs of council such as mock councils etc.
	Tedious service delivery due to lack of or limited communication	Engage all communication stakeholders on availing the necessary communications resources and tools in all local municipalities

Issue	Implication if not addressed or harnessed	Strategy
Inability of the DM to meet SCM requirements and as such limiting the DM from achieving a favourable audit outcome	Will not be able to meet the imperatives of operation clean audit	Engage the office of the Auditor General on exceptions and exclusions. Develop a strategy to address the shortcomings in the SCM process and report to council regularly on the measures put in place
	The district business confidence index will diminish	Engage in a process of business development that will ensure that the SCM issues are able to promote an effective business environment
	Communities and DM will be adrift	Engage the communities on the issues of the audit outcomes and present remedial measures through council
Lack of Payment of subscriptions from municipalities	Places a strain on district resources and ability to support local municipalities	Engage the political leadership of the local municipalities in an effort of ensuring that they buy into the process and at the same time ensure that they hold the administration accountable for the subscriptions
	Limits service delivery for DM programmes	District municipalities to develop a system of monitoring the support rendered to local municipalities and assess the outcomes

Issue	Implication if not addressed or harnessed	Strategy
Lack of support at local municipalities for services rendered by the DM	The outcomes of the DM support become compromised	Conduct a wholesale skills assessment of municipalities in the district and design a tailor made support strategy per local municipality
	The communities don't get the benefit of district support	Through the communication mechanisms engage the communities of the type and or quality of service they expect
Diminishing grants that inhibit service delivery	The inability to implement the objectives of council	Develop a planning process that ensures the municipality uses its resources (both financial and human) effectively and efficiently
	The DM might close its doors both from a legislative and practical service delivery perspective	Develop a system/strategy that will ensure that the district leverages more external funding, i.e. other grants such as the neighbourhood development grant etc.
Appointment of people with no relevant skills and experience compromises the integrity and professional capacity of the DM	Lack of service delivery and the necessary skills to sustain the current level of service	Develop a competency framework for local municipalities in line with the rural realities of the district and establish a district wide competency monitoring committee of councillors to monitor this process.



### 3.7 Strategic Objectives

**The following have been identified as our strategic objectives:**

- To promote integrated planning and development in order to eradicate fragmented service delivery by ensuring that the district creates a central forum for planners (IDP, LED etc.) that will focus on issues beyond the normal basket of service of water and electricity in the district.
- Improve the district planning capacity in an effort to ensure that district Influences the local municipal budgeting process in an effort to ensure uniform results and minimal competition for resources.
- To re-align the institutional grants such FMG and MSIG to deal with planning related priorities as per the outcomes of the central planning forum in order to ameliorate budgeting shortfalls.
- To improve the relations with other political offices by developing a programme of engagement between the mayor and the political leadership at both national and province in order to ensure the total realisation of council objectives
- To effectively engage in the PIGF and other related fora in order to ensure that there are improved relations and better compliance across the various spheres of government
- To ensure that the service delivery line is not retarded through the development of joint Izimbizo and at the same time ensure that the outcomes are shared with the political leadership at other spheres of government (Monitoring of Izimbizo outcomes and report on progress thereon)
- To have a strong District Municipality that supports local municipalities by commissioning a detailed study of the role of the district municipality and how it can remain relevant
- Develop an elaborate programme of strengthening local municipalities and how they can utilise the district municipality to improve service delivery
- To strengthen the capacity of local municipalities to communicate with their stakeholders and as such ensure the eradication of the lack of information of communities and ensure that they are informed about local government in general.
- To develop an over and above the communication programmes that will aim to include communities in the affairs of council such as mock councils in order to improve community confidence in local government.
- To engage the office of the Auditor General on exceptions and exclusions in order to address the shortcomings in the SCM process and report to council regularly on the measures put in place and at the same time ensure that the DM achieves a favourable audit outcome
- To engage in a process of business development and or growth that will ensure that the SCM issues are able to promote an effective business environment and at the same time increase the business confidence in the area
- To engage the communities on the issues of the audit outcomes and present remedial measures through council in an effort to ensure that the community has confidence in the affairs of councils across the district.
- To ameliorate the strain on DM resources by engaging the political leadership of the local municipalities in the non-payment of subscriptions to DM in an effort of ensuring that they buy into the process and at the same time ensure that they hold the administration accountable for the subscriptions
- To ensure that the DM support to local municipalities is effective by the district municipality developing a system of monitoring the support rendered to local municipalities and assess the outcomes
- Conduct a wholesale skills assessment of municipalities in the district and design a tailor made support strategy per local municipality in an effort to ensure that the local municipalities are able to support the district support at the municipalities
- To develop a system/strategy that will ensure that the district leverages more external funding, i.e. other grants such as the neighbourhood development grant etc. and as such ensure that the DM is less grant dependant.
- To develop a competency framework for local municipalities in line with the rural realities of the district and establish a district wide competency monitoring committee of councillors to

monitor this process in order to ensure that the right people are appointed in the correct positions.

**Table 77: Predetermined objectives**

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
RESPONSIVE, ACCOUNTABLE, EFFECTIVE AND EFFICIENT LOCAL GOVERNMENT	Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning and support	There should be granted more autonomy in respect of infrastructure and housing delivery	The district must ensure that the infrastructure development in the different local municipalities is properly facilitated with local role-players and as a housing agent that local Municipalities is more involved in the planning and implementation of the projects and programmes	That the district Municipality maintain and create forums and platforms within which the local municipalities can participate with regard to the planning and implementation of the infrastructure and housing programmes within which the district is assisting local municipalities	That the District maintain proper functioning forums for the Local Municipalities to participate in planning and implementation of programmes and project in specific localities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IDP forum</li> <li>• EPWP forum</li> <li>• Energy forum</li> <li>• Water sector forum</li> <li>• Housing forums</li> <li>• LED forum</li> </ul>	30 June 2014	Shared Services and Infrastructure, Development and Housing

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
		We should design a much focused intervention that is limited to producing IDPs that are simplified to focus on planning for the delivery of a set of 10 critical municipal services.	The District must facilitate and assist local municipalities in simplifying their IDP documents to make the Documents more user friendly	That the District Municipality facilitate and assist the local municipalities in simplifying their IDPs	Simplified and summarized IDP adopted by Council	30 June 2014	Municipal Manager/ Office of the Executive Mayor/ Shared Services
		IDP should also be supported by a simple revenue plan that will better manage costs and enhance the management of revenue.	To promote integrated planning and development in order to eradicate fragmented service delivery by the development of a sustainable revenue plan to enhance the financial viability of the institution	To develop a sustainable revenue plan	A developed and sustainable revenue plan adopted by Council	30 June 2014	Shared Services and Infrastructure, Development and Housing, Corporate Services , Finance

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
		Ensure that the critical posts of Municipal Manager, Town planner, Chief Financial Officer and Engineer/technical services are audited and filled by competent and suitably qualified individuals	Review of the organisational structure for proper alignment of functions	Review of the organisational structure	Reviewed and adopted organisational structure	31 December 2013	Corporate Services
		Ensure that the performance contract of the municipal manager should be concise and crisp, based on the 3 items above	The performance contract of the municipal manager should include the strategic development of the institution in transforming the institution into a performance driven authority	That the Municipal Manager include performance driven objectives in the performance agreements of the senior managers	That all performance agreements of the municipality be directly linked to SMART KPIs and signed by all Senior Managers	31 August 2013	Corporate Services
	Actions supportive of the human settlement outcomes	On spatial aspects to overcome the apartheid legacy, actions supportive of the human settlement outcomes need to	The municipality can assist the local municipalities in the spatial planning of human settlements	That the municipality facilitate the development of spatial development	That the District review its SDF by 31 December 2013 and assist and facilitate the review of all 8 local SDF's by 31	31 December 2014	Shared Services and Infrastructure, Development and Housing

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
		initiated such as increasing densities in metros and large towns, release of public land for low income and affordable housing to support the delivery of 400 000 housing units on “well located land” with a 30 to 45 minute journey to work and services and using less than 8% of disposable income for transport by 2014.		Frameworks for local municipalities in the compilation and review of the SDF’s of the local municipalities as well as on district level	December 2014 Compilation of Housing Sector plans for DM and 8 LM’s		
		Other targets closely related to human settlements is supporting the expansion of the national upgrading support programme in 45 priority municipalities to facilitate the upgrading of informal settlements. In this regard the grading and rezoning of informal settlements by the priority municipalities is crucial.	The District Municipality as the accredited Housing authority assist the local municipalities to participate in the upgrading of informal settlement even if not part of the 45 priority municipalities	That the District Municipality assist local Municipalities to upgrade informal settlement to formal settlements	That the district facilitates the process of participation of the 8 local municipalities in the upgrading of informal settlements by reporting on the needs of the municipalities	30 June 2014	Infrastructure, Development and Housing
				That the District Municipality assist local Municipalities to upgrade	Assists LM’s with supporting applications. The municipality must submit 1 application	30 June 2014	Infrastructure, Development and Housing

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
				informal settlement to formal settlements	per municipality per annum		
		A national coordination grant framework should be developed and monitored by COGTA with the relevant departments to better align the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG), the MIG Cities instrument, the Housing Subsidy Grant, the National Upgrading Support Programme and all other local government grants that impact on local communities.	To consolidate grants, limit the role of provinces to direct housing development	That the District Municipality align themselves to assist local municipalities in professionally implement projects in terms of all the grant prescriptions	That the municipality through their IDH market themselves to assist local municipalities in implementing and report on implementation of grant funding	30 June 2014	Infrastructure, Development and Housing
	Deepen democracy through a refined Ward Committee model	Strengthening our people-centred approach to governance and development is a core part of the building the developmental state in this country	The District Municipality should facilitate and assist the local municipalities in developing a ward committee system that will ensure a people-centred	That the District Municipality develops a programme to assist the local Municipalities in developing a tailor-made ward commit	Dm develop a generic ward committee policy that can be used by all LM's	30 June 2014	Office of the Executive Mayor

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
			approach to governance and development in each of the local municipalities	functioning system for the municipalities			
		Legislative framework for Ward Committees and community participation must be reviewed and strengthened to broaden participation of various sectors and to propose revised / new responsibilities and institutional arrangements for Ward Committees	The District should participate in the fora established to develop a legislative framework for Ward Committees	That The District participates in all available fora to them.	That the District Municipality as part of the DIGR on prepare a submission to stimulate the discussions on a legislative framework for Ward Committee operations. Reports to be submitted to DIGR quarterly	30 June 2014	Office of the Executive Mayor
		Various support measures must be put in place to ensure that at least 90% of all Ward Committees are fully functional by 2014.	The District should assist local municipalities in capacitating and training ward committees	That the District Municipality facilitate assist municipalities in the capacitating and training of Ward Committees	Number of training sessions conducted	30 June 2014	Office of the Executive Mayor



NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
	Administrative and financial capability	Municipalities with unqualified audits to increase from 53% to 100%.	The DM to engage on exceptions and exclusions in order to address the shortcomings in the SCM process and report to council regularly on the measures put in place and at the same time ensure that the DM achieves a unqualified audit outcome	Convene a district CFOs forum to highlight audit issues related to SCM and other issues	Quarterly meetings	Quarterly reports	Municipal Manager and CFO
				Engage the Office of the AG on these matters	Meeting with the Office of the Auditor General	Bi-annually	CFO
				Engage communities on Audit issues in an effort to restore public confidence	Two Community meetings per annum and PKS news advert of Audit outcome	Bi-annually	CFO and Office of the Executive Mayor and Municipal Manager
			Engage in a process of business development and or growth that will ensure that the SCM issues are	Develop district Strategies that focuses on SMME development	Review of the LED strategy Report on the number of appointed and developed SMME's against the allocated	30 June 2014	Infrastructure, development and Housing & Finance

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
			able to promote an effective business environment and at the same time increase the business confidence in the area		funds		
			Improve the district planning capacity in an effort to ensure that district	Develop a uniform financial system within the District	Minutes of CFO forum	30 June 2014	Finance
			Influences the local municipal budgeting process in an effort to ensure uniform results and minimal competition for resources.	Budget for municipal support based on the support programme	Budget for municipal support	30 June 2014	Finance
				Reporting on the implementation of the support programme budget	Reports on.....	30 June 2014	Finance

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
	Single Window of coordination						
		Review local government legislation, finalise changes in relations to powers and functions and review the intergovernmental fiscal framework	Ameliorate the strain on DM resources by engaging the political leadership of the local municipalities in the non-payment of	Hold meetings with local municipalities on the non-payment of subscriptions	Meetings with MM's	30 June 2014	Municipal Manager

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
			subscriptions to DM in an effort of ensuring that they buy into the process and at the same time ensure that they hold the administration accountable for the subscriptions	Revise/Develop a SLA for the subscriptions and support service to municipalities	SLA	30 September 2013	Corporate Services
			To strengthen the capacity of local municipalities to communicate with their stakeholders and as such ensure the eradication of the lack of information of communities and ensure that they are informed about local government in general.	Develop a programme for community participation in the programmes of municipalities	10 Meetings – Community participation	30 June 2014	Manager in Office of Executive Mayor
				Develop a programme that will include communities in the affairs of council such as Youth councils in order to improve community confidence in local government	2 meetings per annum	30 June 2014	Manager in Office of Executive Mayor

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
			To have a strong District Municipality that supports local municipalities by commissioning a detailed study of the role of the district municipality and how it can remain relevant	Develop a system/strategy that will ensure that the district leverages more external funding, i.e. other grants such as the Rural infrastructure grant	Meetings with Provincial and National Departments to access funding for the region and meetings with the local municipalities to assist with business plan for these funding Minutes of meetings	30 June 2014	Office of the Municipal Manager, shared Services and IDH

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
			To improve the relations with other political offices by developing a programme of engagement between the mayor and the political leadership at both national and province in order to ensure the total realisation of council objectives	Develop a monitoring system for the District Izimbizo as a follow up of issues raised at Izimbizo	An Izimbizo monitoring issues report	30 June 2014	Office of the Mayor
	Increase access to programmes leading to	Provide young people and adults with foundational learning qualifications. Increase	The district should through its youth and special programmes units initiate programmes to encourage the young people and	Participate in programmes initiated in motivating youth and adult to participate and to enlist their	No of learning programmes started in the district	30 June 2014	Office of the Ex Mayor

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
	intermediate and high level learning	ABET level 4 entrants from a baseline of 269 229 to 300 000 per annum.	adults to acquire foundational skills	staff where necessary in these programmes			

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
A SKILLED AND CAPABLE WORKFORCE TO SUPPORT AN INCLUSIVE WORKFORCE	Increase access to occupationally-directed programmes in needed areas and thereby expand the availability of intermediate level skills (with a special focus on artisan skills)	Increase the number of learnership to at least 20 000 per annum by 2014.	The District Municipality should re-structure their policies to include the opportunity for learnerships to form part of their operations	Include the number of learnerships in the skills development strategy of the District Municipality	Number of learnerships (12)	30 June 2014	Corporate Services



NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
		Produce at least 10 000 artisans per annum by 2014.	The District Municipality should re-structure their procedures in implementing projects to include the training of artisans in projects	Review the District LED Strategy	Increase in the number of jobs	30 June 2014	Office of the MM
		Increase the proportion of unemployed people, as compared to employed people, entering learnerships from the current level of 60% to 70%.	Include learnerships as a critical part of the municipality's skills development strategy				
		Unemployment falls from 73.4% (in the current poverty nodes) to 60%	Ensure that the communities in the district become self- sustainable through the active promotion of economic	Review the DGDS	Reviewed DGDS	30 June 2014	IDH

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
			livelihoods				
VIBRANT, EQUITABLE AND SUSTAINABLE RURAL COMMUNITIES AND FOOD SECURITY FOR ALL	Improved employment opportunities and promotion of economic livelihoods	Jobs created by Community Works Programme and EPWP in rural areas rises to 2m by 2014, and these jobs are largely providing value added services in rural areas ranging from working on fire, working for fisheries, land care, farmer-to-farmer extension, fencing etc	Ensure that the district contributes towards the realisation of the target of 2 million jobs by 2014	Ensure that all municipalities in the district adopt a Community Works Programme approach to all projects in the district	No of jobs created	30 June 2014	IDH
		Increase jobs in agri-processing from 380 000 to 500 000, of which 60% are in rural areas including small towns.	Explore means and mechanisms of ensuring that communities are able to maximise agro-processing initiatives in order to contribute towards sustainable livelihoods and job creation	Review of District LED Strategy	Increase in the number of jobs	30 June 2014	IDH

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
		Establishment of 39 agri-parks and 39 trade agreements linked to agri-parks % of small farmers producing for sale rises from 4.07% to 10%	Study the concept of agri-parks and understand its advantages and disadvantages in order to make correct decisions	Develop a concept paper on agri-parks and engage with various stakeholders in this regard	Concept paper Minutes of engagement sessions	30 June 2014	IDH
		At least 30% of small farmers are organized in producer associations or marketing coops to give collective power in negotiating for inputs and marketing;	To improve the plight of farmers and in particular emerging farmers by supporting them in being a unified structure through cooperatives and unions	Develop a cooperative support programme for farmers	Number of cooperatives formed	30 June 2014	IDH
		Establishing of community structures to support social cohesion and development (530 enterprises and 1590 cooperatives)	Improve the small business support strategy to emerging businesses in the area for improved social cohesion	Implement the strategy for business support	No of entities supported	30 June 2014	IDH
		50% of rural municipalities have systems for disaster management and mitigation to facilitate rapid response to rural disasters	To ensure that the municipalities have the capability to respond to disasters in the future	Revise the disaster management strategy and where possible support municipalities to have fully	No of municipalities with disaster management capability	30 June 2014	Corporate Services

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
				disaster management function			
SUSTAINED HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND IMPROVED QUALITY OF HOUSEHOLD LIFE	Upgrade 400 000 units of accommodation within informal settlements	The target is to deliver at least 20 000 units per annum	Meet the 2014 housing target through an accelerated human settlements programme	Develop a housing plan that will outline the housing target for the district	No of houses	30 June 2014	IDH
ENVIRONMENTAL ASSETS AND NATURAL RESOURCES THAT ARE WELL PROTECTED AND CONTINUALLY	Enhanced quality and quantity of water resources	Reduction of water loss from distribution networks from current levels of approximately 30% to 18% by 2014 coupled with encouraging users to save water.	Conduct survey on water and sanitation backlogs	Assist LM's with the survey	Survey and related documents	30 June 2014	IDH

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
ENHANCED	Reduced greenhouse gas emissions, climate change impacts and improved air quality	To mitigate the catastrophic impacts of climate change it is imperative that we reduce total CO2 emissions by 34% by 2020 and 42% by 2025.	Develop a district climate change strategy that will ensure that the district is able to contribute positively to the 34% by 2020 target	Monitor and support the district implementation of the strategy	Strategies	30 June 2014	Shared Services
	Sustainable environmental management	Solid waste management to ensure waste minimization, improved collection and disposal and recycling by ensuring that the percentage of households with basic waste collection and disposal facilities increases from 50% to 80% by 2012; percentage of landfill sites with permits increased to 80% by 2015 and that 25% of municipal waste gets	Assess the current solid waste status within municipalities	Development of improved solid waste issues within the district	Review of the IWMP for the District and LM's	30 June 2014	Shared Services

NATIONAL OUTCOMES			MUNICIPAL DETERMINATION OF PREDETERMINED OBJECTIVES				
NATIONAL OUTPUT	NATIONAL SUB-OUTPUT	DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY	KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATOR	TIMEFRAMES	RESPONSIBILITY
		diverted from landfill sites for recycling by 2012.					
		Improved municipal financial and administrative capability	Ensure that the municipality receives a clean audit opinion	To put measures in place that will ensure that the municipality receives a clean audit opinion	The municipality to have a clean audit opinion at the end of the financial year	30 June 2014	CFO/MM

## **CHAPTER 4: INTEGRATION**

### **4.1 Integration**

The integration phase is one of the critical components of an IDP as it strengthens the sustainability of the process. Therefore, the main purpose of this phase is to develop an integrated planning framework that outlines among others, plans, projects and/or programmes that will be implemented during the 2011/16 financial years and beyond. Due to the thickness of the plans or programmes only the list and summaries of some sector plans are included in this volume. The actual documents are included in Volume 2. The sector plans are accessible at Pixley ka Seme District municipality and can be made available on request.

#### **The list of sector plans:**

- Spatial development Framework (SDF)
- Integrated Environmental Management Programme
- District Growth and Development Strategy
- Poverty alleviation plan (See DGDS)
- Gender Equity Plan
- Housing Strategy
- Integrated Waste Management Plan
- LED Strategy (See DGDS)
- Communication Strategy
- Disaster Management Plan
- Employment Equity Plan
- Turn-Around Strategy

**During the inspection of the sector plans some of them were found to be still relevant, whilst others required a reviewal.**

### **4.2 Summaries of sector plans**

The summaries of some of the above mentioned documents are as follows:

#### **4.2.1 Spatial Development Framework**

Municipalities are required to compile Spatial Development Frameworks (SDFs) as core components of their IDPs as prescribed by the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000). According to the Draft Land Use Management Bill (July 2001) each district municipality and the local municipalities within the area of the district municipality must align their SDFs in accordance with the framework of integrated development planning referred to in Section 27 of the Municipal Systems Act.

To act in accordance with the Municipal Systems Act and to fulfill its role in spatial planning, Pixley ka Seme District Municipality appointed Africon in July 2006 to compile a Spatial Development Framework for the District Municipality.

## **The Role and Purpose of a District SDF**

The regulations (White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management, Draft Land Use Management Bill and Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations, 2001) do not distinguish between local and district municipalities' SDFs and we can assume, therefore, that to avoid duplication the district municipality should focus on the broader spatial patterns and will contain the detail of the local municipalities. It will, however, contain a detail Land Use Management System (LUMS) for the district and furthermore aim to align the Spatial Development Frameworks of the different municipalities and give strategic direction in terms of investment in the region.

### **The role of SDF is to:**

- guide spatial planning and land development in the Pixley ka Seme district area;
- guide spatial planning and land development in the local municipalities of the district; and
- guide spatial planning, land development and land use management in the Pixley ka Seme district management area (DMA) within the framework of National and Provincial spatial plans.

### **The purpose of this document is:**

- To translate the SDF into a more detailed and geographically specific land use management tool.
- To consolidate, update and review existing spatial planning and development management mechanisms.
- To guide the preparation of more detailed local area plans, precinct plans and land use schemes.
- To provide a more concrete spatial and land use guideline policy for use by municipal and other infrastructure service providers in planning and delivering their services.
- To provide direction and guidance to private sector and community investors with respect to the levels, locations, types and forms of investment that need to be made, and that will be supported by the District Municipality.

## **The Critical Elements of a Spatial Development Framework**

### **The critical elements of the SDF is to:**

- Give effect to the principles contained in Chapter 1 of the Development Facilitation Act, 1995 (Act No 67 of 1995).
- Preferential and focus areas for certain types of land uses.
- The location of projects identified as part of the integrated development planning process.
- Reflect the spatial objectives and strategies contained in the IDP.
- Indicate the desired direction of urban expansion and the most appropriate use of vacant land where appropriate and desirable.
- A business plan for implementation of the spatial development framework.

### **In a rural context the documents also deals specifically with:**

- natural resource management issues,
- land rights and tenure arrangements,
- land capability,
- subdivision and consolidation of farms, and
- the protection of prime agricultural land.

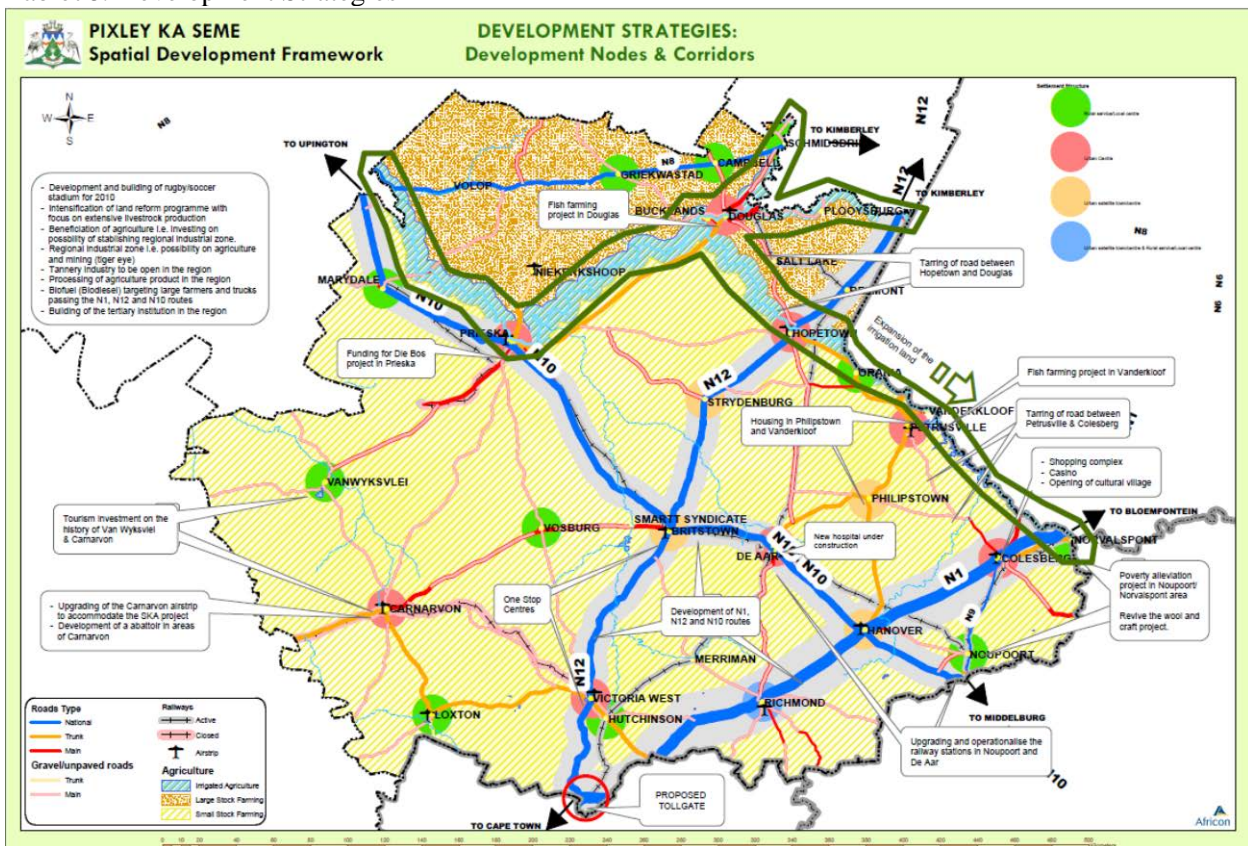


Following the district overview the document also looked in more detail the spatial issues on local municipal level. For each local municipality, standards, norms and values for management of the environmental resources and features were listed and displayed on maps of the area. Areas of high-risk for development activities were also indicated on the maps, therefore providing a guideline for development within the local municipal areas. The main spatial and land issues of each town were then indicated on a spatial development guideline map.

The DMA (district management area) and the future thereof were discussed according to a discussion document by the Municipal Demarcation Board.

Finally the Spatial Development Framework of the district aim to focus on potential areas where development is most likely to occur. It therefore identifies development nodes and corridors which need to receive priority for future development as shown below. The Pixley ka Seme SDF will serve as a point of departure to inform the local SDFs. The full document is attached in the annexure.

Table78: Development Strategies



### 4.3 Integrated Environmental Management Programme

The Integrated Environmental Management Programme was compiled by the district municipality to ensure that land use decision making must be taken with adequate environmental resource information is available in other to ensure sustainable and appropriate environmental management to the benefit of its residents.

## **Goals**

### **The set goals of the plan include the following:**

- Ensure all environmental issues are appropriately addressed.
- Minimize potential negative impact of all envisaged projects.
- Ensure the integrated development planning process complies with environmental legislation.
- Provide guidelines to investors in terms of environmental considerations.
- Demonstrate municipalities commitment to the promotion of local biodiversity.
- Identify development opportunities and threats to the environment.
- Provide a framework for sustainable development.

## **Identified Issues**

### **The following issues were identified:**

## **Key Opportunities**

### **Mokala National Park Establishment**

This project is of national importance. It is the latest National Park to be proclaimed, and is situated approximately 60km north of Hopetown in the Siyancuma Municipality on the N12 to Kimberley. Mokala is a Sestwana name for a Camel Thorn (Kameeldoring). These trees occur in dry woodland and arid, sandy areas and are one of the major tree species of the desert regions of Southern Africa. This immensely important species has a great range over the Northern Cape. The Mokala National Park will also draw visitors from national and international origin

### **Mineral Resources Exploitation**

The region is rich on mineral resources including alluvial diamonds, uranium, salt and tiger's eye semi-precious stone. Opportunity exists to exploit these resources, especially uranium for its specific value for nuclear power. The little amount of water, long distance to major ports, and low resilience of the land is however factors that count against this developments. Great care should be taken when mining in the area for these reasons, to ensure sustainability.

## **Tourism**

The study area is a rich landscape of historic events and architecture, unique (endemic) plant and animal species, the best stargazing in the country, friendly towns and people. Although great efforts have been made in tourism for the area, it remains one of the core opportunities and requires more investigation and implementation still. Example of this is the development of specific tourism routes, such as Heritage or Unique Plants.

### **MeerKAT/SKA Telescope Projects**

- This project is of national and potentially international importance. With the current Karoo Array Telescope (MeerKAT) project at more than R800 million, and the potential Square Kilometre Array Telescope (SKA) at R12 billion, such investment can have tremendous spins off for the region as a whole. The SALT Telescope in Sutherland is such an example, as it has helped put Sutherland on the tourism map. Stargazing as a tourism activity can very well link to such projects.

## **SKA Integrated Development Programme**

- The following targeted deliverables were identified in order to realize the objectives of the SKA Intergrated Development Programme.

### **Local Economic Development**

Local Economic Development is the most fundamental development tool towards poverty eradication. Through a number of developing tools and approaches, e.g. community based/local area planning, asset mapping, economic profile, etc. the local economy is profiled and reflects the most potential local economic opportunities and local intellectual assets and capacities for public and private sectore investments. The process aims also at identifying barriers and constrains to economic activities within the particular Northern Cape for improvement of business climate and stimulation of economic growth. The programme will co-ordinate and integrate various role players and partnership development towards the implementation of community-based economic development activities. The most targeted deliverables will include:

The development and management of local economic profiles;  
Enhancement of community participation in local economic development;  
Supporting and upscaling the implementation of local economic development strategies and plans;  
Monitoring and evaluating economic development in the area and its periphery zone;  
Enhancement of skills to support the SK development spin-offs.

### **Environmental Management**

The goal of realizing integrated development is underpinned by development and resourcing strategies and ensuring environmental sustainability in development programmes. The programme will play a significant role in preservation of natural resources through the following intensions:

- **Clean and Greening Initiatives:** In response to the poor state of rivers and wetlands in the area, the clean green initiative will seek to upgrade and clean water streams, rivers and the Wetlands Park. This is aimed at improving public health and safety and provid jobs, skills development and enhance tourism opportunities;
- **Rivers and water source management:** Such interventions will seek to coordinate the fight against invasive alien flora. The intervention mainstreams HIV/AIDS, gender and youth empowerment. This encourages partnership with local communities, to whom it provides jobs, and government departments, state owned enterprises, conservation and environment advocacy groups, research foundations and private companies.
- **Fire prevention and management intervention:** NC is viewed as a fire-prone ecosystem. The intervention focuses on fire prevention and management. The programme's underlying motivation is poverty relief and skills development which are designed to build self esteem and help beneficiaries to fulfil their true potential.

**Community-based forest management:** The intervention aims to promote the sustainable use of woodlands and their products for the benefit of both wildfire and people. Its objectives are to promote the use of locally produced woodland products, support development of sustainable wood based businesses and educate for sustainable use of woodlands.

- **Land care:** The land care initiative will lay the foundation of community involvement and wider participation in conservation of natural resources (soil, water and vegetation). It will further provide basis for developing links with civil society representatives, universities, etc. it is a community-based programme supported by both the public and private sector through series of partnerships.

**The programme's value-add would focus on:**

- Environmental impact assessment towards infrastructure development in the area.
- Development of Environmental Management Plans.
- Implementation of environmental conservation programmes.

**Social Infrastructure Development**

The concept realizes the centrality of infrastructure in supporting socio-economic development and its contribution as a vehicle for poverty eradication. The programme will facilitate and support the provisioning of both public-mandated and community-mandated social infrastructure. This comprises social infrastructure delivered with additional social outcomes, for line departments at the request of the Executive Authority and where the client is the community/CBOs with strategic partners. The value adds from the programme encompasses the following:

- Programme planning, management and implementation.
- Coordination of integrated development initiatives.

**Local Government & Community Development Facilitation**

Service delivery is the cornerstone for the human settlement and community development. Institutional capacity building, stakeholder mobilization and coordination form the most critical part towards municipal service delivery. In partnership with municipalities, the programme will yield synergies in the following areas:

- Local government institutional capacity building.
- Development planning.
- Programme management.

The programme will implement the Local Area Planning (LAP) as a participatory planning approach that empowers the community to participate meaningfully in development. Local community plans reflect local assets, resources and priority needs. The plans serves as a tool for resource and stakeholder mobilization, and create conducive environment for integration of various government programmes and assisting municipalities and communities to access the available programmes and funding. In order to achieve this, the programme will bring the following competencies:

- Community mobilization and empowerment to take ownership of local and sustainable development.
- Community conflict resolution.
- Meaningful community participation in local development strategies.

## **Key Issues and Threats**

### **Land degradation**

Land use in the Pixley ka Seme currently consists of sheep farming, some ostrich farming, game farming (that is currently on the increase), as well as crops farming that include Lucerne, onions, garlic etc. Mining and development activities are likely to expand in the future.

One of the major threats to biodiversity in the Pixley ka Seme is the long-term overgrazing by small livestock. This vast and open, semi arid rangeland covers a large part of South Africa and is impressively adapted to its climatic extremes. Evidence of degradation in these parts of the Pixley ka Seme is clearly visible, mainly as a result of environmental (low and erratic rainfall) and anthropogenic factors (poor management practices).

The degradation is characterized by large bare and denuded areas and it seems these areas will not recover by natural succession processes alone. Some sort of active intervention has therefore inevitably become necessary in order to avoid aridification and possibly also desertification.

Only 5% terrestrial ecosystems in South Africa are critically endangered, while 44% of river ecosystems are critically endangered. These river courses together with the riparian zones have an important biodiversity function as well as an economic value in the Pixley ka Seme region. These denser structures of vegetation are high in productivity and are extremely important refuges for many animal species. The riparian zones are also very important to stock farmers as it provides grazing, especially during dryer seasons.

The flagship species for this habitat is the Riverine Rabbit (*Bunolagus monticularis*), which is Critically Endangered. Today the population size is estimated to be just a few hundred animals. At present, none of the Riverine Rabbit habitat is protected within a provincial nature reserve or national park and the species only occurs on private farmland. In response to the rapidly declining populations, landowners in the Pixley ka Seme region have established Riverine Rabbit conservancies covering an area of approximately 350 000 ha of private farmland.

### **Unrehabilitated Asbestos Mines**

In the Northern Cape asbestos is still perceived as an important issue because of the many unrehabilitated mine dumps that still have the potential to pollute the environment, and therefore cause asbestosis or mesothelioma. The public still has access to some of these dumps, and some individuals recover the asbestos for resale as there is apparently still a market for it. In Prieska about 5 new cases (out of a population of about 15 000) of mesothelioma are diagnosed annually although the mines in the area have been closed since 1979.

### **Need for Urban Renewal of Apartheid-Era Townships**

National Routes (or the main route through a town) was used in the previous regime to sever the townships from the white suburbs. There is a great lack of integration still today in many of the Pixley ka Seme towns. Additional to this, some areas still have bucket system toilets or French drains, which prove a risk for the ground water source of the towns. Refuse and Landfill sites close to these areas also prove a human health risk. Lack of storm water systems means the occasional rain storms causes heavy erosion and flash floods. Most of these areas also do not have trees and open space and therefore the quality of life is perceived as low.

## Key Solutions

### Funding

Although some funding such as MIG is available to the municipalities and departments, it is crucial to source more funding to speed up the progress of sustainable development for human settlements in the district. Training is also required to improve the business plans which are being put forward to large funding agencies. Identification of specific projects are crucial.

### Participation and Communication

In an area with little resources and people, co-operative governance and community participation in projects are crucial. As local municipalities does not have much capacity, they are largely dependent upon the district municipality and State departments. These relationships must be built and strengthened.

### Training and Education

Municipal and government officials can benefit enormously from training in their respective fields, and specifically regarding the environment. Environmental Awareness Training to land owners (farmers) and communities also become crucial for the sustainable management of the land.

### Strategies / Initiatives / Projects

- Environmental Education of Farmers and Communities
- Compliance and Enforcement of Illegal Water Uses
- Conservation Mapping and Initiatives
- Environmentally Responsible Development
- Urban Renewal Programmes

Table 79: Threats and oppertinities





#### **4.4 Integrated Waste Management Plan**

The district municipality compiled its Integrated Waste Management Plan for waste management in the various local municipalities under its jurisdiction.

The compilation of the plan was done in terms of the national waste management strategy, the IDP process and the draft charter document for integrated waste management planning in South Africa. The draft process of compiling the plan consisted of two phases. The Status Quo for Phase 1 consisted of an assessment of the current status of waste collection systems and existing disposal sites, service delivery capacity and a needs analysis for each of these aspects.

The second phase comprised the compilation of the IWMP's. The objectives and Goals identified was included in this phase, with alternatives for obtaining these being considered and evaluated on a high level thereafter. Based on the preferred options selected for implementation a programme was developed and cost estimates compiled to facilitate inclusion on the plan into the IDP.

The waste management related issues that were addressed in the plan are:

- Disposal Infrastructure
- Waste Collection Infrastructure
- Institutional Capacity and Human Resources
- Financial Resources
- Dissemination of Information / Communication
- Management of Illegal Activities
- Waste Minimisation

#### **4.5 District Growth and Development Strategy**

Pixley Ka Seme, as with other districts in the Northern Cape, has a base of mineral resources, including diamonds, copper, manganese and iron ore deposits, uranium and tiger's eye. Mineral-based activities, whether large- or small-scale, have the potential to stimulate economic diversification and industrial and rural development provided a number of issues are successfully addressed.

The implementation of effective mining strategies can generate upstream and downstream activities that present viable investment opportunities and promote local economic development and poverty alleviation.

In addressing the inherited situation of poverty in the district, the available base of mineral resources can play a significant role. However, the mere existence of a resource base is not a sufficient condition to create a viable local economy and effectively engage poverty. The number of countries, especially postcolonial African countries, that have a huge and often easily exploitable resource base but experience excessive levels of poverty, evidences this.

However, mineral resource endowments have been beneficial for the economic development of many countries, including nations such as Australia, Canada, Chile, Botswana and Malaysia. One of the world's poorest countries when it gained independence in 1966 with a per capita income of less than \$100, Botswana today has a per capita income exceeding \$3 500. The diamond revenues has transformed the country from one with only 6km of tarred roads at the time of independence to a country with some 6 000km of tarred roads today.

In adopting the value chain model and making the recommendations as noted later in this document, we have aimed to answer the following key questions:

- What steps do we take to get a fuller and scientific understanding of what mineral resources are available in Pixley Ka Seme?

- How do we promote the mining of these minerals in such a way that investment is attracted into the District that allows jobs to be created, communities to benefit, empowerment issues to be addressed and the economic profile of the District to improve?
- What strategy do we use to ensure that beneficiation of the minerals takes place locally with full local involvement whilst attracting financial and infrastructure investment into the District?
- How do we ensure that empowerment and local groups supply goods and services required by mining companies and support mining companies to meet their procurement obligations?
- What are the secondary industries that could be developed to ensure sustainable economic development once mineral resources are exhausted?
- How do we promote PPPs, District Municipality capability, gender development, financing and the correct institutional base to effectively exploit existing mineral resources?

For more than a century, South Africa's mineral industry, largely supported by gold, diamond, coal and platinum production, has made an important contribution to the national economy. It has provided the impetus for the development of an extensive and efficient physical infrastructure and has contributed greatly to the establishment of the country's secondary industries. However, given the skewed policies of apartheid the benefits of the mining and minerals processing sector was limited to the white community and white owned businesses.

Recent legislative changes in the country provide the Pixley Ka Seme District with a number of opportunities for using its resource base as an anchor for future economic growth. The mineral industry has historically been a critical component of the Northern Cape Province's economy. In 2003, the Northern Cape contributed R 10.8 billion (7.8%) by value of total mineral sales nationally. This was made up largely of sales of iron ore, manganese ore, base metal concentrates, and uncut diamonds. Legislative changes in the country affecting mining and minerals processing include:

#### **4.6 Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28, 2002)**

This Act allows for State sovereignty over all mineral and petroleum resources in the Republic, promotion of economic growth and development of these resources and expanding of opportunities for the historically disadvantaged. In addition, the Act ensures that holders of mining and production rights contribute to the socio-economic development of the areas in which they are operating.

- **The Broad-Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry** The Charter commits all stakeholders in the mining industry to transferring a minimum of 26% of assets to black ownership within ten years.
- **for the Broad Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry** The Scorecard provides measurable criteria for Charter elements, with sufficient certainty to comfort markets and at the same time flexible enough to allow management to run companies in a responsible and lucrative manner. In effect, the Scorecard amplifies on the Charter and turns it into a practical document.
- **The Royalty Bill** The Bill proposes royalties on gross mining revenue ranging from 1-8% to be paid quarterly once new order mineral rights have been accorded to mining companies.
- **The Beneficiation bill (draft)** This bill remains unpublished but aims to promote local beneficiation of minerals mined in the country.



- **The Diamond Amendment Bill** The Diamond Amendment Bill provides for the separation of the diamond regulatory functions from the promotional functions, which are currently both the responsibility of the South African Diamond Board. The Precious Metals and Diamonds Regulator would be responsible for regulating the diamond trade as well as the management and administration of diamond and precious metals beneficiation in totality. The State Diamond Trader will be responsible for ensuring the supply of rough diamonds to South African based businesses and facilitate the sale of rough and polished diamonds. All unpolished diamonds for export are to be offered at the state controlled Diamond Exchange and Export Centre and export duty will be payable on diamonds that can be economically cut in South Africa.

In Pixley Ka Seme, policy makers will have to identify critical growth paths that enable the viable mining and beneficiation of existing resources and the building of complementary industries using the mineral resources as a ratchet to encourage the growth of sectors like agriculture, transport and tourism. Proposals are made in this document to support policy makers at a district level. These proposals are guided by the following key strategic objectives:

- Promoting the sustainable economic growth of the district and empowerment of its citizens.
- Promoting effective and efficient mining and beneficiation of the district's mineral resources.
- Promoting gender development as a major theme cutting across all initiatives and interventions.
- Contributing to the objectives of the ASGI-SA and Northern Cape PGDS.
- Positioning the District as a target for mining related investments.
- Promoting job creation, human capital development, and SMME development as a platform for advancing BEE in the district.
- Enhancing good governance and effective overall management of the DMMS.

It is crucial that the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality takes the leadership and facilitates the implementation of a proactive set of interventions. Such a management role is key to providing the ignition and motivation for the successful roll out of a comprehensive mining and minerals strategy for the district.

Whilst there are a large number of minerals that could possibly be targeted as part of the Pixley Ka Seme district strategy, the focus here is on diamonds, Tiger's Eye stones, salt and uranium. The reason for this is that these dovetail well with the provincial strategy of cutting, polishing and jewellery manufacture and contributing to national strategic requirements, especially as regards nuclear energy.

In proposing mining and minerals processing related interventions, we have used a value chain model which comprises of the following elements: exploration; mining (including sorting, valuation and sales); processing and beneficiation (e.g. diamond cutting and polishing, uranium processing, product distribution and sales); manufacture (design, manufacture and distribution); and retail sales. Graphics of the model are presented in the annexure on mining.

### **The diamond sector**

A small number of major players control the mining and marketing of diamonds. Africa produces 61% of the world's diamonds but has less than 1% of the diamond manufacturing industry and no real influence in the marketplace beyond the extraction of diamonds. As noted later in this section, the biggest returns are made in the processes of cutting, polishing and manufacturing jewellery and African countries, including South Africa, play a limited role at these levels. The diamond analyst Chaim Even Zohar notes that in today's terms, roughly US\$1bn of rough will be converted into US\$16 after cutting and polishing and US\$60bn once jewellery is manufactured. This shows the extent to which Africa and South Africa is

losing out in the value chain given the present low levels of beneficiation and retail of manufactured jewellery

South Africa ranks fourth in the world in terms of value of rough diamond production and fifth in terms of caratage produced with production for 2004 of 14,4 Mct valued at US\$1.2 Billion. The two major producers in South Africa are De Beers and Transhex, with De Beers accounting for 95% of local production by mass. In the South African context, in 2004, the Northern Cape produced 38% (by volume) of South Africa's diamonds. The province has averaged over 35% of the country's production over the past 10 years. What is of particular significance is that in 2004 the Northern Cape provided in excess of 97% of the country's alluvial diamonds, and over 68% of the marine diamond production.

The domestic cutting industry numbers some 200 or so "factories" employing about 2100 people. Many of the operations are small with foreign-owned firms dominating the business. Cutting factories are dominated by the likes of India, who have historically been cutting smaller stones, and Belgium and Israel, who have focussed on larger and fancy stones.

In India there are 30 000 factories employing about 900 000 people. Israel has 500 factories employing some 7 500 cutters. Belgium is also a significant player with 300 factories employing 1 500 people. China has entered the cutting and polishing market and presently has just under a 100 factories and employs 5 000 people – this is expected to grow rapidly.

Clearly the benefits of African mining are experienced more in other countries than in the African countries themselves. However, a number of initiatives are being undertaken in Africa to reverse this situation. The New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD) has launched the Diamond Producers of Africa (DPA) initiative aimed at developing a common platform for African diamond producing countries to retain as much of the benefits in member countries.

**Pixley Ka Seme diamonds resource base** There is little reliable data on reserves in the district. The data noted in the annexure is as extracted from publications and information published by the Department of Mineral and Energy Affairs, Council for Geoscience, Mintek, Diamond Core Resources and Trans Hex and is based on current exploration and mining projects. It is by no means an exhaustive description of the district's resources but simply provides a pointer on the grade and extent of resources in the diamondiferous areas from Hopetown to Douglas and from Douglas to Prieska.

Transhex notes that generally diamonds from the Orange River deposits have an average stone size of 1.5 to 2.5cts (2.6cts per stone – Trans Hex's Saxendrift Mine with a selling price of US\$1,000/ct (late 1990's to early 2000's). An overview of the key exploration and mining projects is noted in the attached annexure and focuses mainly on the resources in Silverstreams, Saxondrift, Uitdraai, De Kalk and the Muishoek project. The main players here are Diamond Core Resources, Samadi Resources and Transhex.

### **Tiger's eye sector**

Relative to the rest of the world, Tiger's Eye deposits are unique to the Northern Cape. The deposits occur near iron-banded formations, which form due to unique climatic and mineral characteristics of the region and are mined open cast.

The mining of Tiger's Eye is conducive to small-scale mining as seams can be found within five metres of the surface. SA laws prohibit the export of rough Tiger's Eye - the processing of these stone (cutting, polishing, jewellery manufacturing) should be done within the country. There are, however, some barriers to development, including:

- The lack of verified data regarding reserves in the area.
- Poor infrastructure especially in areas where the reserves are most likely situated.

- Illegal exportation of rough Tiger's Eye stones
- Skills shortage in both the before- and after markets.

These problems are serious, but if they can be economically overcome, Pixley Ka Seme could benefit from economic growth through mining and beneficiation and the creation of jobs and complementary sectors like tourism. The new mining legislation presents an excellent opportunity to re-evaluate the industry and to find methods to revitalise it.

In addressing the situation that Tiger's Eye rough is being illegally traded, it is important to take note of recommendations made by community representatives that temporary licenses be granted to local groups to for a window period to allow communities to generate the finances required to apply for licences and get their houses in order (see attached report on Mining and Minerals Processing Mini Summit). Community groups have been historically mining Tiger's Eye and strategies should be worked out that enhance the community capability to mine and beneficiate Tiger's Eye in an efficient and economic basis.

Investment attraction and community development to effectively allow communities to more effectively participate in mining and beneficiation of Tiger's Eye should be prioritised.

Tiger's Eye reserves in the Pixley Ka Seme District South Africa's tiger's eye deposits are amongst the few in the world that are economically important and mineable. Deposits of gem-quality tiger's eye occur only in the banded-iron formations of the northern part of the province.

### **The uranium sector**

With the general worldwide acceptance of the Kyoto agreement, global attention is turning towards less environmentally harmful forms of energy. Very near the top of the list of contenders for an environmentally friendly and sustainable energy source is uranium as found in nuclear power plants such as Koeberg. In America, an estimated 20% of all energy is supplied from nuclear power plants, while 16% of the world's energy comes from this source.

Vastly less uranium is needed in comparison to other fuels, e.g. one drum of uranium oxide ( $U_3O_8$ ) contains the equivalent in energy of 25 000 barrels of crude oil. South Africa has recently announced intentions to build four to six new nuclear power plants. Currently, 6% of all South Africa's power comes from the Koeberg Power Station. Locally, Minerals & Energy Affairs Department noted that new laws would be drafted regarding increasing SA's uranium production and that a special dispensation would be issued for exploring the mineral.

**Uranium Reserves in Pixley Ka Seme** In Pixley Ka Seme, unconfirmed reserves exist in the southern part of the district. This runs in a belt stretching from Luton through Hutchinson, Hanover and Colesberg ending in the Free State. Although there are no immediate calculations as to reserves in the area, deposits are thought to be considerable with SXR UraniumOne, a Canadian uranium and gold resource company with a primary listing on the Toronto Stock Exchange and a secondary listing on the JSE, looking to apply for prospecting rights on some 500,000 hectares (about 1.2 million acres) of land thought to be rich in uranium resources, in particular the Karoo and the Springbok Flats.

### **The salt mining sector**

Salt is an important industrial mineral and is used in many chemical processes as well as in the food industry. There are twelve mines recovering salt in the Northern Cape located primarily at Calvinia and Gordonia. There is potential to establish more.

Salt in South Africa is recovered from coastal and inland salt pans. The Northern Cape contains a large proportion of the inland salt pans. The majority of the inland pans lie in a curved belt 50 to 160 km wide between Vryburg in the North, Hopetown in the South, and Brandvlei in the West and covers a swathe across the centre of the Northern Cape Province.

Salt is a low value, bulky commodity that is not traded internationally in any significant amount. Uses for salt include being a flavourant, an ingredient in the preparation of foods such as cheese and butter, drilling, hide curing, improving traction on icy roads and textile dyeing.

In Pixely Ka Seme only one salt mine exists at Hopetown. Additional salt mine sites around the Hopetown area and continue in a belt running westwards through the District exist but have not been developed due to their remote location. For these sites to be mined, research would have to be commissioned to find the extent of the salt resources in the district. A feasibility study would have to find whether it would be profitable to open such mines considering the low price for salt.

### **Interventions**

It is proposed that the following interventions should be considered.

**Exploration** As noted, there is little data on the extent of the mineral reserves in the district. It must be noted that undertaking exploration is a costly and complex business. As such it is proposed that all available district data is collected and the district puts together a detailed marketing plan to attract exploration investment into the district. This is especially so as regards diamonds, Tiger's Eye and uranium. The district should be aggressively marketed as an investment target in the mining sector. As regards salt it is proposed that the feasibility study referred to above should first be undertaken before engaging issues of exploration or mining.

**Mining** Once geological assessments confirm the existence of mineable reserves, selected projects could be presented to interested mining companies for investment. In doing so, the District should:

- Undertake a detailed analysis on the state of the existing infrastructure and additional infrastructure requirements, and propose and implement an infrastructure plan that is required to facilitate viable mining projects.
- Support communities to effectively organise themselves to participate in mining ventures.
- Provide training and support to small and BEE owned companies to secure supply contracts with mining operations and where appropriate link small companies in partnerships with established supply companies.
- Promote liaison and co-operation between mining companies, other State bodies, small/BEE companies and communities and their representatives.

**Beneficiation** The district should take active steps to promote the national drive to enhance the beneficiation of minerals mined in the country. These steps could include:

- Promote increased diamond mining in the district that will improve the regular supply of rough to the Kimberley Hub that is to be established for cutting, polishing and manufacturing diamond jewelry.
- Establish a world class Tiger's Eye Cutting, Polishing and Jewellery and Other Products Manufacturing Centre in the district.
- Facilitate the training of local people from the district to cut and polish diamonds and Tiger's Eye stones and design and manufacture jewelry.
- Establish of a South African brand based on local Tiger's Eye supplies and local designs to improve the returns from mining and beneficiating rough Tiger's Eye stones.

The processing of uranium, given its strategic and sensitive nature, will have to be considered in conjunction with National Government.

**Retail/sales** Given the exclusive resource base of Tiger' Eye stones in the district, the Tiger's Eye Centre can play a far more influential role in the sales and retail environment. In addition to supplying retail outlets, consideration should be given to the Centre establishing its own retail outlets in strategic locations (JIA, tourist hotspots e.g. Cape Town and Durban etc) and locations in specific global locations where there is a demand for Tiger's Eye products. This could better be done in conjunction with a local and global retail brand and be more appropriately considered once the business plan is completed and being implemented.

The retail of manufactured diamond jewellery will be undertaken from Kimberley, given the strategy to create the Kimberley Hub for diamond beneficiation and sales.

#### **4.2 Secondary business and industry development**

The exploitation and processing of minerals can contribute to the growth of secondary businesses and industries that take advantage of the backward and forward linkages between the mining sector and their respective supplier industries. Mining operations require a large number of goods and services providing an ideal opportunity for the growth and development of viable businesses with the involvement of SMMEs and BEE. The goods and services required include:

- Mining equipment including front end loaders, pans, mining locomotives etc
- Trucks, trailers and motor vehicles
- Drilling and rigging
- Construction services
- Cutting, polishing and manufacturing equipment
- Specialist equipment (e.g. gaseous diffuser) and specialist handling equipment (e.g. handling equipment) for uranium mining
- Spares, tools, bearings, valves and related supplies
- Office furniture and equipment (including computers)
- Office stationery and consumables
- Geologists and geotechnical service providers
- HR, marketing, legal, social planning and other corporate services

In terms of the mining scorecard, mining companies are required to have preferential procurement policies that enhance the growth of SMME/BEE companies. In rolling out the DMMS, Pixley Ka Seme can take a proactive role in promoting this objective by working closely with mining operations and providing support to BEE companies.

The basic categories of secondary business and industrial development that can generally be developed as a result of mining operations are:

- **Consulting services** Individuals and SMME/BEE companies can provide HR, marketing, legal, social planning and other corporate services as well as geological and geotechnical services to mining operations.
- **Supply of office furniture and equipment** Small businesses can be set up to focus on the supply of office furniture and equipment, stationery and consumables. To ensure commercial

viability, this type of business would require a few mining operations and other businesses as clients.

- **Supply of engineering related inputs** This will involve the sourcing and supply of spares, tools, bearings, valves and related inputs that are regularly used by mines. From developments to date, it is clear that businesses focussed on this activity can be highly successful provided the business is run on the basis of providing quality products, competitive pricing, stock availability and on-time delivery. Companies involved in the supply of inputs normally are agents for local and off-shore manufacturers and national distributors enabling such companies to meet the quality, pricing, stocks and timeous delivery demands of clients. Traditionally, the supply of inputs has been the major growth point of secondary businesses around mining and has been dominated by white owned companies. Many of these previously white owned companies have sourced BEE partners and other supply companies are presently in the process of undertaking BEE deals. BEE partnering provides one channel for the entry of black businesses into this environment but more black businesses are seeing the opportunity of establishing their own agencies in association with manufacturers and distributors. It is definitely one area that the district should support through SMME/BEE support programmes.
- **Mining service providers** Here, the focus will be on providing construction, drilling, rigging, removal of water in water logged situations, equipment repair and related services to operations involved in exploration and mining. This has also proved an attractive business opportunity and more black companies need to be trained and supported to enter into this market either through BEE partnering or in their own right. There is concrete commitment in the Charter to pay attention to the need for family accommodation, upgrading of hostels, conversion of hostels into family units and promotion of home ownership. Entrepreneurs providing building services, maintenance, catering, cleaning, gardening etc, should be making contact with mining companies with regard to the services that they can provide.
- **Manufacturing** Equipment manufacture can provide for good business opportunities but it is preferable that this is raised at the provincial or inter provincial level given the scale of operations required to be successful. Much of the equipment is presently being imported or produced locally by foreign companies. Consideration needs to be given to undertaking national support initiatives to promote local manufacture especially as SA can become a point of supply for mining, cutting, polishing and jewellery manufacturing equipment to the local as well as the growing African market. A significantly larger Southern African and African industry will support a large equipment sector and create conditions for manufacturing a range of equipment and tools which are currently uneconomic to produce given the size of the industry. The strategy could be to produce smaller equipment initially and grow local capacity or produce larger complex equipment in association with foreign players. The joint local and Africa wide demand may be the impetus necessary to launch local manufacture. International companies in any event supply most African countries via Johannesburg. Issues will undoubtedly be related to quality of product, servicing, pricing etc. It therefore seems advantageous that local manufacture is encouraged in partnership with international companies. There may well be areas that allow for local manufacture that can service the mining as well as other industries. One example is the building of trailers or trailer bodies for trucks – this is further discussed under complementary industries below as trailer making will need to meet of more industries that mining alone to be viable.

Promoting the development and expansion of the business categories noted above provides the basis for the emergence of local clusters of business activities, which can spin-off into other areas and applications engendering much greater economic benefits for a region in terms of diversification and job creation.

Based on the above, the following concrete business opportunities could be looked at:

- **Consulting services provision in HR, marketing etc.**
- **Supply of office furniture and equipment as well as engineering inputs as described above.**
- **Agencies to facilitate the purchase of heavy machinery and equipment**
- **Construction companies** – here alternate building technologies could be examined as a way of contributing to reducing the costs of putting up accommodation, offices etc.
- **Drilling and rigging services**

The district should proactively support SMME/BEE groups to identify viable opportunities and develop and their capability to exploit such opportunities, and link the SMME/BEE groups with existing and potential future mining players to establish a goods or service provision role. In doing so the district could set for itself the target to implement a district wide programme to support SMME/BEE companies to develop their capability and negotiate business arrangements with mining operations. This will include supporting existing SMME/BEE companies and encouraging the growth of new BEE service providers, supporting mining companies to meet their procurement objectives and interfacing BEE groups with mining companies.

#### **4.7 Complementary industries**

Mining is a depletable resource. As such it is critical that the extraction and beneficiation of diamonds, Tiger's Eye and other minerals lead to the development of other economic sectors that will enhance general economic sustainability. Strategies to build complementary sectors during the period of mining have increased in importance.

The district should identify the primary economic sectors and the interlinks between these sectors and mining and beneficiation to create a solid economic base that can reduce dependence on mining and create viable economic clusters. The business activities here could include:

- **Agricultural development**
- **Tourism**
- **Trailer and tankers manufacturing business** – this can prove highly lucrative given the demands for transportation of heavy and bulky materials and the intent that De Aar will form a logistics and transport hub.
- **Telecommunications**
- **Property development and housing**

#### **In addressing the issue of complementary industries, the district should:**

- Identify the specific linkages within the district economy between viable existing or new industries that need to be developed and diamond mining, and
- Undertake pre-feasibility business planning together with financing institutions like the IDC of viable opportunities to present to interested investors and/or SMME/BEE groups.

#### **4.8 Cross-functional competencies**

**This section relates to cross functional competencies that feature across the value chain. The proposed interventions here are:**

- The creation of a coordinating structure with the capability to manage and facilitate the implementation of the interventions noted herein and play the leading role in transforming the district's mining and minerals processing sector.
- The promotion of public private sector partnerships to enhance exploitation of the diamond resources and promote local empowerment.

- The facilitation of networking between local business and entrepreneurs with public and private sector financing institutions and external investors.
- The active promotion of the development and participation of women in the mining process especially at the level of beneficiation and secondary industries and development integration.
- The facilitation of co-operation amongst a range of government based organisations, SOEs, the private sector and NGOs to create an institutional base that supports the interventions across the value chain.

**The key actions can be summarised as:**

Scientifically define the reserves for and promote the efficient mining of diamonds, Tiger's Eye, uranium and salt.

Establish community support initiatives that enhance the empowerment of local people as part of the development of mines in the district

Focus on gender development as a priority outcome of the district's strategy

Support and develop local businesses, especially SMME and BEE organisations as a prerequisite of the mining and beneficiation of key minerals

Support the Kimberley Cutting and Polishing Hub by providing rough diamonds and training for locals to be able to support the Hub

Establish a Cutting and Polishing Centre for tiger's eye in Pixley Ka Seme to act as a hub for all activities surrounding tiger's eye beneficiation as well as a centre for training and development for tiger's eye related industries

**The additional documents that form part of this chapter are included in Volumes 2 and 3.**

**Volume 2**

- o Consolidated Infrastructure Plan (CIP)
- o Institutional Development Plan
- o Disaster Management Plan
- o Water Services Development Plan

**4.9 Performance Management System (PMS)**

In terms of section 40 of the Municipal Systems Act a municipality, after consultation with community, must develop and implement mechanisms, systems and processes for the monitoring, measurement and review of performance in respect of the key performance indicators and performance targets set by it. In compliance with this regulation the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will adopt the following planning procedures to monitor, measure and review its performance.

**4.9.1 Monitoring**

Each key performance area prioritised in the IDP will be assigned a champion in the form of a lead manager. The manager assigned to a particular priority area will measure and monitor progress on the indicators on an on-going basis.

**4.9.2 Performance Measurement**

At the end of each financial year the Executive Mayor in collaboration with the Municipal Manager shall request all HODs and/ or managers responsible for the priority areas to measure all performance indicators and performance targets within his/ her priority area. The envisaged reports from this process will be submitted to the management team who will then assess them and produce a report that will be submitted to the Council for consideration. Performance measurement is very important in our municipal



planning practice because it will enable us to determine the total improvement brought by outputs in accordance with the outcome of the indicators.

#### 4.9.3 Review

The Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will after measuring its performance, assess whether it is doing better or not in terms of its mandatory functions, vision and mission statement as indicated in the IDP. The review process will be consistent with the best value, review framework of challenge, compare, consult and compete. Therefore the review process will invariably calls for the municipality to challenge the current level of performance, compare it to others, consult with communities and find ways and means of competing with others to provide best value in service delivery. Based on the above the municipality shall carry out its review process as follows:

**Table80 : Lines of Accountability**

Supervisors	Review performance of employees reporting directly to them.
Line/ functional/ sectoral managers	Review performance of their respective area regularly, monthly or quarterly
Portfolio committee	Manage and review performance on the municipality's priorities and functions respective to their portfolio
Municipal manager and his management team	Review performance of municipality constantly, at least quarterly.
Executive Mayor	Review the performance of the administration
Council	Review the performance of municipal council, its committee and the administration.
The public	The public/ communities or clients will be given necessary information and opportunities to review the performance of the municipality and public representative (Councillors)

#### 4.9.4 Performance reporting

Section 46 of the MSA 2000 stipulates that a municipality must annually prepare a report that covers all priority areas in the performance management framework. In order to comply with this provision, the performance report of the Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality will be covering the following aspects or areas of its performance management system.

- The performance of the municipality during the financial year and a comparison with targets and performance in the previous financial year
- The development and service delivery priorities and the performance targets for the following financial year
- Measures that are to be taken in the following financial year
- Financial statement(s) for the financial year
- An audit report of the financial statements and the report of the performance measures

After compiling the report it will then be presented at a community meeting for discussion. The MEC for Department Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA) and Audit-General will be notified about the meeting before it is held.

#### **4.10 PMS Framework Policy - See volume 2.**

The PMS Policy Framework and Scorecard of the municipality are included in the annexure. They will be replaced when the current one is finalized.

**The framework and scorecard identified the following elements as a management tool for the Municipal manager and as a control tool for the council for monitoring the performance of the municipality:**

- Development indicators for the IDP objectives;
- Output targets for all IDP projects;
- Time schedule with dates of major milestones of all projects;
- Performance indicators
- Action plan and resource requirements for managing the monitoring and performance of municipal manager and heads of departments.

**Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan – See volume 2.**

#### **4.10.1 Turn-Around Strategy**

In response to the position of the National and Provincial Government position in addressing the prevailing developmental challenges in the region, the district municipality has prepared its turn-around strategy that serves a planning tool for addressing these problems by December 2010

**The twin over-arching aim of the Turn-around Strategy is to:**

- Restore the confidence of Municipal officials in municipalities, as the primary delivery machine of the developmental state at a local level.
- Re-build and improve the basic requirements for a functional, responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient developmental local government.
- 

**4.10.2 The five strategic objectives of the Turn-Around Strategy are to:**

- Ensure that municipalities meet basic needs of communities. This implies that an environment is created, support provided and systems built to accelerate quality service delivery within the context of each municipality's conditions and needs;
- Build clean, responsive and accountable local government. Make sure that systems and structures and procedures are developed and enforced to deal with corruption, maladministration and ensure that municipalities communicate and account more to communities;
- Improve functionally, performance and professionalism in municipalities. Ensure that the core administrative and institutional systems are in place and are operational to improve performance;
- Improve national and provincial policy, support and oversight to local government; and
- Strengthen partnerships between local government, communities and civil society so as to ensure that communities and other development partners are mobilized to partner with municipalities in service delivery and development.

**4.10.3 The key interventions under these five strategic objectives focus on ensuring that:**

- National Government (including state enterprises) organizes itself better in relation to Local Government;
- Province improve their support and oversight responsibilities over Local Government;
- Municipalities reflect on their own performance and identify their own tailor-made turn-around strategies;
- All three spheres of government improve Inter-Governmental Relations (IGR) in practice;
- Political parties promote and enhance the institutional integrity of municipalities; and
- A social compact on Local Government is put in place where all citizens, including public officials at all levels, those in the private sector, trade unions, professional bodies and traditional leaders are guided in their action and involvement by a common set of governance values.

#### **4.10.4 Some of the immediate implementation priorities of the strategy are to:**

- Address the immediate financial and administrative problems in municipalities;
- Promulgate regulations to stem indiscriminate hiring and firing in municipalities;
- Tighten and implement a transparent municipal supply chain management system;
- Ensure that the programmes of national and provincial government and SOEs are reflected in municipal Integrated Development Plans (IDPs); and
- Overcome “one size fits all” approach by differentiating responsibilities; simplifying IDPs;
- Local Economic Development and job creation;
- Infrastructure backlog should be reduced significantly;
- All citizens must have access to affordable universal basic services; and
- Formalisation of all informal settlements.

#### **4.10.5 List of outstanding sector plans**

- Water Services Development Plan
- Integrated Transport Plan

#### **4.11 Water Services Development Plan**

The Pixley ka Seme District Municipality has not prepared a water services development plan due to financial constrains. Even though the district municipality is not a water services authority, the outcomes of sthe situation analysis in this IDP suggests that there is a need for the district municipality to prepare a water services development plan which will address the following issues that are related to water and sanitation.

- Provision of basic services to communities who do not have access to water and sanitation.
- Upgrading of infrastructure which is overloaded and incapable of meeting current demand.
- Provision of infrastructure to support economic development initiatives within the district.

Against this background, the envisaged outputs of the plan will be not limited to the following:

- A set of data sheets containing targets
- Existing and future consumer profile and service levels
- Water balance, water sources an quality
- Water service infrastructure
- Demand Management
- Institutional management
- Finances and affordability

#### **4.12 Integrated Transport Plan**

As noted earlier, the District municipality and its local municipalities suffer from a fragmented transport system due to so many reasons, including the low population, the vastness of the region, a declining railway service and poor taxi/bus facilities which make public transport not economically viable for the public transport operators. The current transport system is very awkward and expensive as travelers have to catch transport to main centres and towns beyond their destinations in order to reach smaller towns and rural areas. Furthermore, all the existing airfields in the district are run down as they are not maintained by the local municipalities.

Given the current inefficient public transport system in the region, the district municipality intends to prepare an integrated transport plan with the assistance of the Department of Transport which has to become part of the sector plans that are required in the IDP. The plan will focus attention on achieving an integrated system with linkages between the main and small towns and the rural areas in order to lay the foundation for the poverty eradication programme, local economic development, agriculture and tourism.

The following will be the outputs of the plan:

- Public transport record
- Operating licenses strategy
- Rationalisation plan
- Strategies for travel demand management
- Road and transport infrastructure provision, improvement and maintenance strategy
- Plans for the movement of hazardous substances
- Plans for the maintenance of the existing airfields to improve access by airfields to by air in the region
- Taxi/bus facilities in the main towns
- Building of new taxi ranks in the main towns.

#### **4.13 Disaster management plan**

In terms of the Disaster Management Legislation, each District Municipality must establish in its administration a disaster management unit for its municipal area. The unit is envisaged to deal with all issues concerning disaster and disaster management in the District municipal area.

In order to promote an integrated and coordinated approach to disaster management in the region, the district municipality in collaboration with its local municipalities and relevant provincial role-players prepared a disaster management plan which identified the various risks in the district. The plan also looked at the capacity that is needed to monitor, manage and mitigate disasters, resources and equipment for dealing with disasters. The following activities are included in the plan:

- The training of the head of the disaster management unit and the junior staff to enhance the capacity of the district municipality to prevent and to deal with all disasters effectively.
- The setting up of new equipment in the unit
- Training of municipal officials and councilors that will be involved in disaster management
- Workshops involving other role-players in disaster management with the district
- Collection and analysis of information
- Availability of resources within the district and local municipalities
- Availability of health facilities and expertise
- Conditions of roads in the district
- Water and sanitation
- Local communities (urban and rural)

- Contingency plans and emergency procedures which ensure maximum emergency preparedness
- Roles and responsibilities

### **Identified risks**

#### **The identified risks in the plan are:**

- High rainfall in certain areas and poor storm water drainage that causes the increased risk of flooding especially in the townships
- Drought that directly impacts on livestock and crop farming. The district being very reliant on commercial farming places it at high risk
- Veldfires and high winds that would compound the problem
- Serious lack of potable water that can result in cholera and other waterborne diseases
- Overloaded sewerage works pose a major health and environmental threat
- Medical waste that is not destroyed presents a high risk to persons coming into contact with such medical waste and the serious consequences of such contact.
- The ever increasing threat of HIV/AIDS which places a burden on the already high percentage of impoverished families in the area and the available medical facilities
- Deteriorating health facilities in the communities which result in an increasing demand for cemeteries
- Movement of people from the rural areas to urban areas which increases the urban risks
- Farm attacks pose a threat and hence there is a need for community policing and the formation of community policing forums
- Dirt roads in the rural areas pose a major problem
- Gaining access to farms is a serious problem due to the state of the roads and this pose a major threat to safety and security, networking and communication. It also poses great difficulties for mobile clinics and other emergency and services vehicles
- Extreme temperatures from very hot to extremely cold pose problems for the rural communities because there is a lack of fuel and power
- Hazardous materials move through the district pose a threat of spillage and contamination, in addition to serious accidents.
- High levels of poverty and unemployment in the district.

## **CHAPTER 5 : PROJECTS**

### **5.1 Introduction**

After having formulated the strategies, the next logical step is to develop projects. It is therefore clear that the project phase is about the design and specification of projects that the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality will implement in the 2013/14 financial year and even beyond. The available resources were taken into consideration when projects are proposed. The Pixley ka Seme District municipality has ensured that the identified projects have direct linkages with the priority issues and the objectives which were identified in the preceding phases. The nature of the projects determines the amount of the technicality and the strategy needed and should not be taken for granted. The localized strategic guidelines and the strategies are central in project development which means that projects must carry strategic emphasis. The projects are detailed more in the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan.

The District municipality after due consideration with various stakeholders identified the following projects and they are in line with the identified development objectives and strategies discussed above.

## 5.2 Project for 2013/14

The projects that will be undertaken in the 2013/14 financial year are shown in the table below. They consist of paving the indentified roads and repairing underlying pavement layers

### PROPOSAL 2

#### PROJECT LIST AND COST ESTIMATES

All the projects identified below have been informed by Business Plans submitted by the Local Municipalities.

The labour costs are based on a daily tariff of R65 per day for general labourers and a working month consisting of 22 days.

The aim being to create 2047 jobs over the next 10 Months with jobs ranging from a month to 10 months.

**Table81: INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT**

Description of project	Municipality	Towns	Allocation
Pavement layer and pothole rehabilitation	<b>Siyancuma</b>	Douglas	R 5,500,000
	<b>Emthanjeni</b>	De Aar	R 6,000,000
	<b>Thembelihle</b>	Hopetown	R 4,700,000
	<b>Kareeberg</b>	Carnarvon	R 4,000,000
	<b>Umsobomvu</b>	Colesberg Noupoort	R 4,000,000 R 1,000,000
Storm water drainage systems	Emthanjeni	De Aar	R 1,000,000
	<b>Renosterberg</b>	Petrusville	R 1,190,000
	Siyancuma	Griekwastad Campbell	R 2,000,000
	<b>Ubuntu</b>	Victoria west	R 1,500,000
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	R 1,500,000
Re gravelling of streets	Renosterberg	Petrusville	R 2,000,000
	Ubuntu	Loxton	R 2,000,000
	<b>Siyathemba</b>	Niekerkshoop	R 2,000,000
	Emthanjeni	De Aar	R 2,000,000
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>R 40 390 000</b>

#### **WASTE MANAGEMENT**

Description of project	Municipality	Towns	Allocation
Communal Waste bins	Siyathemba	Prieska Marydale Niekerkshoop	R 200,000
	Kareeberg	Vosburg Carnarvon Van Wyksvlei	R 140,000
	Siyancuma	Douglas Griekwastad Campbell Schmidtdrift	R 220,000
	Ubuntu	Victoria West Richmond	R 140,000

		Loxton	
	Renosterberg	Petrusville Philipstown Keurtjieskloof	R 100,000
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg Noupoort Norvalspond	R 280,000
	Thembelihle	Hopetown Strydenburg	R 120,000
Waste bins at Social grant pay points	Umsobomvu	Noupoort Norvalspond Colesberg	R 30,000
	Thembelihle	Strydenburg Hopetown	R 30,000
	Kareeberg	Vosberg Van wyksvlei Carnarvon	R 30,000
	Renosterberg	Petrusville Philipstown Keurtjieskloof	R 30,000
	Ubuntu	Richmond Loxton Victoria Wes	R 30,000
	Siyancuma	Douglas Griekwastad Campbell Schmidtsdrift	R 45,000
	Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop Marydale Prieska	R 30,000
Fencing of solid waste disposal sites	Renosterberg	Van der kloof	R 150,000
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>R 1,575,000</b>

### **WATER AND SANITATION**

<b>Description of project</b>	<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Towns</b>	<b>Allocation</b>
Bucket Eradication and rectification of VIP toilets	Siyathemba	Marydale	R 1,980,000
	Siyancuma	Campbell	R 1,000,000
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	R 1,000,000
Water reticulation	Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	R 390,000
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	R 1,000,000
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>R 5,370,000.00</b>

### **ENVIRONMENTAL**

<b>Description of project</b>	<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Towns</b>	<b>Allocation</b>
Cleaning, upgrading and maintenance of cemeteries	Thembelihle	Strydenburg	R 1,500,000
	Siyancuma	Schmidtsdrif	R 1,000,000

	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	R 1,000,000
Fencing and internal streets of cemeteries	Umsobomvu	Noupoort	R 1,500,000
	Ubuntu	Victoria West	R 1,500,000
Development of parks	Thembelihle	Hopetown Strydenburg	R 3,500,000
	Umsobomvu	Noupoort Norvalspont	R 3,500,000
	Renosterberg	Philipstown	R 1,500,000
	Ubuntu	Loxton	R 1,500,000
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>R 16,500,000.00</b>

## **ELECTRICITY**

<b>Description of project</b>	<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Towns</b>	<b>Allocation</b>
Upgrading of network	Siyathemba	Prieska	R 2,500,000
	Renosterberg	Petrusville	R 2,500,000
	Thembelihle	Hopetown	R 2,500,000
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	R 2,500,000
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>R 10,000,000</b>

## **INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT**

### **Cost estimate Labour Based**

<b>Description of project</b>	<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Towns</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total Labour cost</b>
Pavement layer and pothole rehabilitation	Siyancuma	Douglas	150	8 months	R 1,716,000
	Emthanjeni	De Aar	180	10 months	R 2,574,000
	Thembelihle	Hopetown	130	7 months	R 1,301,300
	Kareeberg	Carnarvon	120	7 months	R 1,201,200
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg Noupoort	120 30	7 months 4 months	R1,201,200 R 171,600
Storm water drainage systems	Emthanjeni	De Aar	30	4 months	R 171,600
	Renosterberg	Petrusville	35	3 months	R 150,150
	Siyancuma	Griekwastad Campbell	60	5 months	R 429,000
	Ubuntu	Victoria west	40	5 months	R 286,000
	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	40	5 months	R 286,000
Re gravelling of streets	Renosterberg	Petrusville	65	6 months	R 557,700
	Ubuntu	Loxton	65	6 months	R 557,700
	Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	65	6 months	R 557,700
	Emthanjeni	De Aar	65	6 months	R 557,700
<b>TOTAL</b>			<b>1195</b>		<b>R 11,780,850</b>

### **Plant**

Siyancuma and Thembelihle Local Municipality is in need of plant. The following plant will be acquired for the Municipalities



6m <sup>3</sup> Tipper truck per Municipality	@	R 700,000	X	2	R 1,400,000
Digger Loaders	@	R 400,000	X	2	R 800,000
					<b><u>R 2,200,000</u></b>

### **PROJECT DESCRIPTION: WASTE MANAGEMENT**

Labour : 1 X Bricklayer  
5 X labourers  
(Appoint 2 teams for bins totalling more than 4)

#### **Communal Waste Bins**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>No of bins</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total labour Cost</b>
Siyathemba	Prieska	5	12	2 months	R 41,800
	Marydale	4	12	2 months	R 41,800
	Niekerkshoop	2	6	1 month	R 10,450
Kareeberg	Vosberg	3	6	2 months	R 20,900
	Carnarvon	5	12	2 months	R 41,800
Siyancuma	Douglas	5	12	2 months	R 41,800
	Griekwastad	3	6	2 months	R 20,900
	Campbell	2	6	1 month	R 10,450
	Schmidtsdrift	2	6	1 month	R 10,450
Ubuntu	Victoria West	4	12	2 months	R 41,800
	Richmond	2	6	2 months	R 20,900
	Loxton	1	6	1 month	R 10,450
Renosterberg	Petrusville	2	6	1 months	R 10,450
	Philipstown	2	6	1 months	R 10,450
	Keurtjieskloof	1	6	1 month	R 10,450
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	8	12	3 months	R 62,700
	Noupoort	4	12	2 months	R 41,800
	Norvalspont	2	6	1 month	R 10,450
Thembelihle	Hopetown	4	12	2 months	R 41,800
	Strydenburg	2	6	1 month	R 10,450
<b>Total</b>		<b>40</b>	<b>168</b>		<b>R 512,050.00</b>

#### **Small bins at Social grant points**

Labour : 2 X labourers per bin

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>No of bins</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total labour Cost</b>
Umsobomvu	Noupoort	15	2	1 months	R 2,860
	Norvalspont	15	2	1 months	R 2,860
	Colesberg	20	2	1 month	R 2,860
Thembelihle	Hopetown	25	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Strydenburg	25	2	1 month	R 2,860
Kareeberg	Vosburg	15	2	1 months	R 2,860
	Vanwyksvlei	10	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Carnarvon	25	2	1 month	R 2,860
Renosterberg	Petrusville	25	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Philipstown	20	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Keurtjieskloof	5	2	1 month	R 2,860
Ubuntu	Richmond	20	2	1 month	R 2,860

	Loxton	5	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Victoria West	25	2	1 month	R 2,860
Siyancuma	Douglas	20	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Griekwastad	10	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Campbell	10	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Schmidtsdrift	10	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	15	2	1 month
	Marydale	15	2	1 month	R 2,860
	Prieska	20	2	1 month	R 2,860
Total		<b>350</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>1 month</b>	<b>R R 60,060.00</b>

### Fencing of solid waste disposal sites

Labour : 5 X labourers  
1 X Wire fixer

Municipality	Town	Fence	Jobs	Duration	Total labour Cost
Renosterberg	Van der Kloof		6	3 months	R 31,350
Total			<b>6</b>	<b>3 month</b>	<b>R 31,350</b>

**Total temporary jobs created Waste Management: 216**  
**Total permanent jobs 7**  
**223**

**Total labour cost R 603,460**

### PROJECT DESCRIPTION:

#### Bucket eradication and rectification of VIP / UDS toilets

Labour : 1 X Bricklayer  
5 X labourers

Municipality	Town	VIP / UDS	Jobs	Duration	Total labour Cost
Siyathemba	Marydale	175	50	6 months	R 462,660
Siyancuma	Campbell	300	40	6 months	R 365,640
Umsobomvu	Norvalspond	50	20	6 months	R 182,820
Total			<b>110</b>	<b>6 months</b>	<b>R 1,011,120.00</b>

### Water reticulation

We'll be able to create employment for **100** people for the duration of the project and will provide life skills that will promote efficient and equitable water use.

Municipality	Town	Jobs	Duration	Total labour Cost
Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	30	1.5 months	R 64,350
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	70	2 months	R 200,200

Total		<b>100</b>	<b>1.5 - 2 months</b>	<b>R 264,550.00</b>
-------	--	------------	-----------------------	---------------------

<b>Total temporary jobs created Water and Sanitation:</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>Total permanent jobs</b>	<b><u>1</u></b>
	<b>211</b>
<b>Total labour cost</b>	<b>R 1,275,670</b>

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT**

**Upgrading and maintenance of cemeteries**

**Job Creation**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total labour Cost</b>
Thembelihle	Strydenburg	15	8 months	R 193,050
		5	3months	
Siyancuma	Schmidtsdrift	15	8 months	R 193,050
		5	3 months	
Umsobumvu	Colesberg	20	6 months	R 193,050
		5	3 months	
<b>Total</b>		<b>65</b>	<b>3 – 10 months</b>	<b>R 579,150.00</b>

**Fencing and internal streets of cemeteries**

Labour : 4 X Team leaders  
46 X labourers

**Job Creation**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total labour Cost</b>
Umsobomvu	Noupoort	25	5months	R 197,450
Ubuntu	Victoria West	25	5 months	R 197,450
<b>Total</b>		<b>50</b>	<b>5 Months</b>	<b>R 394,900.00</b>

**Development of parks**

Labour : 3 X Brick layers / Team leaders  
27 X labourers

**Job Creation**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total labour Cost</b>
Thembelihle	Hopetown	35	3months	R 137,280
	Strydenburg	35	3months	R 137,280
Umsobumvu	Noupoort	35	3months	R 137,280
	Norvalspont	35	3months	R 137,280
Renosterberg	Philipstown	30	3months	R 115,830
Ubuntu	Loxton	30	3months	R 115,830

Emthanjeni	De Aar	30	3months	R 115,830
<b>Total</b>		<b>230</b>	<b>3 Months</b>	<b>R 896,610.00</b>

<b>Total temporary jobs created Environmental:</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>Total permanent jobs</b>	<u>5</u>
	<b>350</b>
<b>Total labour cost</b>	<b>R 1,870,660</b>

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION: ELECTRICITY**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	<b>Duration</b>	<b>Total labour Cost</b>
Siyathemba	Prieska	<b>60 temporary, 2 permanent</b>	8 months, sustainable	R 686,400.00
Renosterberg	Petrusville	2 longterm		
Thembelihe	Hopetown	2 longterm	sustainable	
Umsobomvu	Colesberg	2 longterm	sustainable	

<b>Total temporary jobs created Electricity:</b>	<b>60</b>
<b>Total permanent jobs</b>	<u>8</u>
	<b>68</b>
<b>Total labour cost</b>	<b>R 686,400</b>

**Summary**

**Total no of jobs created**

Infrastructure	<b>1195</b>
Waste management	<b>223</b>
Water and Sanitation	<b>211</b>
Environmental	<b>350</b>
Electrical	<u><b>68</b></u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>2047</b>

**Total Labour Cost**

Infrastructure	<b>R 11,780,850</b>
Waste management	<b>R 603,460</b>
Water and Sanitation	<b>R 1,275,670</b>
Environmental	<b>R 1,870,660</b>
<b>Electrical</b>	<b>R 686,400</b>
<b>Total</b>	<b>R 16 217 040</b>

Total Infrastructure	<b>R 40,390,000.00</b>
Plant	<b>R 2,200,000.00</b>
Total Waste Management	<b>R</b>
<b>1,575,000.00</b>	
Total Water and Sanitation	<b>R</b>
<b>5,370,000.00</b>	

Total Environmental  
 Total Electricity  
**Sub Total**

**R 16,500,000.00**  
**R 10,000,000.00**  
**R 76,035,000.00**

Contingencies (10%)  
**TOTAL**

**R 7,603,500.00**  
**R 83,638,500.00**

**Road paving projects**

Description of project	Municipality	Towns	Amount (roads)	Km (of road to be paved)
Paving and repair of pavement layers	Emthanjeni	De Aar	3	10
		Britstown	4	15
		Hanover	4	15
	Kareeberg	Vosburg	5	20
		Van Wyksviel	4	15
	Umsobomvu	Noupoort	5	20
		Norvalspont	5	20
	Renosterberg	Keurtjieskloof	3	15
		Philipstown	3	15
	Siyathemba	Niekerkshoop	4	20
		Marydale	4	20
	Siyancuma	Griekwastad	5	25
		Campbell	4	15
		Schmidtsdrif	3	10
	Thembehle	Strydenburg	5	20
		Hopetown	4	15
	Ubuntu	Richmond	5	25
Loxton		4	15	
Hutchinson		3	10	
<b>Total</b>				<b>320</b>

				In terms of Distance (km)
Kerbs and Channels	Em thanjeni	De Aar		10
		Britstown		15
		Hanover		15
	Kareeberg	Vosburg		20
		Van Wyksvlei		15
	Umsobomvu	Noupoort		20
		Norvalspont		20
	Renosterberg	Keurtjieskloof		15
		Philipstown		15
	Siyathemba	Niekertkshoop		20
		Marydale		20
	Siyancuma	Griekwastad		25
		Campbell		15
		Schmidtsdrif		10
Thembehlehli	Strydenberg		20	

		Hopetown		15
	Ubuntu	Richmond		25
		Loxton		15
		Hutchinson		10

## PROPOSED KAROO PROJECTS

**Table 82: Proposed karoo projects**

TOPIC	Role played by Arid Areas Research Programme	Role played by N Cape Govt & other Karoo provinces	Role played by DMs in N Cape and other Karoo provinces	Role played by Karoo Dev Foundation
1. TOURISM	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Karoo Tourism Strategy – research funded by UFS</li> <li>2. Application to SANPAD for post-graduate study (UFS, NIHE, CUT, Rhodes, North West University)</li> <li>3. Will fund Mr Ton Hens of Dutch PUM programme to research background to Karoo Tourism Strategy</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Qualitative interviews</li> <li>2. Policy workshops</li> <li>3. Synchronisation with provincial tourism policies and programmes</li> <li>4. Co-ordination of 4 Karoo provinces</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Application to DBSA by Pixley ka Seme, Central Karoo DM and possibly Cacadu DM)</li> <li>2. Inclusion into IDPs</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tourism for FIFA 2010: The Karoo Highways Map</li> <li>2. Karoo web portal</li> <li>3. Facilitate Karoo Tourism Strategy discussions with Ton Hens, Judy Maguire and Peter Myles</li> </ol>
2. Karoo Crafts marketing	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Survey of 150 Karoo crafters</li> <li>2. PhD study of crafters</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Synchronisation with provincial crafts policies and programmes</li> <li>2. Co-ordination of 4 Karoo provinces</li> <li>3. Start-up funding for Karoo crafters?</li> <li>4. Crafts training on the CCDI model?</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Support for emergent crafters – membership fees of True Karoo Crafts</li> <li>2. Inclusion into IDPs</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. “True Karoo crafts co-operative” – crafts marketing</li> <li>2. Karoo crafts catalogue</li> <li>3. Karoo crafts stalls on the highways</li> <li>4. Promotion of windmill crafters</li> <li>5. Karoo web portal</li> </ol>
3. Karoo Lamb marketing	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ongoing research by Univ of Pretoria about marketability of Karoo lamb</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Western Cape Govt to provide R125 000 for registration, consultation and verification</li> </ol>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Univ Pretoria (Prof Kirsten) to launch registration of Karoo Brand, negotiation with lamb producers and creation of verification system</li> </ol>
4. An airport strategy for the Karoo	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Studies of market demand for Karoo airports?</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identify regional impacts of Beaufort West airport</li> <li>2. Identify additional N Cape airports for development</li> <li>3. Draft collaborative strategy on Karoo air transport</li> <li>4. Identify public and private sector investment options</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. DMs jointly apply to DBSA for feasibility study for B-West airport and Karoo air strategy</li> <li>2. Inclusion into IDPs</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Assistance to Beaufort West airport as central Karoo air hub</li> </ol>
5. Lake Xhariep (“Karoo Riviera region”)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Various studies of Karoo Riviera region – postgrad students</li> <li>2. Identify international</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Collaboration between 3 provinces – identify development issues and options</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Collaboration between DMs and LMs</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Applied for funding from Open Society Foundation to draft “Karoo Riviera IDP”</li> </ol>

	precedents of Riviera development	2. Work towards a Karoo Riviera IDP		
6. Green energy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identify green energy experts</li> <li>2. Identify economic impacts of green energy projects</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Synchronise provincial approaches to green energy</li> <li>2. Attract possible investors</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Apply to DBSA for feasibility study funding</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Elemental Africa study of biogas options</li> </ol>
7. Small town development.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Extend Western Cape small towns economic potential study to other Karoo provinces – done by Stellenbosch University</li> <li>2. Identify and study regional economic trends which impact on towns</li> <li>3. Key focus area around Karoo Riviera</li> <li>4. Karoo focus area around SALT/SKA</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identify suitable rural and urban development strategies</li> <li>2. Promote high-level strategic development options, e.g. “astro-tourism”</li> <li>3. Promote international liaison on such strategies</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Collaborate with specific town studies</li> <li>2. Collaborate with Karoo Hoogland DM and Pixley ka Seme DM about SALT/SKA towns</li> <li>3. Collaborate with DMs about Lake Xhariep towns</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Create system of “town champions” to promote liaison across the Karoo</li> </ol>
8. Commonage development and land reform	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Studies of Carnarvon and Williston commonages completed</li> <li>2. Study of SW Free State being done</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Draft strategy of linking commonage with land redistribution</li> <li>2. Assist drafting of commonage management plans</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Collaborate with local commonage studies</li> <li>2. Include commonage into IDP</li> <li>3. Draft commonage management plans</li> </ol>	
9. Graaff-Reinet Natural History Museum	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Possibly conduct a stakeholder analysis and market demand study</li> <li>2. Facilitate the drafting of a feasibility study</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Provide support to link the proposed museum with Provincial tourism and heritage assets</li> <li>4. Possibly provide a small degree of counter-funding, e.g. for staff</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provide a facility for the exhibit</li> <li>2. Provide small degree of counter-funding, e.g. for municipal services</li> <li>3. Inclusion in IDPs</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Facilitation of contact between the owner of the collection, Amatole Museum, Rhodes University and possible donors</li> </ol>



### 5.3 Pixley bulk water supply projects

As noted earlier, the District Municipality with the financial assistance from DWA is currently implementing its bulk water supply project so as to address the problem of water scarcity in the region. The project covers the following areas:

## Capital Costs

<b>Scheme</b>	<b>Implementation Costs (R million)</b>	<b>Total Life Cycle Costs (R million)</b>
1: Orange River – Colesberg – Noupoort	150,917	201,303
2: Merriman – Richmond	61,116	73,662
3: Vanderkloof – Petrusville – Philipstown – De Aar – Britstown – Vosburg	499,939	592,859
4: Prieska – Copperton – Vanwyksvlei – Camarvon	40,000	46,377
5: Orange River – Griekwastad		
6: Orange River – Niekerkshoop	29,754	34,696
7: Orange River – Marydale	18,043	22,891
8: Hutchinson – Victoria West	61,940	77,628

**Table 83: District priority list ranging from 1 to 7 for funding 2013/2014 financial year**

<i>DM</i>	<i>LM</i>	<i>SchName</i>	<i>Project Name *</i>	<i>Component</i>	<i>Project Status</i>	<i>Total 5 year allocation</i>
PKS	Emthanjeni	De Aar	Bulk water supply to PKS : Borehole development programme in De Aar	Water Pipeline	Design	45500000
PKS	Kareeberg	Carnarvon	Development of additional boreholes for Carnarvon	Water Groundwater	Conceptual	0
PKS	Renosterberg	Vanderkloof	New WWTW for Van Der Kloof	Waste Water Treatmt Works	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Niekershoop	Bulk water supply to Niekerkshoop	Water Pipeline	Conceptual	0
PKS	Thembelihle	Hopetown	Bulk water supply to Hopetown (MIG675)	Water Pipeline	Construction	0
PKS	Ubuntu	Victoria West	Bulk Water Supply to Victoria West	Water Groundwater	Awaiting Funding	4000000
PKS	Umsobomvu	Norvalspont	Bulk water supply from Gariiep dam to Norvalspont	Water Pipeline	Strategy in Development	0
PKS	Siyancuma	Schmidtsdrift	377:Schmidtsdrift:Water treatment & Auxiliary works,bulk supply pipelines	Water Treatment Works	Tender	0
PKS	Emthanjeni	De Aar	Bulk water supply to PKS: Water supply to Britstown, Phillipstown and Vosburg	Water Pipeline	Awaiting Funding	128000000
PKS	Kareeberg	Vosburg	Vosburg: additional bulk storage	Water Reservoir	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Renosterberg	Philipstown	Borehole development for Philipstown to accommodate the 350 new houses planned in Philipstown	Water Groundwater	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Marydale	926:Marydale Upgrading of water supply infrastructure	Water Pipeline	Construction	2679000
PKS	Thembelihle	Strydenburg	889:Steynville Bulk Water Supply & Distribution	Water Pipeline	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Ubuntu	Richmond	Merriman - Richmond	Water	Awaiting	0

<i>DM</i>	<i>LM</i>	<i>SchName</i>	<i>Project Name *</i>	<i>Component</i>	<i>Project Status</i>	<i>Total 5 year allocation</i>
			borehole field development	Groundwater	Funding	
PKS	Umsobomvu	Noupoort	Bulk Water Supply to Umsobomvu: Noupoort Phase (MIG147)	Water Pipeline	Awaiting Funding	42000000
PKS	Siyancuma	Douglas	Upgrading of WTW in Douglas	Water Treatment Works	Conceptual	0
PKS	Emthanjeni	Britstown	Britstown upgrading of dry sanitation.	Waste Water Treatmt Works	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Kareeberg	Carnarvon	Upgrading of Water network in Carnarvon	Water Reticulation	Conceptual	2000000
PKS	Renosterberg	Petrusville	Installation of water pump at commonage	Water Pumpstation	Conceptual	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Marydale	Marydale reticulation feasibility	Water Reticulation	Feasibility	0
PKS	Thembelihle	Hopetown	890:Hopetown Upgrading Raw water abstraction from Orange River	Water Pumpstation	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Ubuntu	Victoria West	Victoria West: upgrading of oxidation ponds	Waste Water Treatmt Works	Conceptual	0
PKS	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	Upgrading of VIP to waterborne	Sanitation Low Flush	Awaiting Funding	5000000
PKS	Siyancuma	Campbell	Water Purification Alternatives / feasibility study.Campbell&Griekwastad	Planning	Feasibility	0
PKS	Emthanjeni	De Aar	Extension of De Aar Bulk Water Supply.	Water Groundwater	Completed	35000000
PKS	Kareeberg	Carnarvon	Bulk water supply to Carnarvon	Water Pipeline	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Renosterberg	Petrusville	New Bulk Water Reservoir for Petrusville	Water Reservoir	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Marydale	Bulk water supply to Marydale	Water Pipeline	Conceptual	0
PKS	Thembelihle	Hopetown	Upgrading water supply: Hopetown and Steynsville	Water Treatment Works	Design	0

<i>DM</i>	<i>LM</i>	<i>SchName</i>	<i>Project Name *</i>	<i>Component</i>	<i>Project Status</i>	<i>Total 5 year allocation</i>
PKS	Ubuntu	Victoria West	Victoria Wes Upgrading and Replacement of old asbestos reticulation pipes	Water Reticulation	Feasibility	0
PKS	Umsobomvu	Norvalspont	Upgrading of sewer reticulation network (Norvalspont)	Sanitation Low Flush	Awaiting Funding	7000000
PKS	Siyancuma	Douglas	Upgrading of WWTW in Douglas	Waste Water Treatment Works	Conceptual	0
PKS	Emthanjeni	De Aar	Rehabilitation of old reticulation network in De Aar and replace old steel pipes in the CBD	Water Reticulation	Conceptual	0
PKS	Kareeberg	Van Wyksvlei	Water pipeline from Copperton to Vanwyksvlei	Water Pipeline	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Renosterberg	Philipstown	Development of water source for small scale farmers	Water Groundwater	Conceptual	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Marydale	Upgrading of Oxidation ponds in Marydale	Waste Water Treatmt Works	Construction	0
PKS	Thembelihle	Hopetown	Upgrading of Sewer pump station	Waste Water Treatmt Works	Conceptual	0
PKS	Ubuntu	Richmond	Richmond Upgrading and Replacement of old asbestos reticulation pipes	Water Reticulation	Feasibility	0
PKS	Umsobomvu	Colesberg	Upgrading Supply line from van der Waltsfontein booster station to reservoir	Water Pipeline	Awaiting Funding	3500000
PKS	Siyancuma	Salt Lake	Salt Lake BWS	Water Pipeline	Feasibility	0
PKS	Emthanjeni	Hanover	Hanover upgrading of dry sanitation.	Waste Water Treatmt Works	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Kareeberg	Carnarvon	Reuse of final effluent for irrigation purposes	Planning	Feasibility	500000
PKS	Renosterberg	Philipstown	Upgrading of all internal reticulation and replacement of old pipes in Philipstown	Planning	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Prieska	Upgrading of water treatment	Water Treatment	Awaiting	0

<i>DM</i>	<i>LM</i>	<i>SchName</i>	<i>Project Name *</i>	<i>Component</i>	<i>Project Status</i>	<i>Total 5 year allocation</i>
			works in Prieska	Works	Funding	
PKS	Thembehlehle	Oranjerivier station	Provision of bulk water to Oranjerivier station.	Water Groundwater	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Ubuntu	Loxton	Loxton Upgrading and replacement of old asbestos reticulation pipes	Water Reticulation	Feasibility	0
PKS	Umsobomvu	Norvalspont	Construction on new sewerage rising main (Norvalspont)	Waste Water Treatment Works	Awaiting Funding	970000
PKS	Siyancuma	Campbell	Dry sanitation system. Campbell / Campbell Oxidation Ponds	Sanitation Basic	Conceptual	0
PKS	Emthanjeni	De Aar	Upgrading of De Aar Sewer Purification works	Waste Water Treatment Works	Completed	7532138
PKS	Kareeberg	Van Wyksvlei	Upgrading of Water Network in Van Wyksvlei	Water Reticulation	Conceptual	0
PKS	Renosterberg	Petrusville	Installation of Bulk Water meters at reservoir in Petrusville	Planning	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Siyathemba	Prieska	Upgrading of VIP toilets to full waterborne system & installation of sewer reticulation system	Sanitation Water Borne	Awaiting Funding	0
PKS	Thembehlehle	Strydenburg	Bulk water supply to Strydenburg	Water Groundwater	Awaiting Funding	51666667
PKS	Ubuntu	Victoria West	Installation of pre-paid water meters.	Planning	Awaiting Funding	160000
PKS	Umsobomvu	Norvalspont	Upgrading of bulk water abstraction point: Mazizakhe	Water Pumpstation	Conceptual	2000000
PKS	Siyancuma	Griekwastad	Upgrading of Griekwastad Sanitation.	Waste Water Treatment Works	Conceptual	0

**Table 84: Current Approved Bulk projects:**

<b>Municipality</b>	<b>Town</b>	<b>Project Description</b>	<b>Allocation</b>
<b>Thembelihle</b>	<b>Hopetown</b>	<b>Bulk water supply from the Orange river to water treatment works to distribution</b>	<b>R 37,000,000-00 (3 year allocation)</b>
<b>Renosterberg</b>	<b>Petrusville</b>	<b>Completion of water pipeline to Petrusville and Philipstown and upgrading of water treatment works</b>	<b>R 40,000,000-00 (3 year allocation)</b>
<b>Umsobomvu</b>	<b>Colesberg</b>	<b>Upgrading of waste water &amp; water treatment works</b>	<b>R 86,000,000-00 (3 year allocation)</b>

## 5.4 Solar Energy Projects

Pixley ka Seme District Municipality and its 8 local municipalities are currently promoting a green economy in the district that seeks to promote generated economic activities that preserve and enhance environmental quality while using natural resources more efficiently. The projects are shown in the tables below.

**Table 85: Identified Solar Energy Projects**

PIXLEY KA SEME DISTRICT PHOTOVOLTAIC PREFERRED BIDS		Capacity (MW)
	Project Name	
1	SlimSun Swartland Solar Park	5.00
2	RustMo1 Solar Farm	6.76
3	<b>Mulilo Renewable Energy Solar PV De Aar</b>	<b>9.65</b>
4	Konkoonsies Solar	9.65
5	Aries Solar	9.65
6	Greefspan PV Power Plant	10.00
7	Herbert PV Power Plant	19.90
8	<b>Mulilo Renewable Energy Solar PV Prieska</b>	<b>19.93</b>
9	Soutpan Solar Park	28.00
10	Witkop Solar Park	30.00
11	Touwsrivier Project	36.00
12	<b>De Aar Solar PV</b>	<b>48.25</b>
13	<b>SA Mainstream Renewable Power Droogfontein</b>	<b>48.25</b>
14	Letsatsi Power Company	64.00
15	Lesedi Power Company	64.00
16	<b>Kalkbult</b>	<b>72.50</b>
17	Kathu Solar Energy Facility	75.00
18	<b>Solar Capital De Aar (Pty) Ltd</b>	<b>75.00</b>

**Table 86: Preferred solar bids**

Project ID	Project	Bidder Name	Technology	Net Capacity	Location
IPPID443	Greefspan PV Power Plant	AE-AMD Independent Power Producer 1 (Pty) Ltd	Solar PV	10.0	Douglas, Siyancuma LM
IPPID696	Herbert PV Power Plant	AE-AMD Independent Power Producer 1 (Pty) Ltd	Solar PV	19.9	Douglas, Siyancuma LM
IPPID065	Mulilo Renewable Energy Solar PV Prieska	GestampMulilo Consortium	Solar PV	19.9	Prieska, Northern Cape
IPPID064	Mulilo Renewable Energy Solar PV De Aar	GestampMulilo Consortium	Solar PV	9.7	De Aar, Emthanjeni LM
IPPID182	De Aar Solar PV	South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power De Aar PV (Pty) Ltd	Solar PV	48.3	De Aar, Emthanjeni LM
IPPID564	Solar Capital De Aar (Pty) Ltd	Solar Capital De Aar (Pty) Ltd	Solar PV	75.0	De Aar, Emthanjeni LM
IPPID159	Kalkbult	Scatec Solar	Solar PV	72.5	Phillipstown, Renosterberg LM



**Table 87: Pixley ka Seme Renewable Energy Projects 2012/13**

DATE	TOWN	PROVIDER	PROJECT TYPE	GENERATION CAPACITY	CONTACTS
18 March2013 & 07/10/2012	Farm Caroluspoort	Kleinfontein Solar energy		10MW	T. Zwane Tel: (021) 395-1778 Fax: (021) 3120-7539
22May/2012	Near Noupoot	Inkululeko energy	Photovoltaic solar	20MW	Tel: (083) 325 9965 Fax: (086) 510 2537
06/10/2012	District Hopetown	Greefspan PV Power plant	Power station	55MW	Dr. Tamuka Kaseke Tel: (021) 461 3382 Fax: (021) 461 2128
15/08/2013	De Aar	South & North wind energy	power lines	132kV	Mr. Hassam Tel: ( 021) 310-3271 Fax: (021) 934 5278
23/07/2013	Farm Rietfontein	DIDA Solar energy	Power line	11MW	Tel: (021) 310 3271 Fax: (021) 934 5278
10May 2013	Farm Graspan	Construction Photovoltaic panels		90MW	Mr. Mark Gordon Tel : (021)680-5120 Fax : (021)951-2840
04/04/2013	Damfontein	Solar energy		19MW	Tel: (021) 719- 4531 Fax: (021) 234-1603
28/09/2012	Copperton	Wind energy		140MW	Mr Zuben Jessa Tel: (021) 801 7272 Fax:(021) 422 2621
14/10/2012	Farm Atherton No 82	Photovoltaic power	Power station	20MW	Mr. Zwane <a href="tel:0213103929">Tel:(021) 310 3929</a>
27/08/2012	Near Douglas	Suntrace Africa (PTY) LTD	PV Power station		Irme van Zyl Tel: (054) 338 0722 Facsimile:(086)624 0722
30/08/2012	Farm Davidskraal	PV Solar energy	Power plant	12MW	T Zwane <a href="tel:0213103929">Tel:(021) 310 3929</a> Facsimile: (012) 320 7561

29/08/2012	Prieska	Jouren Solar (PTY) Ltd			<a href="tel:0112346621">Tel:(011)234 6621</a> Fax:(086) 684 0547
08/06/2012	Herbert substation	AE-AMD Renewable energy (PTY)	PV Solar	20MW	Tel: (054) 338 0722 Facsimile: (086) 624 0306
05/06/2012	Greefspan substation	AE-AMD Renewable Energy (PTY) Ltd	PV Solar	44.4MW	Tel: (054) 338 0722 Facsimile: (086) 624 0306
08/06/2012	Douglas	PV/CPV Solar energy		100MW	Tel: (021) 888 2429 Fax: (021) 888 2693
25/03/2012	De Aar	PV/CPV Solar	Concentrating Solar Power	75MW	Tel: (011) 798 0600 Fax: (011) 803 7272

## 5.5 Economic impact

The investments in sola projects will bring socio-economic relief on distressed communities for at least 12 to 24 months and activate other sectors of the District economy. Direct job creation through the construction of the Solar Plant as well as its operation and maintenance. Nurturing the local economy and creating new enterprise opportunities. Through community trusts community social programmes will be funded. At this stage Emthanjeni LM would benefit most, followed by Renosterberg LM (was identified for Presidential programme: War on poverty) and Siyathemba LM. Note: Covers communities within 50km range of development of plant in all cases. The impacts are set against 72 to 75mw plants and may not apply in all cases where specifics has not been sought from preferred bidders.

- The construction phase is expected to extend over a period of approximately 12 months and will create approximately 750 employment opportunities during peak construction.
- The minimum number of people on site during the construction phase would be estimated at 33 and this will occur primarily when the site is being prepared for construction.
- The work associated with the construction phase will be undertaken by contractors and will include the establishment of the Solar Plant and the associated components, including, access roads, substation, services and power line. Once in operation the plant will provide approximately 55 permanent jobs.
- It is anticipated that approximately 80% of the employment opportunities will be available to low-skilled workers (construction labourers, security staff etc.), 10% to semi-skilled (drivers, equipment operators etc.) and 10% to skilled personnel (engineers, land surveyors, project managers etc.).
- The majority of the employment opportunities, specifically the low and semi-skilled opportunities, are therefore likely to be available to members from the local
- The local service industry is likely to benefit as a direct result of the construction of the Solar Plant.
- The potential opportunities for the local service sector would be linked to accommodation, catering, cleaning, transport and security, etc. associated with the construction workers on the site.
- The majority of construction workers are likely to be accommodated in the nearest local towns.
- This will create opportunities for local hotels, B&Bs, guest farms and people who want to rent out their houses. We anticipate that approximately 40 skilled personnel will be employed during the construction phase and that those personnel will all need to be housed in affected areas

### 5.5.1 Mining Concerns

- Processing of mining rights and permits can be a bureaucratic process.
- There is an extensive black market for semi-precious stones.
- Processing of semi-precious stones (especially tiger's eye) is not done in the district or province.  
**Potential:** Applications to prospect Uranium, molybdenum in Richmond area and the highly debated Shale Gas exploration. The polishing of semi-precious stones (Siyathemba LM area)

### Potential for Pixley Special Economic Zone (SEZ): Considerations to include:

- Single Factory EPZ, wherein a single, large investor can be accommodated. Access to local raw materials and feedstock will be the biggest attraction of this location. This is within the Siyancuma Local Municipality, 3km south of Richie.Modder-Riet River Agro-Processing SEZ. Other areas for similar SEZs include the Griekwastad, Campbell and Schmidtsdrift and the Hopetown area. There is already the much publicised malt manufacturing project, with an off-take

agreement in place to supply Heineken and discussions to supply SA Breweries. Other opportunities that can be considered are

- Fertilizer producers or distribution points;
- Agricultural equipment
- Hydroponic Stations;
- Research Stations
- Gas manufacturing, process or distribution in De Aar supported by plantations in Carnavon and other areas
- The project is on the border with the Frances Baard DM and will impact on projects in that DM.
- A Renewable Energy Technology Park with a single large anchor tenant.
- A 'local focus SEZ' wherein this Technology Park will be focused on the manufacturing of very specific products with specific applications, typically for a large local, long term product.
- If the renewable SEZ project can develop then the renewable energy outputs can be provided to a company seeking independent, green energy. The Single Factory EPZ can then be extended to that investor.
- Competitive Sector Clusters :
  - Renewable Technology manufacturing centre;
  - Repair facilities; and
  - Research facilities: Piloting new diversification programmes and commercialization initiatives
- Accommodate new SMME's and incubators linked to:
  - Training
  - Logistics
  - Machinery construction
  - Equipment repair
- **Leverages on an Intermodal Rail-cargo:** The envisaged Transnet investment in the rail corridor and the port should raise the capacity of the export channel, which traverses the Northern Cape and Western Cape provinces, by 57%, from 53-million tons to 83-million tons over the seven-year period.
  - Multi-sector zones focused on agro-processing and other agro-based businesses
  - De Aar: Inland manufacturing works, Inland steel smelter with an SEZ and steel galvanizing activities

For example: Renewable Energy Hub: (the initiative is linked to energy, food and environmental sustenance and can be best fitted in a Special Economic Zone)

**Table 88: Renewable energy hub**

Type of Renewable Energy Production	Present in Pixley ka Seme
Biomass	Process to start plantation in progress
Geothermal	
Hydro	Van der Kloof Dam and down Orange River
Solar	7 Preferred Bids more applications in progress
Wind	Applications lodged
Agae	Electricity and biotechnology outputs for commercial purposes

Category	Products
<b>Cereal Based Industry</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Biscuit manufacture</li> <li>• Corn cereal</li> </ul>
<b>Fruits and Vegetables Based Industry</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Frozen fruits and vegetables</li> <li>• Canned fruit and vegetables</li> <li>• Dried fruit and dehydrated vegetables</li> <li>• Sauces, purees and concentrates</li> <li>• Juices</li> <li>• Pickles</li> </ul>
<b>Medicinal Herbs Based Industry</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medicinal products</li> </ul>
<b>Floriculture Based Industry</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fresh and dried flowers</li> </ul>
<b>Livestock and Poultry</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Processed poultry and meat products</li> <li>• Meat gravy concentrates</li> <li>• Mutton and lamb processing</li> <li>• Dry meat</li> </ul>
<b>Oilseed based Industry</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Animal Feeds</li> <li>• Essential oils</li> <li>• Bio-fuels</li> </ul>

#### **SKA AND IMPACT ON THE REGION: KAREEBERG LM**

It is believed that apart from the astronomical impacts, there will be socio-economic impacts. Attraction and clustering of firms through the creation of the R&D infrastructure – Joint Ventures and Strategic Partnerships will be guiding principles for investments in the area.

**Table 89: SKA SA Benefits Register: July 2008-August 2010**

<b>Infrastructure Description</b>	<b>Total Females</b>	<b>Total Males</b>	<b>Total Youth</b>	<b>Total Disabilities</b>	<b>Total Job Opportunities</b>	<b>Total Cost for Job Opportunities [R]</b>	<b>Affirmable Business Enterprises [R]</b>	<b>Total Cost [R]</b>
Main Access Road	40	265	174	1	480	7 210 920.00	2 187278.03	9 398 198.03
Klerefontein Houses & Office	5	12	7	0	24	379 673.61	100400.00	480 113.61
On Site Complex	3	50	35	0	88	42 500.00	905000.00	947 500.00
Grid Power Line	2	8	16	0	26	1 295 378.00	240000.00	1 535 378.00
SKA Local Purchases							4367994.59	4 367 994.00
<b>Total</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>335</b>	<b>232</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>618</b>	<b>8 928 471.61</b>	<b>7 80672.62</b>	<b>16 729 183.64</b>

## 5.6 Tourism

The District Municipality identified the following activities that will be linked to develop synergy and impact with the proposed municipal tourism plan and the existing Spatial Development Framework (SDF):

- Corridor development on the Orange and Vaal rivers.
- Assessing the further development of Renosterfontein and Doornkloof game reserves.
- Adding value and local incomes from game hunting.
- Enhanced promotion and site development of the district's Anglo Boer war battlefields.
- Better mapping and marketing of San Rock paintings.
- A development plan for water sports facilities at Xhariep dam.
- Branding of the district.

It is imperative to note here that the District Municipality has built on this work by undertaking a strengths and weaknesses analysis of tourism potential during the 2008/09 IDP review process. The results of this need is to guide further planning.

## 5.7 Agriculture

As noted in the DGDS, Agriculture is the largest single industry although little down stream added value currently takes place. A substantial process of value chain analysis is currently being undertaken so as to identify constraint to adding more value locally and removing these. Priority is given to sheep and wool (cashmere) and potato sector.

### **The following initiatives were identified by the economic development investigation:**

- Kalahari goat project with potential to benefit 700 emerging farmers.
- Establishment of 12 emerging farmers on a communal basis.
- Goat farming.
- Community farms.
- Pistachio nuts.
- Production of flower bulbs.
- Organic meat production.
- Pixley ka Seme bulk water supply scheme to support 400 emerging irrigation farmers.

### **High impact projects as identified by the DGDS are:**

- Tourism
- Revitalisation of the rail network
- Uranium
- Refurbishment and maintenance of roads (1600km)
- Tiger's eye

## 5.8 Rural Development

The district and its local municipalities identified the following objectives and projects that are aimed at addressing the developmental challenges of the region:

### **Identified Objectives**

- Stimulating economic development

- Social development
- Development of the skills base in the region
- Addressing infrastructure backlogs
- Land reform
- Promoting development and employment activities in the designated Rural Services Centres as identified by the integrated settlement structures.

**Identified anchor projects:**

- PKS bulk water supply scheme to support 400 emerging irrigation farmers
- Pistachio nuts
- Agro-tourism
- Production of flower bulbs
- Mohair weaving
- Organically produced meat
- Goat farming
- Kalahari goat project

**Proposed institutional changes:**

- Community and/or stakeholder participation in rural development
- Capacity building
- Human resource development
- Communication strategy
- Compilation of a rural development strategy

**5.9 PKS Bulk water supply project**

As noted earlier, the District Municipality with the financial assistance from DWA is currently implementing its bulk water supply project so as to address the problem of water scarcity in the region. The project covers the following areas:

Scheme 1: Orange river – Colesberg – Noupoot

Scheme 2: Merriman – Richmond

Scheme 3: Vanderkloof – Petrusville – Phillipstown – De Aar – Britstown – Vosburg

Scheme 4: Prieska – Copperton – Van Wyksvlei – Carnarvon.

Scheme 5: Hopetown – Strydenburg

Scheme 6: Orange river – Griekwastad

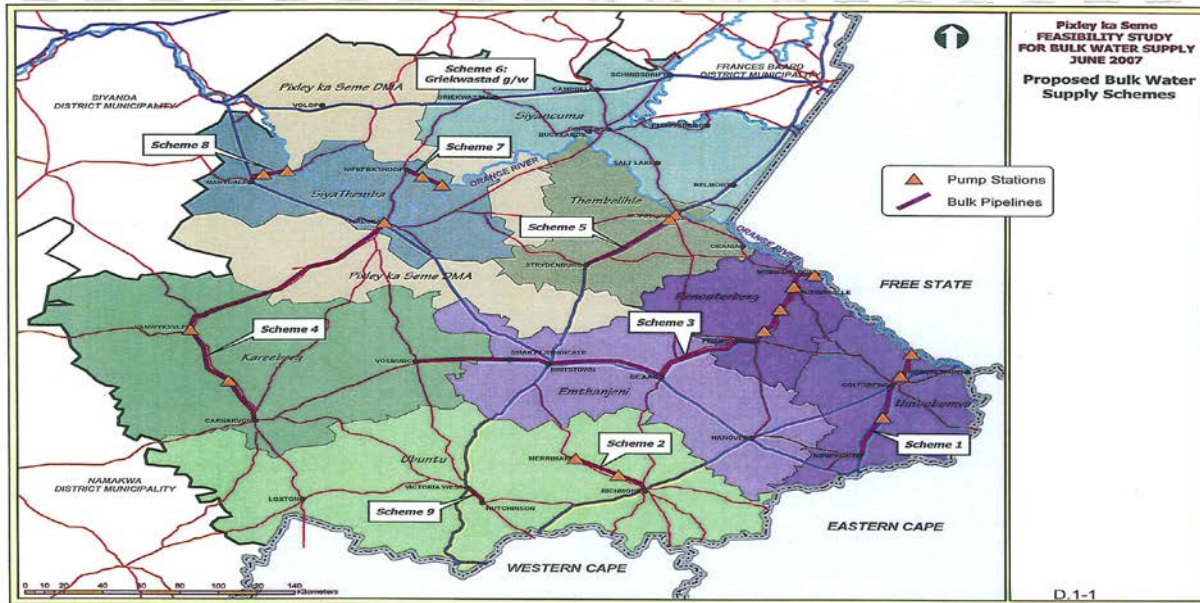
Scheme 7: Orange river – Niekerkshoop

Scheme 8: Orange river – Marydale

Scheme 9: Hutchinson Victoria-West



# Proposed schemes



**Table90: Department of education projects**

<b>District</b>	<b>Municipal Area</b>	<b>School Name</b>	<b>Programme</b>	<b>Description of Physical Facilities - Quantity, Size, etc</b>	<b>Project Status</b>	<b>2013/2014</b>
All municipalities	All Municipalities	Public Ordinary and Special Schools	Day to Day Maintenance	Maintenance	Ongoing	R 5,500
All municipalities	All municipalities	All districts	Leases	Office Accommodation		R 4,000
All municipalities	All municipalities	Mobile Relocations	Mobile Classroom	Mobile Relocations	Construction	R 2,500
All municipalities	All municipalities	Mobile Connections	Mobile Classroom	Mobile Connections	Construction	R 500
All municipalities	All municipalities	Mobile Classrooms	Mobile Classroom	Purchase of Mobile structures	Construction	R 2,500
<b>TOTAL</b>						<b>R 15,000</b>
Pixley - Ka - Seme	Emthanjeni	Pixley - ka - Seme District Office	Water	upgrade water supplies	Design	R 500
Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Delta P.S	Adminstration Block	New Large Admin Block	Construction	R 858
Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Phakamisani HS	Adminstration Block	New Large Admin Block	Construction	R 1,500
Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Monwabisi H.S	Computer Centre	Construction of Computer Lab	Construction	R 727
Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Alpha PS	Disabled Facilities	Admin, Ablution, 20 classrooms, HoDs, Storerooms, Media, Computer Lab, Computer Classroom, Hall	Construction	2,700
Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Kareeville PS	ECD	2 Single ECD Classroom required	Design	R 949
Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Keurtjieskloof P.S	Fencing	New Fence	Design	R 500

Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Pixley - ka - Seme District Offices	Offices	Conversion of vacant hostel into offices Phase 2 -Car parking, Paving, Landscaping, Storerooms	Design	R 2,500
Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Hanover Hostel	Repairs and Renovations	Hostel Refurbishment	Design	R 1,750
Pixley ka Seme	Emthanjeni	St Johns PS	School	Full service school	Construction	R 18,000
Pixley ka Seme	Thembelihle	Steynsville [ New School]	School	Full service school	Identify	R 0
Pixley ka Seme	Kareeberg	Vosburg Delta Hostel	Repairs and Renovations	Hostel Refurbishment	Design	R 1,500
Pixley Ka Seme	Kareeberg	Vanwyksvlei I/S	Water	New borehole with filtering system		R 350
Pixley Ka Seme	Renosterberg	Petrusville H.S	Ablution Blocks	Large ablution block - new	Retention	R 263
Pixley Ka Seme	Renosterberg	Phillipsvale HS	School	Full service school	Identify	R 9,000
Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Karikama H.S	Ablution Blocks	Large ablution block - new	Retention	R 153
Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Karikama H.S	Adminstration Block	New Large Admin Block	tender	R 2,200
Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Karikama H.S	Classrooms	4 New classrooms	Identify	R 1,800
Pixley ka Seme	Siyancuma	Riverside H.S	Computer Centre	Construction of Computer Lab	Construction	R 113
Pixley ka Seme	Siyancuma	Bongani SS	School	Full service school	Construction	R 6,500
Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Dombietersfontein PS	Electricity	Supply of electricity to farm schools		R 250
Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Pampoenpoort PS	Electricity	Supply of electricity to farm schools		R 250
Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Melton world PS	Electricity	Supply of electricity to farm schools		R 100
Pixley Ka	Ubuntu	Van der	Electricity	Supply of electricity to farm		R 100

Seme		Waltspoort PS		schools		
Pixley ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Novalspont PS	Disabled Facilities	Construction of ramps	Design	R 200
Pixley ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Lowryville PS	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Design	R 935
Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Norvalspont IS	Science Lab	New Science Lab	Construction	R 163
<b>TOTAL</b>						<b>R 53,861</b>

### Identified Institutions for implementing projects in the region

The implementation of an integrated development plan is not as straight forward and clear as that of a structure plan (development plan of a town). The implementation of an integrated development plan compels actions in various sectors both government and private. In order to coordinate some of the development priorities contained in the IDP of the District Municipality potential implementation agencies/institutions for some priorities have been identified as shown below:

**Table91: RBIG Allocation for 2013/2014;Capital grants on implemented projects**

Code	Scheme	Total Project Cost	DWA Project Cost	Co-funding	Total Expenditure since inception until 31 March 2013	Budget Allocation 2013/14	Proposed Budget Allocation 2014/15	Proposed Budget Allocation 2015/16	Proposed Budget Allocation 2016/17
NCR010	Oranje river - Colesberg Bulk Water Supply	152 591 651	110 087 651	42 504 000	74 735 092	35 031 629			
NCR021	Noupoort BWS	130 000 000	100 000 000	30 000 000	472 432	8 000 000	30 000 000	30 000 000	11 000 000
NCR015	De Aar Borehole Development	42 640 000	42 640 000			1 000 000	16 640 000		29 000 000
NCR014	Thembelihle bulk	54 697 000	27 748	26 948	23 500 407	2 748 282	1 500 000		

	water supply		689	311					
NCR022	Niekerkshoop Bulk Water Supply	13 117 451	11 097 364	2 020 087	2 813 729	6 283 633			
NCR023	Strydenburg BWS	13 110 000	Still to be determined	Still to be determined	299 511				
NCR	Renosterberg BWS	16 000 000	16 000 000	0			5 000 000		
NCR024	Van Wyksvlei BWS	33 672 127	33 672 127	0	366 643	900 000	12 000 000	20 406 000	
	Sub Total	444 029 229	3 282 032 224	393 547 805	302 965 204	332 565 429	309 499 000	319 299 000	289 000 000
<b>Implementation ready studies</b>									
	Bulk water supply Van der Kloof - Vosburg								13 000 000
	Bulk water supply from Gariep dam to Norvaltspond	7 925 000	6 872 000	1 053 000					7 000 000
NCR003	Pixley ka Seme BWS FS				10 096 269	1 900 000			
	Sub Total								

**Table 92: Spatial Development Framework projects**

Project list			Scoring									Project Timeframe					Responsible Department	Funds		Total Score	Rating
			<sup>1</sup> Spatial Fundamentals						Alignment									Benefits to the Community	Amount / Project Budget		
Project Number	Project Name (SDF & DWA)	Description	S1	S2	S3	S4	S5	S6	PSDF	DSDF	LMDF	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016					
1	SKA, Meerkat and KAT Array telescope projects near Carnarvon	New global technology telescope projects	15	13	15	15	13	8	15	15	15	X	X	X			Department of Science and Technology	1,2b Euros	KAT 7 & Meerkat funded by SA government.  SKA funded by 10 countries	139	1
11	Implement Land Care projects: Beeshoek, Vosterdam, Strydenburg	Agriculture	15	15	11	10	11	15	15	15	15	X	X				Dept. of Agriculture	R	Government	137	2
14	Orange River, Colesberg	Infrastructure	15	15	15	13	5	13	15	15	15	X	X	X			Dept. Water Affairs	R152,6m	Government	136	3

(a) <sup>1</sup>  = Ratings

	BWS																	
15	Noupoort BWS	Infrastructure	15	15	15	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X X X X	Dept. Water Affairs	R130m	Government	136	3
17	Thembelihle BWS	Infrastructure	15	15	15	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X X X X	Dept. Water Affairs	R54,7m	Government	136	3
18	Niekerkshoop BWS	Infrastructure	15	15	15	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X X X X	Dept. Water Affairs	R13,1m	Government	136	3
19	Renosterberg BWS	Infrastructure	15	15	15	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X X X X	Dept. Water Affairs	R16m	Government	136	3
20	Van Wyksvlei BWS	Infrastructure	15	15	15	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X X X X	Dept. Water Affairs	R33,7m	Government	136	3
16	De Aar borehole development	Infrastructure	13	13	15	13	5	11	15	15	15	15	X X X X X	Dept. Water Affairs	R42,6m	Government	134	4
5	Construction new hospital De Aar	Health Service	15	15	13	11	5	15	15	15	15	15	X X	Department of Health	R150m	Government	134	4
7	Building of Housing units in Kareeberg LM, Siyncuma LM, Umsobomvu	New houses	15	13	13	13	5	15	15	15	15	15	X X	Department Local Government & Housing	R7,2m, R4,2m, R5.4m, R5,9m, R13,1m, R22,2m	Government	134	4

	LM, Emthanjeni LM, Renosterberg LM, Thembelihle LM																	
8	Bucket eradication	Infrast ructur e	11	11	15	13	5	15	15	15	15	15	X X	Dept. Local Governme nt & Housing	R6,5m	Govern ment	130	5
9	Upgrade of economic roads	Infrast ructur e	13	13	15	10	8	11	15	15	15	15	X	Dept. Transport , Roads & Public Works	R8m	Govern ment	130	5
2	Railway line between Douglas and Belmont	New railwa y line	13	13	15	10	8	11	15	15	15	15	X X X	Departme nt of Economic Affairs	R35m	Govern ment	130	5
3	Constructio n of new Schools: Douglas & Schmidtsdri ft (Batlhaping )	Educat ion faciliti es	13	11	13	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X	Departme nt of Education	R7.7m	Govern ment	128	6



4	Building of clinics in Douglas and Philipstown	Health Service	13	11	13	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X	Department of Health	R2,6m	Government	128	6
6	Building of clinics at Noupoort, Petrusville, Prieska	Health Service	13	11	13	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X X	Department of Health	R1,4m each	Government	128	6
10	New sports facility for Petrusville	Sport & recreation	13	8	13	13	5	13	15	15	15	15	X	Dept. of Sports, Arts & Culture	R3,2m	Government	125	7
12	Precint Plan for Orange River Corridor <b>PLANNED</b>	Policy Plan	15	15	8	11	8	8	15	15	15	15	X X	DRDLR	R1m	Government	125	7
13	Regional Tourism Plan <b>PLANNED</b>	Policy Plan	15	15	6	11	8	8	15	15	15	15	X X	Provincial Government	R0,5m	Provincial	123	8
14	National Route Corridor Plans	Policy Plans	15	15	6	11	8	8	15	15	15	15	X X	DM & Provincial Government	R0,5m per Corrid	District & Provincial	123	8

	<b>PLANNED</b>														nt	or plan	al		
21	<b>Bulk Water Supply V/d Kloof-Vosburg</b>  <b>PLANNED</b>	<b>Infrast ructur e</b>													<b>Dept. Water Affairs</b>		<b>Govern ment</b>		<b>8</b>
22	<b>Bulk Water Supply Gariepdam to Norvalspont</b>  <b>PLANNED</b>	<b>Infrast ructur e</b>													<b>Dept. Water Affairs</b>		<b>Govern ment</b>		<b>8</b>
23	<b>Pixley Ka Seme BWS FS</b>  <b>PLANNED</b>	<b>Infrast ructur e</b>													<b>Dept. Water Affairs</b>		<b>Govern ment</b>		<b>8</b>

All objectives and strategies have to culminate in projects to give effect to those objectives and strategies. Current and planned projects for the Pixley region were gathered and prioritized. A list of prioritizing categories was compiled according to the Standard Priority Matrix to score projects and these categories are as follows:

#### 5.10 Spatial fundamentals

SF 1: Regional importance and advantage

SF 2: Economic development and diversification

SF 3: Provision of bulk infrastructure and appropriate service levels inclusive of internal infrastructure services as well as improved linkages and accessibility and maintenance of the road infrastructure

SF 4: Effective and efficient administration and financial management

SF 5: Protection of environmentally sensitive areas, nature reserves, archaeology and environmental sustainability

SF 6: Actively address spatial fragmentation (urban and rural)

5.10.1 Benefit to the community

5.10.2 Alignment with the PSDF, DSDF and LM SDF

The scoring method is structured from low to high with the Odd-Even-Odd number method (Low 1/3/5 – Medium 6/8/10 - High 11/13/15).

Low			Medium			High		
Low Low	Low Medium	Low High	Medium Low	Medium Medium	Medium High	High Low	High Medium	High High
1	3	5	6	8	10	11	13	15
	Maintaining status quo			Ensure a moderate improvement			Enable the Municipality to fulfill its mandate	

**Table 89:DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION 2014/2015**

School Name	IA	District	Municipal Area	Programme	Description of Physical Facilities- Quantity, Size ,etc.	Project Status	2013/14	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17
Karikama HS	IDT	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Ablution Block	Large ablution block -new	Retention	R50 000			
Petrusville HS	IDT	Pixley Ka Seme	Renosterberg	Ablution Block	Construction of Large ablution block	Retention	R198 000			
Bethel PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	Ablution Block	Construction of Large ablution	Identify			R1200 000	
Scoltzfontein PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Ablution Block	New Mobile Block	Identify	R250 000			
Plooysburg	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Ablution Block	Construction of Large Ablution	Identify	R900 000			
Moreson PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyathemba	Ablution Block	Construction of Large Ablution	Identify	R900 000			
Noupoort CS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Ablution Block	Construction of Large Ablution	Identify	R900 000			
Oranjerivertasie PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	Ablution Block	Construction of large Ablution	Identify	R900 000			
Strydenburg CS		Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	Ablution Block	Construction of large ablution	Identify			R1000 000	
Vaallus PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Ablution Block	Construction of large ablution	Identify			R1000 000	
Van Wyksvlei		Pixley Ka Seme	Kareeberg	Ablution Block	Construction of large ablution	Identify			R1000 000	
Delta PS	IDT	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Administratio n Block	New Large Admin block	Construction	R858 000			
Phakamasani HS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Administratio n Block	New Admin Large Block	Construction	R1500 000			
Karikama HS	IDT	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Administratio nBlock	New Admin Large Block	Tender	R2200 000			
Lowreyville IS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Ablution Block	New Large Admin Block	Tender	R1000 000		R400 000	

Orion HS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Classroom	2 New classroom	Tender	R950 000			
Victoria Wes CS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Classroom	5 New classrooms	Tender	R1200 000		R900 000	
Riverside HS	IDT	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Computer Centre	Construction of Computer Lab	Construction	R115 000			
Monwabisi HS	IDT	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Computer Centre	Construction of Computer Lab	Construction	R727 000			
Plooyburg Ps		Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Computer Centre	Construction of Computer Lab	Identify			R1800 000	
Alpha PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Disabled Facilities	Admin,Ablution,Hot Ds,Storerooms,Media,Computer Lab, Computer Classroom ,Hall	Construction	R2700 000			
Lowryville PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Construction	R2150 000			
Kareeville PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	ECD	2 Single ECD Classroom required	Construction	R900 000			
Petrusville PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Tender	R1100 000			
Vaal Oranje PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Tender	R1100 000			
Hopetown Combined School	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	ECD	1 mobile ECD Classroom required	Identify		R400 000		
Vukisiswe PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify		R1500 000		
JJ Booyen PS	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Kareeberg	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify		R1500 000		
Zingisani PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify			R2000 000	
Van Rensburg PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify			R2000 000	
RD Williams PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				

Willie Theron PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R2200 000
Eureka PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Oranje Diamant PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R2200 000
Philipstown PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Renosterberg	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R2200 000
Luvuyo PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R2200 000
Noupoort Combined		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R2200 000
JJ Booysen	DPW	Pixley Ka Seme	Kareeberg	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify		R1500 000		
Zingisani PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify			R2.000 000	
Van Rensburg PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify			R2,000 000	
RD Williams PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Willie Theron PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R22000 000
Eureka PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Oranje Diamant PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R22000 000
Philipstown PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Renosterberg	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R22000 000
Luvuyo PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R2000 000
NNoupoort CS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				R22000 000
Visisani PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	Conversion of classroom in ECD	Identify				

JJ Dreyer PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Thembelihle	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Anderson PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Bennie Groenewald PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
John Rossow PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Victoria West PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Van Wyksvlei PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Kareeberg	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Van Rensburg PS		Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	ECD	1 Double ECD Classroom required	Identify				
Melton wo+B492rld PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Electricity	Supply of electricity to farm schools	Identified	R100 000			
Van Der Waltspoort PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Electricity	Supply of electricity to farm schools	identified	R100 000			
Dombietersfontein Ps	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Electricity	Supply if electricity to farm schools	Identified	R250 000			
Pampoensport	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Electricity	Supply if electricity to farm schools	Identified	R250 000			
Keurtjieskloof PS	PED	Pixley Ka seme	Emthanjeni	Fencing	New fence	Completed			R500 000	
Garipe HS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyathemba	Fencing	Add razorwire to existing pallisade	Identified	R500 000			
De Aar HS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjei	Fencing	New fence	Identified	R500 000			
Alpha PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R500 000			
Norvalspont IS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R500 000			

Victoria Wes CS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R500 000			
Theron HS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Britstown	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R600 000			
Victoria Wes CS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Ubuntu	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R450 000			
Vaal Oranje PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R450 000			
Phakamasani HS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Emthanjeni	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R450 000			
Anderson PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Siyancuma	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R450 000			
Visisani PS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Renosterberg	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R450 000			
Nuopoort CS	PED	Pixley Ka Seme	Umsobomvu	Fencing	New Fence	Identified	R450 000			

**Table 90: Proposed implementation agencies**

<b>Development priorities</b>	<b>Implementing agency</b>
Sanitation	DWAF, DPLG and DHLG
Bulk water supply	DWAF and DBSA
Local Economic Development (LED)	Dept of Economic Affairs District and Local Municipalities Dept of Minerals and Energy Dept of Roads, Transport and Public works DHLG Dept of Environmental Affairs and Tourism Dept of Safety and Security Dept of Land Affairs and Agriculture
Housing	DHLG District and Local Municipalities
Roads, street and storm water management	Dept of Roads and Public Works District and Local Municipalities
Health and HIV/Aids	Dept of Health District and Local Municipalities



Electricity	ESKOM Local Municipalities Dept of Minerals and Energy
Education and youth development	Dept of Education sports and recreation District and Local Municipalities
Land and Land reform	Dept of Land Affairs and Agriculture
Disaster management	Dept of Safety and Security District and Local Municipalities
Sport and recreation	Dept of Arts and culture District and Local Municipalities
Environmental and waste management	Dept of Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Rural Development	Dept of Economic Affairs Dept of Land Affairs and Agric Dept of Education Social Welfare DHLG DTI Dept of Transport District and Local municipalities NGOs
Safety and Security	Dept of Safety and Security SAPS SANDF District and Local Municipalities
Cemeteries	DHLG Local Municipalities

## 5.12 Budget 2013/14

Table 91: Final budget

<b>Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality</b> <b>Final Draft</b> <b>Budget</b> <b>2014/2015</b>
--

INCOME		EXPENDIRURE	
<b>1) NATIONAL GRANTS</b>		<b>1) PERSONNEL COST</b>	
	32,052,000		25,754,357
Equitable Share	11,619,000	CS	5,426,185
Levy Replacement	17,151,000	Finance	3,842,533
Councillor Remuneration	<u>3,282,000</u>	Dev & I	2,114,519
		EHP	1,440,823
<b>2) FINANCE MNGT GRANT</b>	1,250,000	Housing	2,432,523
		Council	2,688,396
<b>3) MSIG</b>	934,000	MM	1,757,458
		IA	3,009,871
<b>4) EPWP</b>	950,000	EDM	1,611,041
		SS	1,431,008
<b>5) PROVINCIAL GRANTS</b>	630,000	Other	<u>-</u>
Housing Accreditation	-	<b>2) COUNCILLORS</b>	3,567,166
NEAR	315,000		
Fire Fighting	<u>315,000</u>	<b>3) GENERAL EXP</b>	9,410,020
<b>6) INTEREST</b>	155,000		
	155,000	<b>4) OTHER MATERIALS</b>	346,000
<b>7) Rental of Facilities</b>	-		
	-	<b>5) CAPEX(364 000)</b>	-

	-	-
<b>8)Shared Services</b>	3,780,000	3,780,000
<b>9)OTHER</b>		75,000
<b>Seta</b>	25,000	
Capex(364000)	-	
Admin Cost EPWP	<u>50,000</u>	
		<b>39,826,000</b>

**RE Pieterse**  
**Municipal Manager**

<b>6)CONTR AGREEMENTS</b>	1,225,000
<b>7)INTEREST(518 147)</b>	218,449
	<b>40,520,992</b>

**BF James**  
**Chief Financial Officer**

**1)EXPENDITURE:**

**A)General Expenditure**

<b>EPWP</b>	<b>1,000,000</b>
<b>Fire Fighting</b>	<b>315,000</b>
<b>AG</b>	<b>1,000,000</b>
<b>Telephone EDM</b>	<b>80,000</b>
<b>Telephone Admin</b>	<b>295,000</b>
<b>Municipal Account</b>	<b>280,000</b>
<b>Training Cost</b>	<b>200,000</b>
<b>Printing and Stationary</b>	<b>200,000</b>
<b>Ex Gratia</b>	<b>-</b>
<b>Consultancy Fees</b>	<b>300,000</b>
<b>Legal Costs</b>	<b>1,000,000</b>
<b>S &amp; T,s</b>	<b>1,715</b>
<b>Bank Charges</b>	<b>78,250</b>
<b>Insurance</b>	<b>385,000</b>
<b>Membership Fees</b>	<b>600,000</b>

<b>Audit Comittee</b>	<b>125,000</b>
<b>Ins Casualty</b>	<b>177,140</b>
<b>UIF</b>	<b>121,960</b>
<b>Water Samples</b>	<b>35,000</b>
	<b>6,194,065</b>

**S & T.s**

<b>EDM</b>	<b>40,000</b>
<b>CS</b>	<b>220,000</b>
<b>F</b>	<b>135,000</b>
<b>COUNCIL O</b>	<b>150,000</b>
<b>COUNCIL P</b>	<b>180,000</b>
<b>Ex Mayor</b>	<b>50,000</b>
<b>MM</b>	<b>85,000</b>
<b>IA</b>	<b>400,000</b>
<b>DEV</b>	<b>140,000</b>
<b>EHP</b>	

	<b>85,000</b>
<b>HOUSING</b>	<b>145,000</b>
<b>SS</b>	<b>85,000</b>
	<b>1,715,000</b>

## **Volume 2 Sector Plans**

**Volume 2** contains the following integrated plans/programmes which are regulatory requirements for an intergrated development planning as provided for by the Municipal Systems Act and IDP guide pack.

### **The documents are:**

- ◆ Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
- ◆ Consolidated Infrastructure Plan (CIP)
- ◆ Institutional Development Plan
- ◆ Pixley ka Seme District Tourism Sytrategy
- Municipal Supply Chain Management Policy
- Risk Management Policy
- Recruitment Policy for the Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Skills Development Policy and Human Resource Skills Development Committee Constitution
- Audit Committee Charter
- Internal Audit Charter
- Draft HIV and Aids Policy
- Health and Safety Policy
- Fraud Prevention Policy
- Credit Conrol Policy
- Employment Equity Plan for Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Fleet Management Policy for Pixley ka Seme District Municipality
- Career Pathing and Development
- Communication Strategy